CERN Yellow Reports: Monographs CERN-2021-XXX

European Strategy for Particle Physics
Accelerator R&D Roadmap

Final Report – draft – 29 October 2021

Editor: N. Mounet (CERN, Geneva, Switzerland)

CERN Yellow Reports: Monographs
Published by CERN, CH-1211 Geneva 23, Switzerland

ISBN 978-92-9083-XXX-X (paperback)
ISBN 978-92-9083-XXX-X (PDF)
ISSN 2519-8068 (Print)
ISSN 2519-8076 (Online)
DOI `https://doi.org/10.23731/CYRM-2021-XXX`

This volume should be cited as:

European Strategy for Particle Physics - Accelerator R&D Roadmap (Final Report),
N. Mounet (ed.)
CERN Yellow Reports: Monographs, CERN-2021-XXX (CERN, Geneva, 2021)
`https://doi.org/10.23731/CYRM-2021-XXX`.

A contribution in this report should be cited as:

[Chapter editor name(s)], in European Strategy for Particle Physics - Accelerator R&D Roadmap
(Interim Report), N. Mounet (ed.)
CERN-2021-xxx (CERN, Geneva, 2021), pp. [first page]–[last page],
http://doi.org/10.23731/CYRM-2021-XXX.[first page]

Corresponding editor: nicolas.mounet@cern.ch.

Accepted in Month 2021, by the CERN Reports Editorial Board (contact Carlos.Lourenco@cern.ch).

Published by the CERN Scientific Information Service (contact Jens.Vigen@cern.ch).

Indexed in the CERN Document Server and in INSPIRE.

European Strategy for Particle Physics - Accelerator R&D Roadmap
Final Report

Editor: N. Mounet[a]

Steering committee: D. Newbold[b,*] *(Chair), S. Bentvelsen*[c], *F. Bossi*[d], *N. Colino*[e], *A.-I. Etienvre*[f], *F. Gianotti*[a], *K. Jakobs*[g], *M. Lamont*[a], *W. Leemans*[h], *J. Mnich*[a], *E. Previtali*[i], *L. Rivkin*[j], *A. Stocchi*[k], *E. Tsesmelis*[a]

Expert panel chairs: R. Assmann[d,h], *S. Bousson*[k], *M. Klein*[l], *D. Schulte*[a], *P. Védrine*[f]

Expert panel editors: R. Assmann[d,h], *B. Baudouy*[f], *L. Bottura*[a], *E. Gschwendtner*[a], *M. Klein*[l], *R. Ischebeck*[j], *C. Rogers*[b], *D. Schulte*[a]

[a]CERN, Geneva, Switzerland
[b]STFC Rutherford Appleton Laboratory, Harwell Campus, UK
[c]Nikhef, Amsterdam, Netherlands
[d]LNF/INFN, Frascati, Italy
[e]CIEMAT, Madrid, Spain
[f]CEA, Saclay, France
[g]University of Freiburg, Germany
[h]DESY, Hamburg, Germany
[i]LNGS/INFN, L'Aquila, Italy
[j]PSI, Villigen, Switzerland
[k]IJCLab, Orsay, France
[l]University of Liverpool, UK

Abstract

The 2020 update of the European Strategy for Particle Physics emphasised the importance of an intensified and well-coordinated programme of accelerator R&D, supporting the design and delivery of future particle colliders in a timely, affordable and sustainable way. This report sets out a roadmap for European accelerator R&D for the next five to ten years, covering five topical areas identified in the Strategy update. The R&D objectives include: improvement of the performance and cost-performance of magnet and radio-frequency acceleration systems; investigations of the potential of laser / plasma acceleration and energy-recovery linac techniques; and development of new concepts for muon beams and muon colliders. The goal of the roadmap is to document the consensus in the field on the next steps for the R&D programme, and to provide the evidence base to support subsequent decisions on prioritisation, resourcing and implementation.

Keywords

Particle Physics; European Strategy; Accelerator; R&D; Roadmap.

---

[*] dave.newbold@stfc.ac.uk

Contents

1 Introduction

1.1 Motivation

The 2020 update of the European Strategy for Particle Physics (ESPPU) [1] outlined the current status and prospects in the field, and identified priorities for future particle physics collider facilities. In time order, these are: completion and commissioning of the CERN High Luminosity LHC (HL-LHC); a future electron-positron Higgs factory; and a future hadron collider at the highest achievable energy and luminosity.

It is recognised in the community, and was acknowledged in the ESPPU, that construction of the next generations of colliders will be extremely challenging. For machines beyond the Higgs factories, there are major technical obstacles to meeting the exceptional performance requirements. As documented throughout this report, achieving our long-term scientific goals will require the exploration and maturation of new technologies, materials and techniques to well beyond the current state of the art. Since many of these technologies are unique to particle physics in their immediate application, then this can only result from a new and extended phase of R&D organised within our own institutes and in conjunction with industry and related scientific fields. This is similar to the precursor R&D that led to the successful delivery of previous generations of machines, but is likely to be longer in duration and wider in scope.

In addition to the technical challenges, it is clear that there are practical issues in delivering the future machines. There are limits to the level of investment available to support both the construction and ongoing operation of new facilities, and energy consumption and efficiency are key considerations. Optimal scientific progress depends on the timely availability of new data from previously unexplored physical regimes, as well as on new opportunities to attract and train future generations of scientists, engineers and technicians. Therefore, the accelerator R&D programme must focus not only on enabling new levels of machine performance, but also on making the new machines available at affordable cost, on useful timescales, and with appropriate consideration for sustainability. These requirements may motivate changes in the way we approach both R&D and the design of new facilities, and in the way we organise cooperative developments.

The ESPPU commented that

> *The particle physics community should ramp up its R&D effort focused on advanced accelerator technologies.*

and that

> *The European particle physics community must intensify accelerator R&D and sustain it with adequate resources. A roadmap should prioritise the technology, taking into account synergies with international partners and other communities such as photon and neutron sources, fusion energy and industry. Deliverables for this decade should be defined in a timely fashion and coordinated among CERN and national laboratories and institutes.*

The European Laboratory Directors Group (LDG) was mandated by CERN Council in 2021 to oversee the development of an Accelerator R&D Roadmap, complementary to the Detector R&D Roadmap being developed in parallel under the guidance of the European Committee for Future Accelerators (ECFA). Although LDG members represent the large laboratories and national infrastructures through which the majority of accelerator R&D investment is made, it is clear that the first step in any such process should be the gathering of inputs and evidence from the widest possible set of stakeholders in the European and international fields. To this end, a set of expert panels was convened, covering the five broad areas of accelerator R&D highlighted in the ESPPU, drawing upon the international accelerator physics community for their membership, and tasked to consult widely and deeply. The roadmap is the result of their efforts, and builds upon many hundreds of contributions by experts in the community.

1.2 Goals of the roadmap

The European Strategy for Particle Physics represents the consensus view of the European community on the priorities for current and future work. Although it is not prescriptive on actions or investments to be undertaken by countries, laboratories, or institutes, it forms a structure around which decisions and plans can be made with confidence. In a field where practically every new development requires extended cooperation between many partners, and investment over an extended period, this is an essential element in ensuring coherence. As an extension and specialisation of the Strategy, the Roadmap should play a similar role in its own domain. It should express the consensus view of stakeholders on the pathway to delivering the necessary future facilities for particle physics, and likewise form an established basis for European, national and local planning.

The Roadmap is therefore required to:

- provide an agreed structure for a coordinated and intensified programme of accelerator R&D across national institutes and CERN;
- be commensurate with corresponding roadmaps in detectors, computing and other technologies, with a compatible timeline and deliverables;
- seek to further the scientific goals expressed in the European Strategy for Particle Physics
- have its implementation defined through consultation with the community and, where appropriate, through the work of expert panels;
- take into account, and coordinate with, international activities and work being carried out in other related scientific fields, including the development of new large-scale facilities;
- specify a series of concrete deliverables, including demonstrators, over the next decade;
- be designed to inform, through its outcomes, future updates of the European Strategy for Particle Physics.

The lattermost point is crucial. The next updates to the Strategy are likely to involve significant decisions on the future direction of particle physics. These decisions can only be made if full and robust information on the feasibility of possible future options is available. The Roadmap must set down the steps to be taken over the next decade so that a full picture on the benefits, challenges, feasibility, risk and costs of each new development is in place. In essence, it should seek to answer the fundamental questions raised when considering long-term strategy, both in the present, and then in greater detail at subsequent updates.

- What R&D remains to be done towards future facilities, and what are the priorities?
- How long might it take, and what investments and resources are required?
- What are the dependencies and relationships between activities?
- What scientific outputs could be obtained from demonstrators or the intermediate outputs of R&D?

1.3 Scope of the roadmap

The ESPPU identified five key areas where an intensification of R&D is required to meet scientific goals:

1. Further development of high-field superconducting magnet technology
2. Advanced technologies for superconducting and normally conducting radio-frequency (RF) accelerating structures
3. Development and exploitation of laser / plasma acceleration techniques
4. Studies towards future bright muon beams and muon colliders

5. Advancement and exploitation of energy-recovery linear accelerator technology

Expert panels were set up to examine each of these areas, with membership drawn primarily from European accelerator institutes, but with international representation. The overall structure set up to deliver the Roadmap is shown in Fig. 1.1. An important additional issue in accelerator physics is the attraction, training and career management of researchers. The issues in this area are very similar to those for detector-focussed particle physicists; both have been considered in common by Task Force Nine of the ECFA Detector R&D Roadmap, and the findings are documented there.

The five study areas are of course not fully independent, with technological cross-links between the 'fundamental' areas of acceleration and magnets, and the more 'applied' areas of muon beams and ERLs. Neither are all the areas at equal stages of maturity. In the magnets and RF areas, the Roadmap constitutes the next phase of planning in an ongoing and mature R&D programme. For laser / plasma and energy-recover linacs (ERL), it attempts to capture specific particle physics requirements and plans within ongoing R&D programmes of wider applicability. For muons, it documents the first phase of a new European study. It is clearly understood that these five topics are only a subset of the necessary R&D to deliver all the necessary new technologies for future facilities. Moreover, investment into long-term R&D must necessarily sit alongside the need to complete existing projects and to conduct studies and detailed planning for nearer-term new machines. The balance must be carefully struck, taking into account both the short- and long-term requirements of the field.

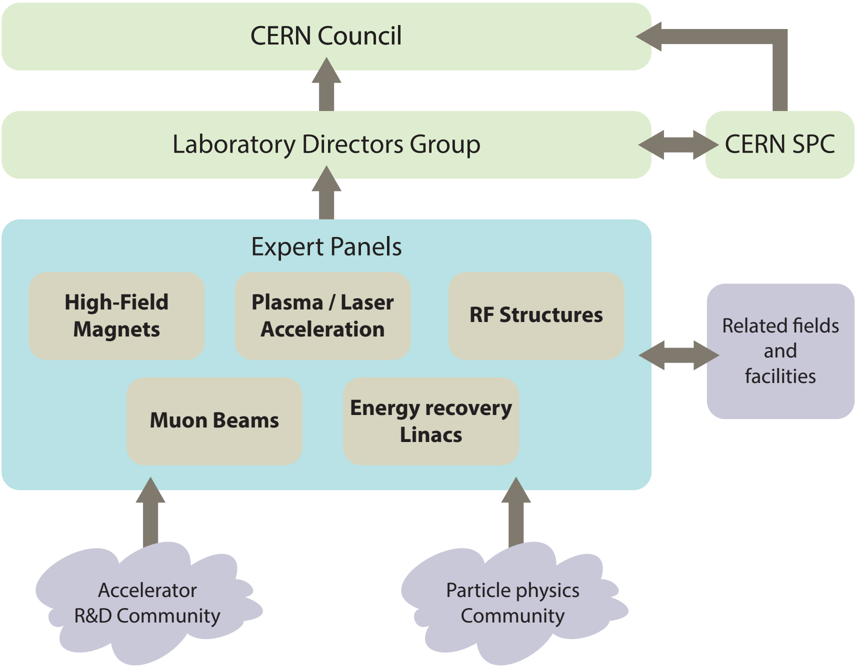


Fig. 1.1: Roadmap panel structure.

1.4 Assumptions concerning future facilities

Although the ESPPU highlighted a number of potential long-term future facilities, it did not provide an explicit timeline for their delivery. Indeed, the information required to make such a plan is dependent upon the results of early R&D and feasibility studies. On the other hand, without some common initial assumptions on the target dates and parameters of future machines, it is not possible to motivate and construct an R&D strategy for accelerators or detectors.

To this end, Fig. 1.2 illustrates an indicative timeline for future collider and larger accelerator facilities. The projects shown in the diagrams are at differing stages of definition, approval and technical maturity. Each is described in detail in the ESPPU supporting documents [1]. The dates shown in the diagram have low precision, and are intended to approximately represent the a ‘feasible start date’ (where a schedule is not already defined), taking into account the necessary steps of approval, development and construction for machine and civil engineering. They do not constitute any form of plan or recommendation, and indeed several options presented are mutually exclusive. he projects mentioned here are limited to those mentioned in the ESPPU. For some other proposed projects (e.g. CEPC in China) there are substantial overlaps and synergies, and the specific needs of these projects have been considered by the expert panels where relevant to the R&D programme.

The timelines — and potentially the scope — of the projects will naturally change depending on both future strategic decisions and the outcomes of the R&D programme. The key objective of both the accelerator and detector Roadmaps is to ensure that: (a) the basic R&D phase is not the rate-limiting step, i.e. that R&D is started sufficiently early and prioritised correctly to meet the needs of the long-term European particle physics programme in its global context; and (b) that the outcomes of the R&D programme are able to provide the necessary information on the feasibility and cost of future deliverables to allow strategic decisions to be made.

Fig. 1.2: Future accelerator facilities timeline.

1.5 Status and organisation of the field

Accelerator physics is a large, complex, multi-disciplinary field that is of relevance beyond the needs of particle physics. The field is fully international, and to some extent a ‘European Roadmap’ can only represent a portion of what must remain a fully-integrated worldwide programme. To the extent that the field necessarily centres around large infrastructures, much of the work is focussed on facilities at national or regional laboratories. However, it is also clear that key developments (including those with the potential to radically affect our assumptions and future plans) are taking place at institutes and universities. The majority of accelerators built are for industrial, medical or other scientific purposes. Some of these applications will also benefit directly from parts of the proposed new R&D. To that extent, accelerator physics is therefore not just a key element in enabling new scientific discoveries, but also a primary route for economic and societal impact from particle physics.

The field is well-organised, with a plurality of existing structures, steering bodies, cooperative programmes and communications channels. The field has benefited in the past from investment by supra-national agencies (e.g. the European Commission) in recognition of its key supporting role across disciplines and industries. The Roadmap must take into account these pre-existing structures, commitments, and projects, and build upon them. Although the execution of the Roadmap will require sufficient oversight to make sure the goals are being met, to ensure that the results and conclusions of the overall R&D programme are readily available to stakeholders, and to ensure consistency with corresponding work taking place in detectors, it is likely that in some cases there will be a thin layer of formal structure above projects coordinated on a multi-lateral basis by laboratories and institutes. In other cases, for instance where new topics are being given priority, it may be necessary to convene new groupings and formal collaborations with an overall R&D governance structure, or to merge or re-optimise existing programmes for greater efficiency. These aspects have been the topic of consultation with the community, and recommendations for future coordination are given later in the report.

As noted above, the vast majority of particle accelerators are not constructed for fundamental research, but for a multitude of other applications in science, medicine and industry. However, these machines exist due to the foundational work driven by particle physics over almost a century. Many of the key topics for the R&D programme — especially in the areas of energy efficiency and sustainability — are also directly relevant for wider applications, and particle physics is still the crucible in which such developments can be driven forward. In the Roadmap, the applicability of the proposed R&D to external applications has been highlighted, and in many cases forms a strong secondary motivation for the programme.

1.6 Process

The overall timeline for the Roadmap process is shown in Fig. 1.3. As for the ESPPU process, it consists of two phases: a public consultation process, and documentation of the consensus on R&D priorities; and the definition of the Roadmap which must deliver them.

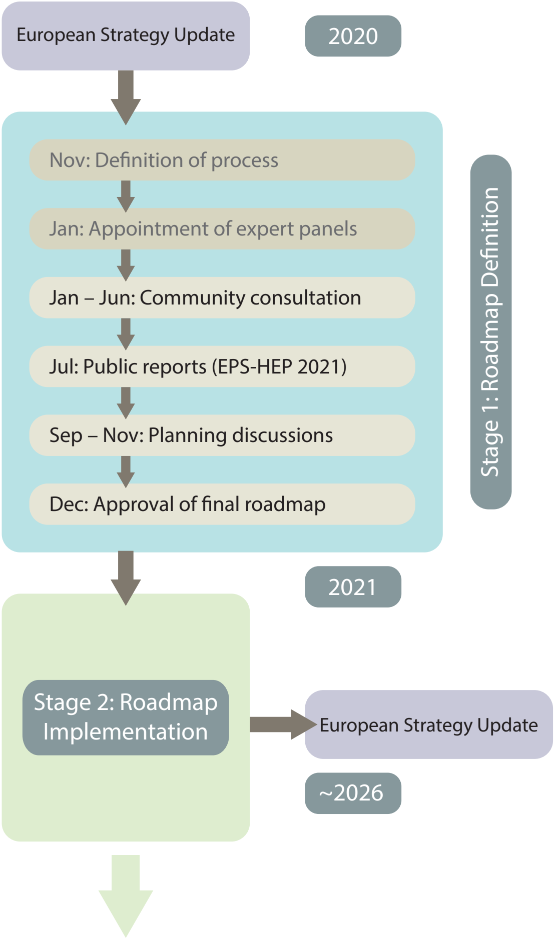


Fig. 1.3: Accelerator R&D Roadmap timeline.

The charge to each of the expert panels was to:

- establish the key R&D needs in each area, as dictated by scientific priorities;

- consult widely with the European and international communities, taking into account the capabilities and interests of stakeholders;
- take explicitly into account the plans and needs in related scientific fields;
- propose ambitious but realistic objectives, work plans, and deliverables;
- give options and scenarios for European investment and activity level.

In order to avoid confusion between the definition of the Roadmap and the subsequent implementation phase, and to avoid overlap with other R&D activities happening in parallel within laboratories, the following topics were deemed explicitly 'not in scope':

- detailed planning for specific future facilities,
- planning of funding routes, beyond documenting an indicative cost of the proposed R&D programme,
- statements of institutional or national commitment.

From January to July 2021, each of the expert panels held regular working meetings to define the scope and boundaries of their area, and to set up a process of community consultation. This typically took the form of a number of workshops combining invited talks with an open call for contributions. In other cases, the panels were able to draw upon the documented work of pre-existing consortia or collaborations. Some panels launched a formal written consultation within their community. These initiatives attracted the participation of a wide and representative subset of the international accelerator physics community, along with many stakeholders from particle physics. Overall, several hundred researchers have been actively involved in the process, with concrete contributions to this report from a large subset of them. In some cases, it has been necessary to set up sub-panels with co-opted membership from the particle physics community, to consider specific aspects or applications of future technologies.

In July 2021, an open symposium was held specifically for the particle physics user community, in order to ensure that the field was kept well informed of progress. This was attended by around 150 people, and resulted in valuable feedback on priorities and traversal aspects of the R&D programme (for instance, the inclusion of sustainability as an primary consideration). In addition, the particle physics community was challenged to provide input on potential direct scientific uses of intermediate-scale demonstrators and facilities. At the EPS-HEP conference in late July, both ECFA and LDG reported on the progress towards the Roadmaps, and the panels presented their initial findings.

1.7 Delivery plans

The final stage of the process has been to define outline delivery plans. In each of the five areas, R&D themes have been established, related to the key R&D objectives. These have been broken down further into R&D tasks of limited duration and scope, and for each task, an indicative resource envelope has been established. The delivery plans explicitly do not constitute a ready-for-execution resource-loaded plan. Rather, they are intended to illustrate the potential scope and pace of the R&D programme for particular resourcing scenarios, allowing informed decisions to be made on the shape, balance and scale of the overall R&D effort.

Each panel has constructed alternative delivery plans corresponding to a number of resource scenarios. For the 'mature' areas already in receipt of substantial investment, these comprise:

- a 'nominal' scenario, illustrating the direction and pace of future development under current funding conditions;
- an 'aspirational' scenario, indicating the progress possible with additional resources;
- a 'minimal' scenario, documenting what could be achieved with restricted resources.

For other areas, only the aspirational and minimal scenarios are considered. In each case, consideration has been given to the structure and organisation of the R&D programme, and the interdependencies within and across areas.

The resource estimates associated with each scenario are indicative, and in some cases approximate. The necessary resources include human effort (stated in FTE-years), direct capital investment into R&D, and in some cases in-kind contributions from established programmes or facilities. Where the delivery plan builds upon pre-existing commitments or investments, the rough level of associated resource is indicated for information. The intention is to document the 'incremental cost to the field' of undertaking each aspect of R&D, and to separate this cost from that of externally-funded infrastructure, even where the same funding agencies are involved.

The delivery plans reflect the prioritisation of tasks within each area, and in most cases already reflect a focus on only the key topics. Conversely, the Roadmap does not make recommendations on the relative prioritisation of the five R&D areas, though it does in some cases highlight their interdependence. Decisions on resource levels and priorities can only be made in light of the many other ongoing activities in the field, and after balancing short- and long-term scientific goals. The intention of the Roadmap is to document the consensus view of the field on the priorities within each area, and to provide sufficient information to allow such strategic decisions to be made.

The Roadmap mainly documents long-term R&D towards facilities to be constructed the 2040s or beyond, though where there is relevance to nearer-term collider facilities or to other scientific projects, this is indicated. In order to provide the necessary context and counterbalance, the report also contains a summary of the ongoing near-term R&D and planning towards future electron-positron colliders. These machines and the related programmes are documented in depth in the references in these sections. Finally, a separate section summarises the sustainability issues associated with future facilities, and highlights the potential of the R&D programme to address these.

References

[1] 2020 Update of the European Strategy for Particle Physics (Brochure). *CERN-ESU-015*, 2020.

2 High-field Magnets

Editors: B. Baudouy[a]*, L. Bottura*[b]

Panel members: P. Védrine[a,*] *(Chair), L. García-Tabarés*[c] *(Co-Chair), B. Auchmann*[d]*, A. Ballarino*[b]*, B. Baudouy*[a]*, L. Bottura*[b]*, P. Fazilleau*[a]*, M. Noe*[e]*, S. Prestemon*[f]*, E. Rochepault*[a]*, L. Rossi*[g]*, C. Senatore*[h]*, B. Shepherd*[i]

[a]CEA, Saclay, France
[b]CERN, Geneva, Switzerland
[c]CIEMAT, Madrid, Spain
[d]PSI, Villigen, Switzerland
[e]KIT, Karlsruhe, Germany
[f]LBNL, Berkeley, California, USA
[g]LASA/INFN, Milano, Italy
[h]University of Geneva, Switzerland
[i]ASTEC, Daresbury, UK

2.1 Executive Summary

High Field Magnets (HFM) are among the key technologies that will enable the search for new physics at the energy frontier. Approved projects (HL-LHC) and potential future circular machines (FCC-hh, SppC) require the development of superconducting (SC) magnets that produce fields beyond those attained in the LHC. The programme proposed here will advance beyond the results achieved over the past twenty years in past European and international programmes (i.e. EU-FP6 CARE, EU-FP7 EuCARD, EuCARD2, ARIES) and current work (i.e. HL-LHC, I-FAST, CERN-HFM and US-MDP).

Lead times for the development of high-field magnets have a typical duration of a decade. It is therefore important to pursue R&D in parallel with scoping studies for new machines. The development of high-field magnets naturally spans over many fields of science and engineering, requiring a wide range of expertise, and involving strong and coordinated partnership between national laboratories, universitiy and industry. Finally, the development of novel SC magnet technology at the high field frontier requires specialised infrastructure, often of large scale. These considerations mandate a sustained and inclusive R&D programme as a central element the future European programme, as underlined by the strong recommendations contained in the ESPPU.

The proposed R&D programme has two main objectives. The first is to demonstrate Nb_3Sn magnet technology for large-scale deployment. This will involve pushing it to its practical limits in terms of ultimate performance (towards the 16 T target required by FCC-hh), and moving towards production scale through robust design, industrial manufacturing processes and cost reduction, taking as a reference the HL-LHC magnets, i.e. 12 T). The second objective is to demonstrate the suitability of high-temperature superconductors (HTS) for accelerator magnet applications, providing a proof-of-principle of HTS magnet technology beyond the range of Nb_3Sn, with a target in excess of 20 T. The above goals are indicative, since the decision on a cost-effective and practical operating field will be one of the main outcomes of the development work.

---

[*] pierre.vedrine@cea.fr

This contribution should be cited as: High-field Magnets, DOI: 10.23731/CYRM-2021-XXX.9, in: European Strategy for Particle Physics - Accelerator R&D Roadmap, Ed. N. Mounet,
CERN Yellow Reports: Monographs, CERN-2021-XXX, DOI: 10.23731/CYRM-2021-XXX, p. 9.

The roadmap comprises three focus areas (Nb_3Sn and HTS conductors, Nb_3Sn magnets, and HTS magnets) enabled by three cross-cutting activities (materials, cryogenics and models, powering and protection, and infrastructure and instruments).

The conductor activities, besides the necessary procurements, will focus on two aspects. Nb_3Sn R&D will push beyond the state-of-the-art to consolidate the critical current capability (target of 1500 A/mm^2 at 16 T and 4.2 K), establishing robust wire and cable configurations with reduced cost. These will then be the subject of a four-year period of industrialisation, which will be followed by a similar period of industrial optimisation. On the HTS side, the intention is to identify and qualify suitable tapes and cables, and follow up with industrial production to ensure the feasibility of large unit lengths (target 1 km) of HTS tapes with characteristics tailored to accelerator magnet applications. This HTS conductor R&D phase is expected to last for seven years.

The Nb_3Sn magnet development will improve areas of HL-LHC technology that have been found to be sub-optimal, notably the degradation associated with the fragile conductor, targeting the highest practical operating field that can be achieved. The plan is to work jointly with wire and cable development to mitigate degradation associated either with length or electro-thermo-mechanical effects. The R&D will explore design and technology variants to identify robust design options for the field level targeted. The magnet technology R&D will progress in steps over a projected period of seven years, but is intended to provide crucial results through demonstration magnets in time for the next update of the ESPP. Another five years are expected to be necessary to extrapolate the demonstrator results to full-length units.

R&D plans for HTS magnets focus on manufacturing and testing of sub-scale and insert coils as an vehicle to demonstrate performance and operation beyond the range of Nb_3Sn. Special attention will be devoted to the possibility of operating in an intermediate temperature range (10 K to 20 K). The projected duration of this phase of test magnets, i.e. not yet accelerator designs, is seven years. By this time the potential of HTS for accelerator operation will be clear. At least five more years will be required to develop HTS demonstrators that include all the necessary accelerator features, surpassing Nb_3Sn performance or working at temperatures higher than liquid helium.

The cross-cutting technology activities will be a key seed for innovation. The scope includes materials and composites development using advanced analytics and diagnostics, new engineering solutions for the thermal management of high-field magnets, and the development of modelling tools within a unified engineering design framework. We propose to explore alternative methods of detection and protection against quench (especially important for HTS) including new measurement methods and diagnostics. Finally, dedicated manufacturing and test infrastructure required for the HFM R&D programme, including instrumentation upgrades, needs to be developed, built and operated through close coordination between the participating laboratories.

The cost of the programme has been estimated for three different scenarios; a nominal scenario covering the tasks described in the report over the proposed seven years of development with an estimated material cost of 154 MCHF and a staff involvement of 607 FTEy (113 MCHF and 479 FTEy over the first five years); an aspirational scenario with increased industrial involvement, additional R&D in the research and production of superconductors and new distributed test capabilities (241 MCHF and 728 FTEy); and a minimal scenario in which we secure conductor supply and infrastructure capabilities but reduce the range of magnet options considered (97 MCHF, 347 FTEy).

2.2 Introduction

2.2.1 Historical perspective

Starting with the Tevatron in 1983 [1], through HERA in 1991 [2], RHIC in 2000 [3] and finally the LHC in 2008 [4, 5], all recent energy-frontier hadron colliders have been built using SC magnets. These machines made use of a highly optimised alloy of niobium and titanium [6] and it is accepted that the LHC dipoles, with a nominal operating field of 8.33 T when cooled by superfluid helium at 1.9 K, represent the end of the line this material[1] [7].

Near-future and longer-term machines call for the development of SC magnets that produce fields beyond those attained in the LHC [8]. These projects inlcude the high-luminosity LHC upgrade (HL-LHC) [9–12], currently under construction at CERN and collaborating laboratories, and the Future Circular Collider (FCC) design study [13], structured as a worldwide collaboration coordinated by CERN. Similar studies and programmes are ongoing outside Europe, inlcuding the Super Proton-Proton Collider (SppC) in China [14]. Significant advances in SC accelerator magnets were driven by past studies such as the Very Large Hadron Collider at Fermilab [15] and the US-DOE Muon Accelerator programme [16, 17]. First considerations of ultra-high-field (20 T) HTS dipoles were fostered by the High-Energy Large Hadron Collider study at CERN [13, 18]. Finally, new accelerator concepts such as muon colliders [19] pose significant challenges for their magnet systems (see also chapter Bright Muon Beams and Muon Colliders). These initiatives provide a strong and sustained motivation for to the development of SC accelerator magnet technology beyond the LHC benchmark.

Having reached the upper limit of Nb-Ti performance, all above projects and studies are turning towards other superconducting materials and novel magnet technology. On-going activities encompass both Low-Temperature and High-Temperature Superconductors (LTS and HTS, respectively). Besides the R&D driven directly by the projects and studies listed above, it is important to recall the coordinated efforts that have led to the present state-of-the-art in HFM for accelerators. The largest effort over the past 30 years was dedicated to the development of Nb_3Sn [20] conductor and the related magnet technology. A strong focus was given in the end of the 1990's by the US-DOE programmes devoted to Nb_3Sn conductor and magnet development [21–23]. These programmes evolved as a collaboration among the US-DOE accelerator laboratories and associated institutions and are now continuing in consolidated form under the US Magnet Development programme, with the added goal of developing HTS materials and magnets [24]. On the EU side the first targeted EU-wide activities were initiated under the EU-FP6 CARE (Coordinated Accelerator Research in Europe) [25] initiative and in particular in the Next European Dipole Joint Research Activity (NED-JRA) [26]. NED-JRA ran from 2004 to 2009 and was followed by the EU-FP7 EuCARD [27]. The main fruit of these collaborations is FRESCA2, the dipole magnet that still retains with 14.6 T the highest field ever produced in a clear bore of significant aperture. We recall that FRESCA2 is a test facility magnet, designed with large operating margin and does not include some of the crucial features of an accelerator dipole.

HL-LHC is presently the forefront of accelerator magnet technology and construction at the highest field ever attained in a magnet in an operating collider. The preliminary results achieved with the nominal performance of the 11 T dipoles [28] and QXF quadrupoles [29] demonstrate that Nb_3Sn has the ability to surpass the state-of-the-art of Nb-Ti mentioned earlier. At the same time, it is clear that the solutions successfully implemented for the design and manufacturing of the HL-LHC Nb_3Sn magnets will need to evolve to improve robustness, industrial yield and cost.

Finally, the interest in the exceptional high-field potential of High-Temperature Superconductors (HTS) for many domains of applied superconductivity has also reached accelerator magnets. Cuprates containing either rare-earths (REBCO [30]) or bismuth (BSCCO [31]) are in a stage of early technical maturity and their application to the generation of ultra-high magnetic fields was recently proven. Laboratories and industry have shown that HTS are capable to produce fields in the range from 28 T in commercial NMR solenoids [32] to 45.5 T in small experimental solenoids in background field [33]. As discussed later in more detail, HTS technology for accelerator magnets is only at its beginning [34]. This is an area where we expect to see fast progress, along the path initiated in various laboratories and fostered in Europe by the EuCARD [27], EuCARD2 [35], ARIES [36] and the on-going I-FAST [37]

---

[1] Nb-Ti can produce fields well in excess of the LHC dipoles, as recently demonstrated by ISEULT, a full-body MRI solenoid operating at 11.7 T (`https://www.cea.fr/english/Pages/News/Iseult-MRI-Magnet-Record.aspx`). This requires winding current densities that are an order of magnitude smaller than the compact windings of an accelerator magnet, and a solenoid configuration which is magnetically twice as effective as a dipole.

EU projects.

2.2.2 Highest Fields attained

The result of the efforts briefly outlined above can be appreciated graphically in Fig. 2.1, reporting the steady increase of field produced by dipole magnets built with LTS Nb_3Sn over the past forty years. The data is a loose collection of results obtained with short demonstrator magnets (i.e. simple configurations that lack an aperture for the beam and are not built with other constraints such as field quality), short model magnets (i.e. short version of magnets that are representative of the full-size accelerator magnets) and full-size accelerator magnets. We can trace first significant attempts back to the 1980's, at BNL [38] and LBNL [39]. This work eventually led to the achievement of D20 [40] in the 1990's, a dipole model with 50 mm bore. The path continued in the 2000's with the HD programme at LBNL, reaching a field of 16 T in the simpler racetrack configuration [41]. Field in the 16 T range was obtained at CERN [42] in 2015 and exceeded in 2020 [43] also in a racetrack configuration, as a result of the push provided by FCC-hh. The work in the 1990's and 2000's described above [44] has laid the foundations for the construction of the HL-LHC Nb_3Sn magnets. We also see in Fig. 2.1 that the timeline for progress in Nb_3Sn magnet technology is relatively slow. It took about ten years for CERN and associated laboratories [25–27], to reproduce the results obtained in the US. The conductor R&D initiated in 2004 led to significantly improved PIT conductor [45], with high-field performance comparable to RRP, though more sensitive to mechanical loading and lesser industrial maturity. PIT was used in RMC03, achieving a field of 16.2 T in 2015 [42] and bringing the EU efforts to a comparable level of maturity as in the US. This gives a good benchmark for the time scale necessary to engage with this field of technology, including the procurement of the required infrastructure (e.g., heat treatment furnaces, impregnation tanks) and the development of the necessary skills. The result of this work is the record magnet FRESCA2, built in collaboration between CERN and CEA and generating a field of 14.6 T in an aperture of 100 mm diameter [46]. As we indicated earlier, FRESCA2 is a test facility magnet, built with large operating margin and low engineering current density. This field level has been reproduced recently by the high-field model dipole MDPCT1 built within the scope of the US-MDP programme [47] as a step towards the highest field that can be attained with a cos-theta coil configuration (4 layers) and features relevant to an accelerator magnet, including high operating engineering current density. Finally, the plot shows the remarkable achievement in the development of Nb_3Sn accelerator magnets and in particular the MBH 11T dipole for HL-LHC built at CERN in collaboration with industry (GE-Alstom) [28]. Initiated in 2010, and profiting from the previous developments outlined above, it took a decade to produce the first magnet unit. The first such magnet, MBHB002, was tested in July 2019 and detains the record for this class [48]. Though successful in achieving the specified performance, the 11T programme has also demonstrated that there are still questions to be resolved on the long-term reliability of the specific design as well as the robustness of the manufacturing solutions, which will need to be addressed and resolved before this class of magnets can be used in an operating accelerator.

While Nb_3Sn is baseline for the high field magnets of HL-LHC, as well as the next step in SC accelerator magnet technology, great interest and significant progress was achieved recently in HTS accelerator magnet technology, reported graphically in Fig. 2.2. The general interest in the potential of this class of material with spectacular performance coalesced at about the same time in the EU and US, i.e., in the middle of the 2000's. On the US side, efforts were coordinated by the US-DOE sponsored Very High Field Superconducting Magnet Collaboration [49], which targeted Bi-2212 as HTS high-field conductor. This activity has now been drawn into the scope of US-MDP [24] which addresses both BSCCO-2212 and REBCO in various cables (Rutherford and CORC) and magnet (racetracks and canted cos-theta) configurations [50–52]. As mentioned above, in the EU, the first seeds were initiated with the EU-FP7 EuCARD collaboration [27], and were pursued intensely with the follow-up EU-FP7 EuCARD2 [35] and EU-H2020 ARIES [36] programmes. Much of the conductor effort in Europe was

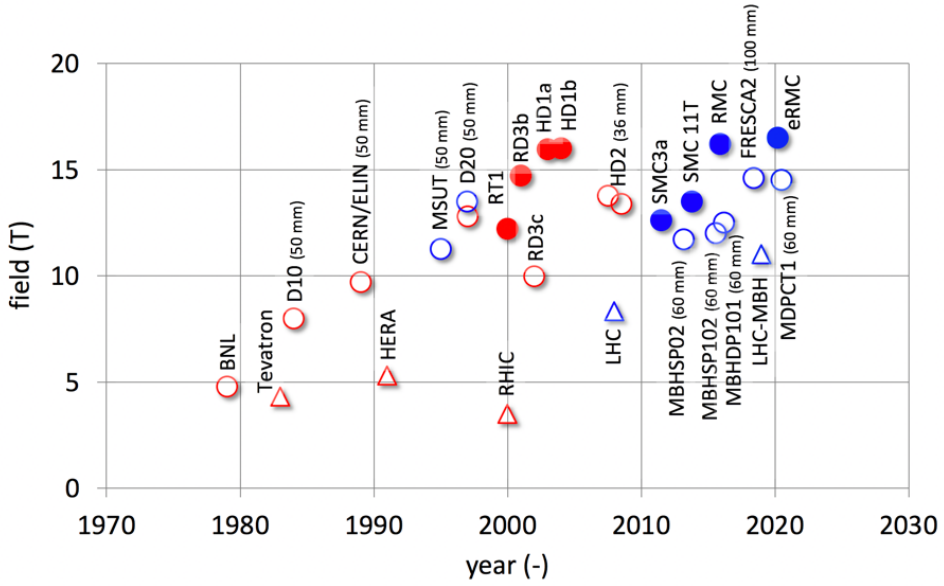


Fig. 2.1: Fields attained with Nb_3Sn dipole magnets of various configurations and dimensions, either at liquid (4.2 K, red) or superfluid (1.9 K, blue) helium temperature. Solid symbols are short demonstrator, i.e. “racetracks” with no bore, while open symbols are short models and long magnets with bore. For comparison, superconducting collider dipole magnets past and present are shown as triangles.

directed to REBCO, with a conscious choice mainly driven by the perceived potential and presumably simpler magnet technology [34]. The result of these activities are small demonstrator magnets that have reached bore fields in the range of 3 to 5 T in stand-alone mode. Figure 2.2 shows clearly that this is the beginning of the path that will hopefully lead to results comparable to and exceeding Nb_3Sn. The next step, complementary to the further development of the technology, is to use these small-size demonstrators as inserts in large bore, LTS background magnets to boost the central field and quantify the ability to exceed LTS magnet performance, while at the same time exploring this new range of fields and related forces.

2.3 Motivation

We can draw several conclusions from the rather simplified review of achievements outlined in the previous section:

- Lead times for the development of high-field magnets are long, the cycle to master new technology and bring novel ideas into application has a typical duration in excess of a decade. It is hence important to pursue R&D in parallel with scoping studies of new accelerators, to anticipate demands and guarantee that specific technology is available for a new HEP realisation at the moment when the decision of construction is taken;
- The development of novel SC magnet technology at the high field frontier requires specific infrastructure, often of large size. The necessary investment is considerable. Continuity is hence important in a programme that requires such infrastructure and the associated investment;
- The development of high field magnets naturally spans over many fields of science and requires a broad mix of competencies, implying a research team assembled as a collaboration ranging from

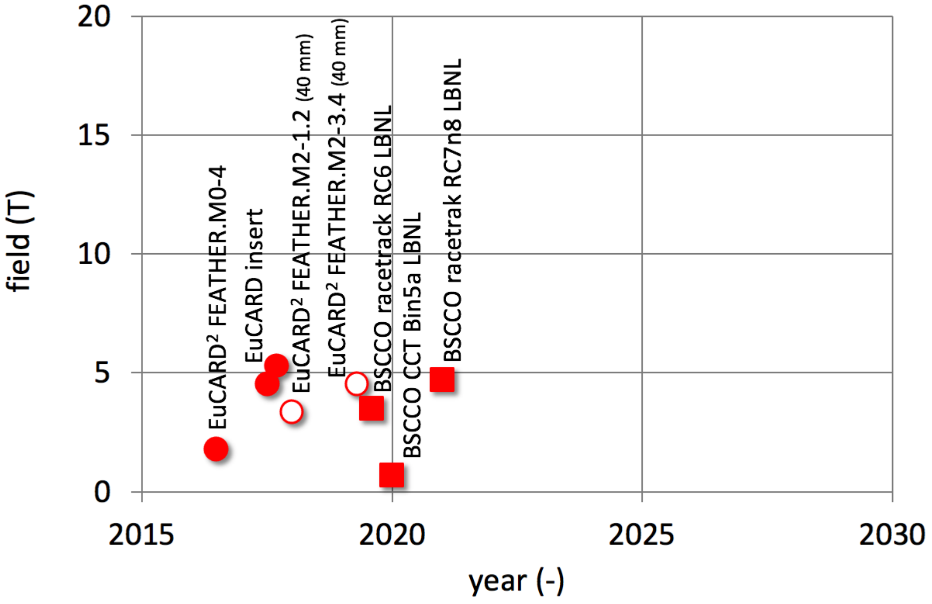


Fig. 2.2: Fields attained with HTS short demonstrator magnets of various configuration, producing a dipole field. All tests performed in liquid helium (4.2 K). Solid symbols are “racetracks” magnets with no bore, while open symbols are magnets with bore. Round symbols are magnets built with REBCO, square symbols with BSCCO-2212.

academia to industry. As for the infrastructure, any such research team needs considerable investment for its constitution and operates most effectively with continuity.

These considerations point to the need of a sustained and inclusive R&D programme for high-field superconducting accelerator magnets as a crucial element for the future of HEP, as underlined by the strong recommendation made by the European Strategy Group 2020 [53]. Not only should such a programme respond to the demands driven by specific projects and studies, it should also unfold as a continuous line of structured R&D, ready to respond to future HEP requests, and capable of feeding HEP with opportunities. The programme should include both, LTS and HTS materials in a synergetic manner and encompass the whole spectrum from conductor to accelerator magnets, including the key technologies that are necessary for the realisation of its goals. As mentioned earlier, such an R&D has a long lead time, with cycles of the order of ten years. Having dedicated teams will benefit focus and results, and may be necessary to match the timeline of the next European Strategy process, in about five to seven years. An important matter underlying the above considerations is that of cost. In this respect we have to consider not only the construction cost of magnets, which, as mentioned explicitly later, is a very significant challenge for future accelerators, but also the cost of the R&D itself, which may limit the scope and stretch the timeline, working against the wish for a fast turn-around. This is especially true for HTS materials, which explains why the scale of the demonstrators described earlier, as well as that of future ones, is kept intentionally small. An effective R&D programme will hence include practical considerations of cost. Given the ambitious scope, the long-term engagement and the cost, such a programme will have to be of collaborative nature, with strong partnership among national laboratories, universities and industry. The R&D programme should capitalise on the state-of-the-art and achievements obtained so far, continuing the work outline presented earlier, which is largely still on-going. Indeed, an R&D programme with the characteristics outlined is consistent with the plans of other organisations in HEP already mentioned earlier [24, 54], as well as other research fields relevant to our discussion [55–58]. Last but not least, it will be important to measure the impact of the R&D

programme against its relevance and impact towards other applications in science and society.

2.4 Panel Activities

The HFM Expert Panel meetings has held a series of fourteen meetings to date. All meetings are collected under an indico category containing the material presented and minutes (`https://indico.cern.ch/category/13420/`). Two open international workshops were organised and held virtually. Details on the workshops can be found at:

- "HFM State-of-the-Art" (SoftA workshop) took place April 14-16, 2021: `https://indico.cern.ch/event/1012691/`
- "HFM Roadmap Preparation" (RoaP workshop) took place June 1 and 3, 2021: `https://indico.cern.ch/event/1032199/`

The workshops included an expert evaluation of the state of the art in HFM for accelerators, topical reviews and technical roadmaps and an overview of the strategic positioning of the main EU actors, including laboratories, universities and industry. The proceedings of the above workshops constitute the main body of the wide and open consultation of the community demanded by the LDG.

The elements collected were discussed in a restricted workshop towards a "Roadmap Implementation" (RoaI), limited to the panel members, that took place September 15-16, 2021. The proceedings of this workshop are the basis for the proposal described in this report.

2.5 State-of-the-Art

2.5.1 Superconductor

The prime challenge to achieve high magnetic fields of interest to HEP is to have a conductor with sufficiently high engineering current density, J_e with good mechanical properties. Based on experience from superconducting accelerator built to-date, a target of $J_e \approx 600$ A/mm^2 at the operating field and temperature is appropriate to yield a compact and efficient coil design for an affordable magnet [44]. The J_e target should be reached with no degradation and limited training and making use of the highest possible fraction of the current carrying capacity of the specific superconductor. All known high field superconductors (Nb_3Sn and HTS) are brittle and it is of paramount importance that the state of stress and strain be mastered and controlled throughout all magnet fabrication and operation conditions.

An overview of the state-of-the-art J_e for LTS and HTS technical superconductors is reported in Fig. 2.3. The performances reported there refer to the best industrial products, not necessarily produced in large scale. The LTS materials of interest are Nb-Ti, an industrial commodity and Nb_3Sn, whose production is restricted to a single established manufacturer for the high-performance wires required by HEP. On the side of HTS, two high-field superconductors are currently available on the market, BSSCO, also produced at a single location worldwide, and REBCO, with several established producers in Europe and worldwide.

In the case of Nb_3Sn the target of J_e can be translated in a minimum critical current density in the superconductor, J_C, of the order of 1500 A/mm^2 at 16 T and 4.2 K [59]. This target, which is a mandatory performance requirement for a compact accelerator magnet, is at the upper boundary of the state-of-the-art best wire performance (see Fig. 2.3) and exceeds by about 50% the performance specified for the industrial production of HL-LHC Nb_3Sn. This implies pursuing and industrialising the R&D work launched in the framework of the FCC CERN Conductor Development programme and undertaken in the last five years by the superconductors' community on basic material and wire fabrication [60]. Results are encouraging and open the route for novel Nb_3Sn with high in-field electrical performance. In particular, the internal oxidation route has proven in two laboratories feasibility of exceeding the FCC target in multi-filamentary wires [61,62].

For HTS, the target J_e is actually common practice for the present production industrial standards of REBCO and BSCCO materials (see again Fig. 2.3), so we do not envision a focused effort in the direction of increasing J_C. However, other aspects of the conductor require tailored developments. It is interesting to note that recent developments have demonstrated that the target J_e can be achieved by REBCO also at temperatures of 10 to 20 K.

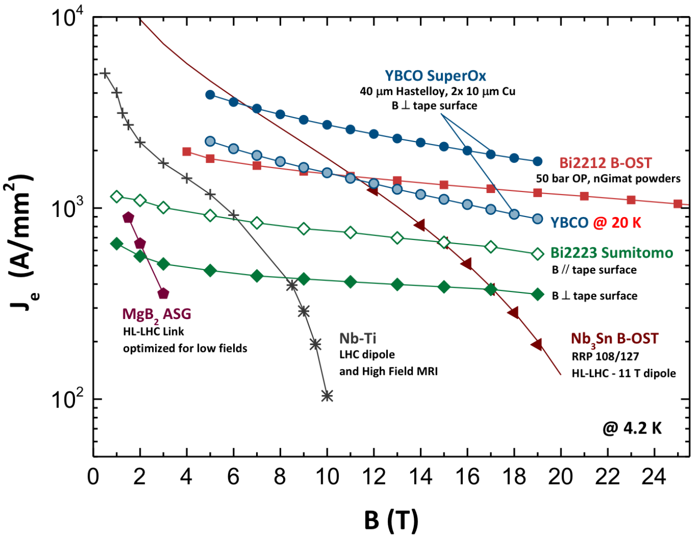


Fig. 2.3: Engineering current density J_e vs. magnetic field for several LTS and HTS conductors at 4.2 K. Latest results for REBCO tapes are reported both at 4.2 K as well as 20 K.

Besides J_e, and in common to both LTS and HTS, other performance parameters need to be met. In particular, mechanical strength and tolerance of wires, tapes and cables to stress and strain are of key importance, specifically to mitigate the risk of brittle fracture under electro- and thermo-mechanical loads. Field quality aspects, and in particular equivalent filament size, for Nb_3Sn and impact of the large width of the tapes, for HTS, shall be studied. The latter is of key importance for confirming suitability of HTS tape for use in accelerator quality magnets. Finally, quench protection aspects need to be addressed starting already at the level of conductor, i.e. from wires and tapes, to cables and eventually at the magnet level.

While Rutherford cables are the choice for LTS accelerator magnets, high current HTS cables suitable for use in accelerator magnets need to be developed and qualified.

Industrialisation of high-quality conductor for large scale application and its cost are challenges to be addressed for both Nb_3Sn and HTS. Large scale production of conductor would help in the optimisation of the manufacturing processes and therefore reduction of cost. In the development phase, selection of processes and technology has to be done taking into account the future need of industrialisation. At the time of writing, several manufacturers of HTS tape exist worldwide – Europe, USA, Korea, Russia and China. However, only one manufacturer to date can produce long lengths of state-of-the-art HL-LHC Nb_3Sn wire. Effort still has to be made to guarantee availability of high-performance Nb_3Sn wire and build-up credibility for a potential future large scale production.

2.5.2 Mechanics

2.5.2.1 Stress and Strain in the Coil Composite

All high-field superconductors are strain and stress sensitive and brittle, as we mentioned above. Besides the known reversible critical current dependency on applied strain, the main concern is that applied stress or strain exceeding allowable limits for any of the constituent of a wire or tape generally leads to a permanent reduction of critical current and eventual damage through fracture of the superconducting phase. An example of degradation mechanisms is plastic deformation of the Cu matrix in Nb_3Sn wires, which takes place already at moderate stress (range of 150 MPa) and which can freeze a strain state and lead to irreversible J_C reduction. At higher applied longitudinal and transverse stress, the brittle Nb_3Sn can fracture, which reduces the cross section available to current transport and the wire critical current. Degradation mechanisms for multi-filamentary BSCCO are broadly similar; the Ag resistive matrix has even lower yield strength than the Cu matrix customarily used for Nb_3Sn wires. On layered REBCO tapes, in-plane shear or peeling forces can lead to delamination at values as low as a few MPa.

Given the above considerations, it is paramount to minimise stress concentrations on the conductor. This is why the coils wound from brittle conductor or cable are cast in a matrix material such as glass fiber wraps and impregnated with epoxy resin. The fiber increases the strength and reduces cracking at cryogenic temperature. The coil becomes a composite material made of conductor, glass and resin. The sources of stress and strain in the coil composite are divided into sources of either external or internal origin. Under external sources we classify the electro-magnetic (Lorentz) forces and forces or displacements transmitted at the coil-structure interface. Lorentz forces scale with the magnetic field in the center of the aperture and the Ampere-turns, i.e., in first approximation quadratically with the field in the aperture, as shown in Fig. 2.4. In some quench scenarios, such as quench protection transients with fast current pulses driven by the Coupling Loss Induced Quench (CLIQ) system, or in non-insulated or partially insulated coils, Lorentz force patterns may vary significantly from the nominal configuration. Stress and strain transmission at the coil-structure interface is discussed in more detail below in the context of pre-load. We note that tight geometrical tolerances on the coil shape as well as on the structure's interfaces are required in order to avoid local stress-concentration points or excessive overall constraints.

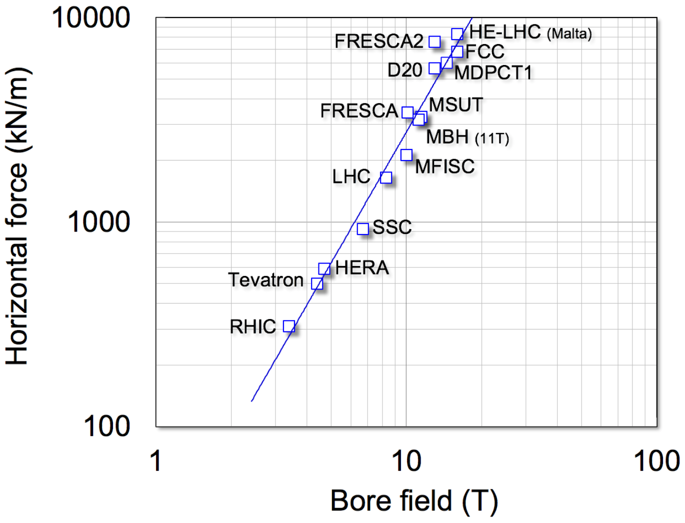


Fig. 2.4: Horizontal forces per quadrant in dipole accelerator magnets (built and tested or design studies).

Internal sources of stress are induced by the difference of Coefficient of Thermal Expansion (CTE) among the constituents of the coil composite (e.g. conductor, glass fiber and epoxy resin). For example, a differential stress inside the conductor is already present after the heat treatment of Nb_3Sn. More stress is accumulated due to a CTE mismatch between the conductor and the glass-resin matrix during the cool-down from the resin-curing temperature down to cryogenic conditions. The thermal expansion of the coil as a consequence of a quench is the source of additional internal and external stresses, where the internal stresses are due to temperature gradients in the coil and the external stresses are due to the constraint on the coil shape on the boundary.

The local stress and strain in the coil composite follow from the sum of all internal and external contributions. Good engineering requires the knowledge of critical values of stress and strain in the composite to produce a design that implements appropriate safety margins within realistic tolerances. We note that critical values may vary widely between conductor types and material compositions. Experimental studies and multi-scale modeling are required to establish reliable input into the design workflow. Moreover, we note that for a given central field, the level and orientation of stress and strain in the coil composite varies widely among different coil types, coil sizes, materials, mechanical concepts, etc.

2.5.2.2 *Structures, Pre-load and Stress Management*

The transverse and axial forces resulting from the loads identified above are reacted on a stiff internal or external structure, whose aim is to control and minimise the deformation of the coil under Lorentz forces. In fact, it is customary to design the mechanical structure so that it applies a coil compression (or pre-load) at cryogenic temperature. This pre-load is introduced to reduce the amount of relative movement between the coil and the structure under Lorentz forces. A commonly used design stratagem is so-called "full pre-load", which consists in providing enough pre-load at cryogenic conditions that all interfaces remain in compression up to the ultimate design current. While the full pre-load stratagem is frequently observed in the design phase, it is rarely rigorously applied in R&D practice, especially during the initial magnet assembly and powering. Indeed, the extent of required pre-load at cryogenic temperature is a matter of debate.

To meet the desired support goal, an external structure must have a CTE identical to the coil composite (to match dimensional change) or higher (to introduce additional load at cool-down). In the case of an external structure made from material with lower CTE compared to the coil, as is the case of several high-strength alloys, the structure can be tensioned, and the coil pre-compressed at room temperature, so that the structure remains in contact with the coil throughout the cool-down.

An internal structure may be used to increase the coil's stiffness and to transmit the external structure's stiffness into the inner windings of the coil. An internal structure (often called stress management) may be a path towards reduced or no pre-load and overall lower coil stresses. It comes at the price of diluted engineering current density and wide-spread internal coil-structure interfaces that may be subject to electrical or mechanical failure.

2.5.2.3 *Mechanical Engineering Challenges in LTS, HTS and Hybrid Magnets*

Nb_3Sn Magnets

Performance of Nb_3Sn magnets is intimately connected to mastering the magnet mechanics. This can be quantified by looking at the extent of magnet training (i.e. the number of training quenches required to reach the desired operating current) and the performance retention (e.g. absence of re-training after thermal cycle and avoiding degradation).

Magnet training is usually assumed to be linked to one or several of the following mechanical phenomena: (1) cracks in the glass-epoxy insulation, (2) resin-metal debonding and (3) stick-slip movement between the coil and the structure. A performance limitation of mechanical origin, i.e., a failure to reach the design current, may be due to (1) repetitive stick-slip movement, or (2) a reduced conductor performance/degradation due to excessive stress or strain.

As to the last point, studies on Nb_3Sn under stress and strain demonstrate relatively low tolerance to mechanical loads. Depending on the specific wire architecture and properties, permanent current reduction due to plastic deformation of the annealed-copper stabiliser starts at around 150 MPa transverse pressure, if applied homogeneously in cryogenic conditions. Filament fracture in these conditions may occur beyond 200 MPa. At room temperature, filament breakage may happen already at 150 MPa. This range of stress is typical of the average pre-load required by high-field Nb_3Sn magnets under the full-preload paradigm. It should be underlined that components and assembly tolerances affect the local stress and strain state, resulting in a spread which should be taken into account in the design and manufacturing.

Cyclic loads, be it powering cycles or cool-down-powering-warm-up cycles (CD-PO-WU), can lead to a degradation when a combination of relative movement (due to Lorentz forces and/or CTE mismatch) and friction leave the coil-structure interface in a different state than the original one. Repeated CD-PO-WU cycles may lead to detrimental ratcheting. Repeated quenching may lead to fatigue degradation of the insulation system and quenches could lead to softening if the local temperature approaches the glass temperature of the polymer.

HTS Magnets

HTS coils at low temperature have enthalpy margins up to 100 times larger than those observed in LTS coils. Consequently, energy-release and associated training due to cracking, debonding, or stick-slip motion are much less of a concern than in LTS coils. Still, the increased field reach of HTS magnets with respect to LTS ones results in a significant increase of Lorentz force and poses an acute challenge to the composite coil and structural design.

High-strength materials are required to react forces within a relatively compact footprint of an accelerator tunnel. As for the coil composite, any stress concentrations on the HTS wire or tape must be avoided, either by design or via a supporting filler material. In the absence of stress concentrations, REBCO tape will typically withstand very high transverse stress of up to 400 MPa. Much lower values are observed if the stress is localised. At the same time, it has been observed that a CTE mismatch with a filler like epoxy resin, can lead to tape delamination and result in severe degradation.

Screening currents in REBCO tapes, i.e., non-zero dipolar induced current configurations, can reach high amplitudes in the low-field regions of a coil. Lorentz forces acting on screening currents produce shear and peeling forces, they have been linked to tape deformations and crack propagation in solenoid magnets and need to be considered in the magnet design.

Lastly, coil-wide current-sharing mechanisms of no-insulation, partial-insulation and other advanced-insulation schemes, inherently lead to hard-to-predict current and force patterns in the event of a quench. Such configurations may be exceedingly stable in almost all situations, but see their mechanical integrity compromised if a quench takes place.

Hybrid Magnets

Hybrid LTS+HTS magnets are considered for cost reasons. All of the above force-related challenges for Nb_3Sn and REBCO coils combined apply to hybrid magnets. In addition, the Lorentz forces of the insert must be reacted against the external structure via the intermediary of the Nb_3Sn outsert. Some version of an internal structure is likely required to manage the stress on the outsert coil. Moreover, a potentially risky mechanical scenario arises if a quench in one part of the coil is allowed to induce a rise in current in the other part.

2.5.3 Stored energy and magnet protection

In Fig. 2.5, we have collected the values of the stored energy per unit length (measured or computed) for a set of existing and conceptual magnet dipoles. The energy stored increased with the magnetic field to the power 2.5. This is consistent with the dependence of energy and field for ideal dipoles. Consequently, aiming at the range of 16 to 20 T, the increase in stored energy with respect to the LHC will be a factor of 4 to 10, ranging from 1 to 3 MJ/m per aperture. This has implications on magnet design and technology, stemming from considerations of powering (inductance and voltage required to ramp the string of dipoles), as well as magnet protection (energy density and dump time).

A second element of interest is the energy per unit volume, one of the key ingredients to the maximum temperature reached during a quench. As we see in Fig. 2.6, the energy density also increases.

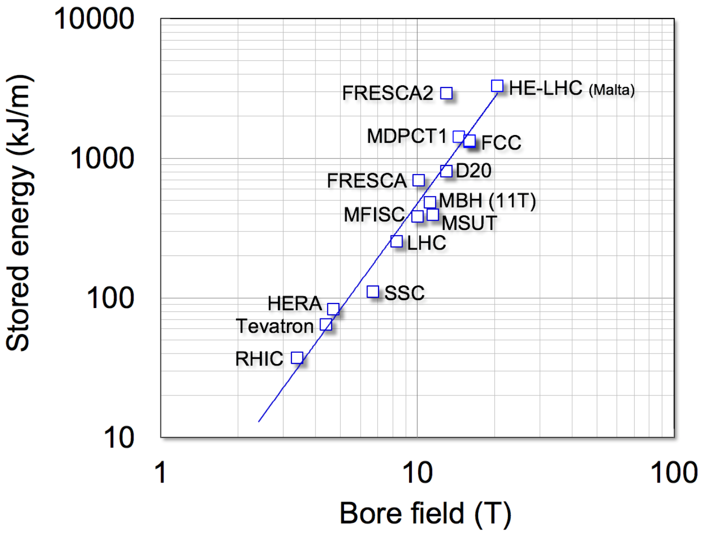


Fig. 2.5: Scaling of stored energy per unit length for dipole magnets built or designed (values refer to one aperture in case of the LHC, 11T, FCC and HE-LHC). The line represents the dependence of the energy with the magnetic field to the 2.5

The LHC dipole magnets have a stored energy density of 50 MJ/m^3. This increases up to 80 to 100 MJ/m^3 for the HL-LHC Nb$_3$Sn magnets. The value reaches 200 MJ/m^3 for the most compact 16T FCC designs, i.e. a factor 4 larger than the LHC magnets.

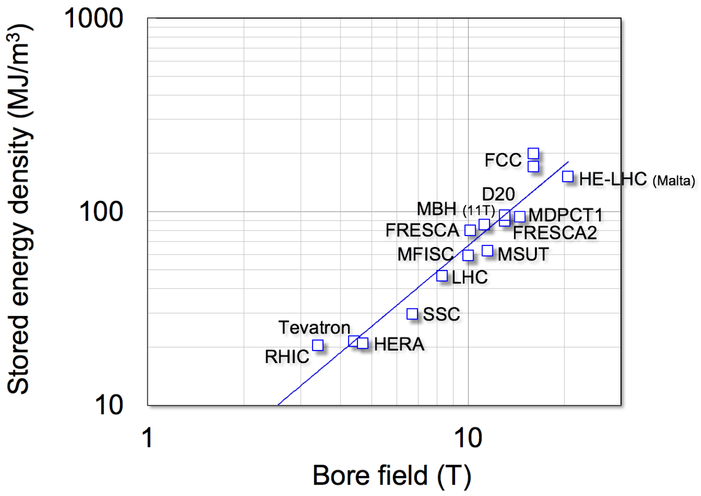


Fig. 2.6: Scaling of stored energy density for the dipole magnets considered in Fig. 2.5

Considerations of magnet ramping would favour large voltage or current, or a combination of both, to power the magnets of large stored energy. Increasing either terminal voltage or cable current is however not a trivial matter and powering considerations need to be included from the start in the magnet design. Furthermore, in order to keep the hot-spot temperature in the coil after a quench below acceptable values (around 300 to 400 K, but actual damage limits are not well assessed), the quench detection and active dump need to act at least three to five times faster than in the LHC. This is already challenging for Nb_3Sn, but may be perceived as a tantalising task for HTS, whose quench propagation speed is an order of magnitude slower than in LTS and quench detection based on established instrumentation would thus take an order of magnitude longer. In reality, quench initiation and evolution in the case of HTS is a much different process than the well-characterised behaviour of LTS. Though relatively unexplored, the large difference in quench initiation and propagation in HTS vs. LTS may actually be an opportunity to develop alternative schemes, e.g. profiting from the early low voltage quench precursors arising during the current sharing process to anticipate the evolution, or the relatively long time scales of voltage development to improve measurement sensitivity.

The challenges posed by magnet powering and protection have multiple facets and they will need to be addressed in an integrated manner. There is a remarkable parallel between the challenges of magnet protection and mechanical design. Firstly, detection and protection in the regime of stored energy and energy density described above will require new concepts, especially for HTS (e.g. non-insulated or 'controlled-insulation' windings). Secondly, measurement and characterisation of the thermo-mechanical and dielectric properties and limits of coils and structures will be a mandatory step to ensure that the design are safely within engineering limits.

2.5.4 Cost

Cost is the final challenge of high field magnets for accelerators. We have identified the following cost drivers and opportunities:

- The conductor is the primary cost driver of high field magnets. This was the case already in the Nb-Ti based LHC, where the superconductor cost was about 25% of the total cost of the magnet (excluding the external services like power supply and other ancillaries). The cost of Nb_3Sn for an FCC-hh is projected to be half of the cost of the magnet system. Conductor R&D should prime solutions such as scalable architectures, or designs that are more tolerant of raw material properties as means to reducing the cost of the superconductor. Similarly, magnet designs should strive to make the most efficient use of the superconductor cross section, encouraging engineering solutions that go in this direction;
- The second largest cost is associated with the construction of the coil. Winding is the dominant part, but coil manipulation from winding to coil assembly should not be neglected, especially for Nb_3Sn. More in general, magnet design should aim at reducing construction complexity. Coil winding is at present an essentially manually driven operation, assisted by some level of automatisation [1]. Given the experience gained on coil winding in recent projects (e.g. ITER and JT-60SA) and given the number of coils to be wound for a future accelerator (e.g. 20,000 identical coils for the FCC-hh dipoles) advanced robotics seems a crucial topic of R&D to reduce winding cost. The analysis of benefits of automation and robotics should also span beyond coil winding, i.e. coil handling through operations like insertion in the heat treatment oven, splicing, impregnation, metrology, etc. Note that this work can be staged, e.g. to take place in a second phase of R&D or in the pre-industrialisation phase;
- The third cost driver is the magnet mechanical structure. The choice among available options (e.g. collars, bladders and keys, yoke-as-restrain and others) shall be based not only on field reach, but also on cost consideration of tooling and operation. Indeed, some structures seem more suitable to automation and robotisation (e.g. collar assembly), while other may rely on simpler tooling (e.g.

---

[1] Given the rapid evolution of the field is not advisable at this stage heavily investing in robotised tooling. The idea is rather to carry out a study of what are the areas of the whole magnet construction that would benefit from robotisation. We also underline that robotisation can be beneficial not only for reducing construction cost, but also for increasing construction quality and enhancing the homogeneity of the production, which, in last analysis, reflects also in cost (improved yield). The proposed study should also consider the time by which introducing robotisation would be useful (neither too early, nor too late).

bladders and keys). The above considerations should be injected early in the magnet R&D study and may be a good investment to guide the best structure selection decision when the time comes.

The main challenge can be summarised in finding the true optimum between magnet performance and total cost, i.e. not only the initial investment but also including cost of operation. This tends to favour operation at higher temperatures (e.g. 4.2 K for Nb_3Sn and 20 K for HTS) where, besides the improved cryogenic efficiency, the enthalpy margin is higher and the burden of training is reduced, thus improving availability and reducing operation cost. Similarly, a robust magnet design, with large operating margin, is a way to avoid rejection, increase yield during production, while increasing operating availability, thus reducing both capital and operation cost. Simpler designs should be favoured, built with repeated operations that might be more suitable to automation as described earlier, even if slightly less performing. In order to forecast costs correctly, industry should be involved as soon as possible in an efficient manner [2]. The industry involvement can complement laboratory efforts made using existing large facilities. Without industry engagement, it is important that work in laboratories and especially on long magnets, is followed up using a detailed budget accounting system that could be used as basis to devise industrial production cost.

HTS optimisation is quite different from Nb_3Sn and deserves a special mention. Present HTS conductor cost is much higher than Nb_3Sn. However, contrary to Nb_3Sn, HTS price is decreasing, driven by demand and steady funding from fusion research (in particular two privately funded initiatives in EU and US) and the energy sector. Appreciable material quantities, much above HEP needs, are on order to satisfy the needs from these initiatives. In this respect, HEP should rather focus on cable and magnet engineering, leaving the cost of superconductor aside, at least in this phase.

As to the magnet construction and operation, depending on the HTS material (REBCO) there is no need of heat treatment, mechanical properties are better and stability much higher than LTS. Considering this, HTS magnet technology could be significantly less expensive than Nb_3Sn. This needs to be verified since it could lead to a change in paradigm for a FCC-hh or a muon collider, should the cost of HTS conductor attain the same level as Nb_3Sn. The above considerations can be included in the R&D programme, where besides the technology development towards the step-by-step validation of the technology, it is important to include a near-full size HTS dipole (1 m long) to be manufactured and tested. This will allow gauging the true cost of an HTS accelerator magnet by tracking material and personnel investment throughout the entire construction process. A suitable target for one such magnet could be a typical HL-LHC model magnet size and field (e.g. 50…60 mm aperture, field in the 11…12 T range) for which cost is well established.

2.6 R&D Objectives

Based on the state-of-the-art and challenges described above and the strong statements encouraging high-profile R&D activities on high field accelerator magnets contained in the ESPPU, we can formulate the following long-term technical goals of the HFM R&D:

1. Demonstrate Nb_3Sn magnet technology for large scale deployment, pushing it to its practical limits, both in terms of maximum field as well as production scale. The drivers of this first objective are to exploit Nb_3Sn to its full potential, developing design, material and industrial process solutions that are required for the construction of a new accelerator based on this technology. We

---

[2] We believe that industry will consider an involvement seriously only if:

- There is continuity of work and funding. Industry needs to make plans with at least five years horizon to be effective;
- The issue of IP is clarified. It is unlikely that industrial IP will be unveiled and provide most qualified resources, if the IP protection and sharing is not fairly settled from the start.

separate the search for maximum field from the development of accelerator-magnet technology by defining the following two dependent sub-goals:

(a) Quantify and demonstrate Nb_3Sn ultimate field. This effort consists in the development of conductor and magnet technology towards the ultimate Nb_3Sn performance. The projected upper field limit for a dipole is presently 16 T (the reference for FCC-hh). This field should be intended as a target against which the performance of a series of short demonstration and model magnets shall be measured.

(b) Develop Nb_3Sn magnet technology for collider-scale production, through robust design, industrial manufacturing processes and cost reduction. The present benchmark for Nb_3Sn accelerator magnets is HL-LHC, with an ultimate field in the range of 12 T and a production of the order of a few tens of magnets. Nb_3Sn magnets of this class should be made more robust, considering the full spectrum of electro-thermo-mechanical effects and the processes adapted to an industrial production on the scale of a thousand magnets. The success of this development should be measured against the construction and performance of long demonstrator and prototype magnets, initially targeting the 12 T range.

2. Demonstrate suitability of HTS for accelerator magnet applications providing a proof-of-principle of HTS magnet technology beyond the reach of Nb_3Sn. The goal of this programme is to break from the evolutionary changes of LTS magnet technology, from Nb-Ti to Nb_3Sn, by initiating a revolution that will require a number of significant innovations in material science and engineering. A suitable target dipole field for this development is set for 20 T, significantly above the projected reach of Nb_3Sn (see above). Besides answering the basic question on field reach and suitability for accelerator applications, HTS should be considered for specific applications where not only high field and field gradient are sought, but also higher operating temperature, large operating margin and radiation tolerance are premium.

In addition, it is also important to underline that the HFM R&D programme is intended as a focused, innovative, mission-style R&D in a collaborative and global effort, intending that the R&D is expected to produce specific results relevant to future accelerators (focused), with well-defined timeline, deliverables and milestones (mission-style) and paying special attention to novel engineering solutions (innovative).

The above objectives can be traced to the requests originated from the European Strategy for Particle Physics (ESPP) process, and documented in the ESPP update endorsed by the CERN Council, in June 2020 [53, 63].

It is possible to represent graphically the main objectives in the form reported in Fig. 2.7, where we plot a length of dipole magnets produced (i.e. magnet length times the number of magnets) vs. the bore field. The blue line gives an idea of the state-of-the-art, bounded on one side by the nearly 20 km of Nb-Ti LHC double-aperture magnets in the range of 9 T ultimate field and at the high-field end by single model magnets with approximately 1 m length and in the range of 14.5 T maximum field. The HL-LHC point marks the production of 6 dipoles of 5.5 m length with 12 T ultimate field. The objectives listed above can be represented in this plot as an extension of the field reach by moving along the horizontal axis (magnetic field) thanks to advances in Nb_3Sn and HTS magnet technology, as well as an extension of the production capability by moving along the vertical axis (magnet length) thanks to the development of robust and efficient design and manufacturing processes. Note for clarity that the symbols at higher field (Nb_3Sn at 16 T, HTS at 20 T) and longer magnet length (5 km) represent targets, providing the desired R&D direction and they should not be read as specified performance.

The parallelism in the development is an important element of the programme. We believe this is necessary to provide significant advances towards the long-term goals within approximately five to seven year time frame, i.e., responding to the notion of a mission-style R&D that needs to feed the discussion for the next iteration of the European Strategy for Particle Physics with crucial deliverables.

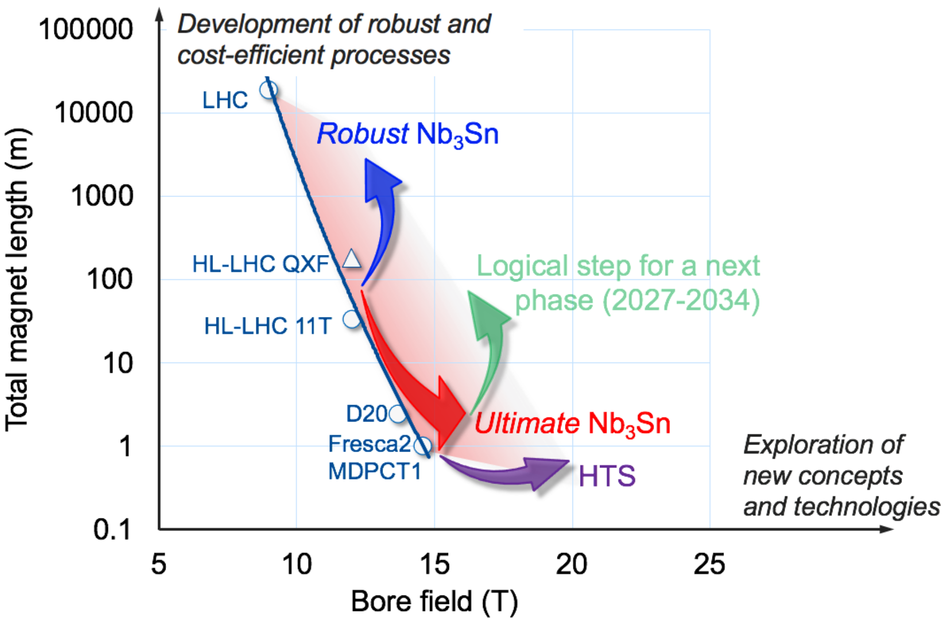


Fig. 2.7: Graphical representation of the objective of the HFM R&D programme in this phase, 2021–2027. Both fronts of maximum field (red for Nb_3Sn, purple for HTS) and large-scale production (blue) are intended to be advanced at the same time. Also represented, in green, is a possible evolution for the longer term, 2027–2034.

The graphical representation of Fig. 2.7 discussed above only defines the first step in the R&D, which should enfold in the 2021-2027 period. Naturally, once it is proven that the field reach can be extended and the actual level is demonstrated, we can foresee the need of a follow-up phase. This should unfold in the period 2027-2034, being dedicated to proving the new generation of high field magnets on a scale of accelerator-magnet prototype, i.e., several meters of cumulated magnet length. This is represented by the green arrow in Fig. 2.7, whereby the choice of the field level, and the actual magnet length to be realised are again only indicative, and will depend on the results of the next years of R&D.

A further element in support to the R&D targets formulated above is that they respond directly to the demands coming from principal stakeholders. As evident from the quotations of the reference ESPP documents, the HFM R&D targets formulated for Nb_3Sn magnets are stemming directly from the demands of an FCC-hh [13]. In the staged approach described here, they are also compatible with the allotted development time of the integrated FCC programme [64]. Indeed, the parallelism proposed has the advantage that it will provide early elements for a decision on magnet technology towards the construction of the next hadron collider.

At the same time, while we recognise that the development of capture, cooling, acceleration and collider magnets for a muon collider [19] remains a formidable task, to be addressed by dedicated and targeted studies: an R&D on high-field Nb_3Sn and HTS magnets along the lines outlined above will be highly relevant to develop suitable design and technology solutions. Examples that will become clearer in the following discussion are (i) HTS conductor and coil winding technology towards the 20 T target, including partial- and no-insulation windings, whose results could be applied to the ultra-high field solenoids of the muon capture and cooling section, or to the high-field collider magnets; (ii) the study of stress management in Nb_3Sn magnets towards their ultimate performance, directly applicable to large aperture dipoles and quadrupoles for the high-energy muon collider main ring and IR magnets; or (iii) considering HTS magnet operation at temperature above that of liquid helium, as mentioned above, is relevant to understanding operating margin in the high heat load and radiation environment of the high-energy muon collider ring.

2.6.1 programme Drivers

To define the work necessary to meet the objectives above, we can formulate practical questions that should be addressed in priority by a High Field Magnet R&D programme. These questions are the R&D programme drivers, and they can be broadly divided into questions of relevance for Nb_3Sn, HTS and common to both lines of development.

For Nb_3Sn high-field accelerator magnets the following leading questions can be drawn from the earlier discussion, and will need to be addressed being aware of the pioneering Nb_3Sn development that has led to the milestone HL-LHC magnets, the present reference technology:

- Q1: What is the practical magnetic field reach of Nb_3Sn accelerator magnets, driven by conductor performance, but bounded by mechanical and protection limits and in particular is the target of 16 T for the ultimate performance of an affordable Nb_3Sn accelerator magnets realistic?
- Q2: Can we improve robustness of Nb_3Sn magnets, reduce training, guarantee performance retention, and prevent degradation, considering the complete life cycle of the magnet, from manufacturing to operation?
- Q3: Which mechanical designs and manufacturing solutions, from basic materials, composites, structures and interfaces need to be put in place to manage forces and stresses in a high-field Nb_3Sn accelerator magnet?
- Q4: What are the design and material limits of a quenching high-field Nb_3Sn magnet and which detection and protection methods need to be put in place to remain within these limits?
- Q5: How can we improve design and manufacturing processes of a high-field Nb_3Sn accelerator magnet to reduce risk, increase efficiency and decrease cost as required by an industrial production on large scale?

For HTS high-field accelerator magnets, the leading questions are more essential to the potential and suitability for accelerators, with the awareness that the body of work in progress is not yet at the point where a reference technology can be defined:

- Q6: What is the potential of HTS materials to equal and surpass the magnetic field reach of high-field accelerator magnets beyond the present and projected limits of Nb_3Sn and in particular is the target of 20 T for HTS accelerator magnets realistic?
- Q7: Besides magnetic field reach, is HTS a suitable conductor for accelerator magnets, considering all aspects from conductor to magnet and from design to operation?
- Q8:What engineering solutions, existing or to be developed and demonstrated, will be required to build and operate such magnets, also taking into account material availability and manufacturing cost?

Finally, common to Nb_3Sn and HTS:

- Q9: What infrastructure and instrumentation are required for a successful HFM R&D, taking into account aspects ranging from applied material science to production and test of superconductors, cables, models and prototype magnets?
- Q10: What is the quantified potential of the materials and technologies that will be developed within the scope of the HFM R&D programme towards other applications to science and society (medical, energy, high magnetic field science) and by which means could this potential be exploited at best?

2.7 Delivery Plan

2.7.1 Innovation Through a Fast-Turnaround R&D programme

To respond timely to the challenge posed by high field accelerator magnets of the next generation, we have built the proposed programme following the general approach described below.

A first characteristic element is that the HFM R&D Programme shall achieve decisive progress in three areas of performance, robustness, and projected cost. This applies in principle to both Nb_3Sn and HTS magnets, though different weight will be put in each area. Any technology demonstration will strive to meet the respective specifications of the three areas, i.e. seeking their intersection. The first step in this direction is to define target specifications for each of the areas meeting the declared goals, pronounced earlier, and in line with the 2020 ESPPU. The specifications provide the required guidance towards the demonstration of technical and financial feasibility. Finding the right balance between cost-efficiency, maximum field, and robustness will imply a compromise on the three targets. The specification of the three areas will need to encompass the following main aspects:

- Performance - This consists not only in meeting the central field, with swift training exhibiting no performance limitation, but also in retaining such performance, and in particular preventing degradation under all foreseeable operating conditions, including quenches and repeated thermal cycles. A crucial element of performance is a successful quench detection and protection strategy, avoiding overheating or electrical breakdown. Finally, the field quality demanded for accelerator operation, and an efficient thermal management are important performance indicators of a specific design and technology;
- Robustness - This covers several aspects of magnet design and manufacturing, and revolves mainly around the engineering knowledge and margin of a specific technology. Going beyond the present focus of robustness, driven by considerations of magnet performance retention, we measure its effectiveness by looking at the scalability of a given technology both in terms of length and units. This translates in wider range of material and components tolerances, suitability for automation, improved reproducibility and a high yield of conforming coils and magnets.
- Cost - Initially according to the ALARA principle (As Low As Reasonably Possible), a cost target will be defined based on a projected accelerator-scale production. Having such target will be helpful to induce design, process and material optimization.

A second characteristic element of the HFM R&D Programme is its cross-cutting and integrative nature. A compatible selection of electro-magnetic, mechanical and thermal design, conductor, materials, and manufacturing processes and methods needs to be integrated seamlessly with instrumentation and protection into a specific magnet solution responding to the specification mentioned above. Various such selections are possible, and although an absolutely objective comparison of technical solutions may never be possible, starting from a unique design basis is crucial to allow for a fair technology selection. In this context, it is important that sufficient means and time are allocated to ensure that all realizations are thoroughly tested and analyzed.

Despite the broad body of knowledge in accelerator magnet technology already existing and described in the preceding sections, we believe that demonstrating ultimate performance will require innovation beyond the state of the art in most areas. This, in turn, will call for a period of up-front technology R&D, followed by a multi-year magnet design, construction and testing process (typical durations range from 3 to 4 years). In a serialized program, the experimental feedback would come late in the process, likely too late for substantial changes to the selected technologies. Only few iterations could be implemented and tested within the timeline of the ESPP update, with minor tweaks and improvements. We conclude that the innovation potential of this approach is limited, mainly frustrated by the slow turnaround.

This reflection leads to the third characteristic element of the HFM R&D Programme. As an alternative we propose conceiving the magnet R&D as a succession of meaningful fast-turnaround demonstration vehicles, ranging from non-powered material and composite samples to powered sub-scale samples and mechanical models, to racetrack coils and/or demonstrator coils in short and long mirror configurations, to accelerator magnet demonstrators at intermediate fields and, eventually, towards ultimate specifications. In this way, new technologies can be tested under realistic conditions at the earliest possible stage, the smallest permissible scale and cost and fastest pace.

We represent this process schematically in Figure 2.8. The different levels of the pyramid represent the stages of an innovation climb, providing means for a constant bi-directional stream of feedback to both technology and magnet R&D. It is understood that in this scheme, technology R&D does not stop once the first demonstrator magnet is designed. Also, demonstration can go through steps of increasing performance (and complexity). The most efficient technologies naturally rise to the top of the pyramid in due time and are implemented when judged mature. Access to testing infrastructure becomes a particularly important problem to be addressed when planning for multiple multi-scale fast-turnaround R&D programs. At the same time, multiple tests provide opportunities for the application of novel instrumentation to be developed in the HFM program. To make full use of this opportunity, timely data analysis is of the essence and requires dedicated resources.

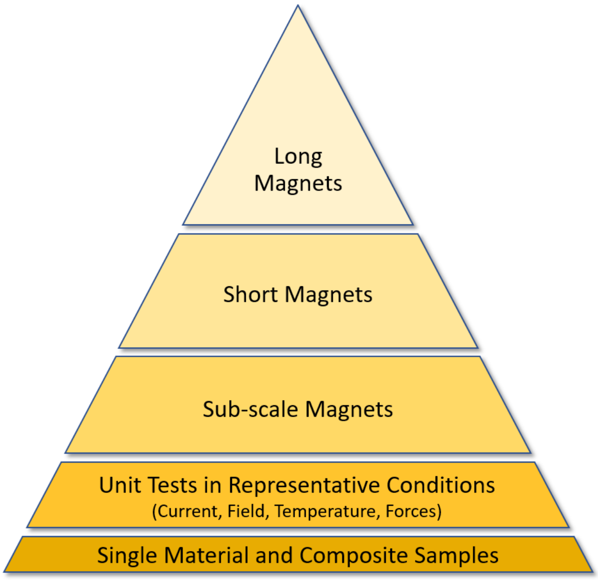


Fig. 2.8: Schematic representation of the innovation pyramid concept, conducive to fast turnaround technology development.

For the programme to remain focused, it is important that all technologies developed, and all demonstrator magnets built are compatible with the ultimate design specifications. Only then can a success in the experimental results at a smaller scale be translated into a credible statement on the technical and financial feasibility of ultimate specification magnets. We suggest that, for this purpose, each magnet-R&D-programme accompany their multi-scale R&D from the earliest days with an evolving ultimate-specification conceptual design that is regularly updated in the light of the most recent developments and experimental results. It is understood that the HFM programme will extend beyond the present period and will extend to double-aperture magnets as well as long magnets in the years following the next ESPPU. As for long magnets, a logical first step in the scale-up to 15 m is the maximum length that can be tested in vertical or horizontal bath cryostats .

In one such Programme, each contributor to the R&D programme can profit from specific R&D vehicles, focusing on a selected subset of the ultimate specifications mentioned above. As an example, some R&D teams may place their initial focus on the demonstration of technologies for enhanced robustness at lower cost, others may aim towards innovations enabling higher performance targets. Such a complementary approach, carefully coordinated among all actors, is salutary to the overall programme goal and achieve parallelism that is key to swift advancement.

In practice, it is likely that some national programmes will be inclined to build upon the wealth of experience from previous programmes, such as the EU R&D initiatives and the HL-LHC magnet construction, and opt for an evolutionary approach, while others will pursue a more radical departure from the state of the art. The HFM programme must ensure that a balanced approach with respect to risk taking is implemented across all participants, thereby maximizing the chances of overall success. Eventually, the HFM programme will weave all available results from the individual programmes together into one coherent and credible statement, arguing that the sum of all magnets built and tested constitutes the required demonstration of technical and financial feasibility of the magnet system for a future collider.

To do so, the HFM programme shall foster a structured exchange among magnet engineers from all laboratories to coordinate their efforts and discuss their respective challenges. Moreover, the programme shall ensure a regular exchange between magnet engineers and researchers in other R&D areas. In these cross-cutting exchanges, engineers can communicate their most pressing technological needs, while receiving competent and creative input from technology specialists across all participating institutes. These structured meetings shall trigger more informal exchanges resulting in cross-boundary joint research embedded in a vibrant R&D network.

2.7.2 Programme structure

The overall structure of the programme is represented graphically in Fig. 2.9. We have identified three focus areas, in foreground, covering the R&D work specific to (i) Nb_3Sn magnets, (ii) HTS magnets and (iii) Nb_3Sn and HTS conductors. Activities in these areas materialize in deliverables and milestones consisting of demonstrators and critical decisions (e.g. field reach of the magnet technology) or specifications (e.g. for superconductor procurement). Work in the focus areas will be supported by three cross-cutting R&D activities that we have identified on (i) structural and composite materials, cryogenics and thermal management, and modeling, (ii) powering and protection, and (iii) R&D on infrastructure for production and test as well as instruments for diagnostics and measurement. The cross-cutting R&D activities are intended to proceed in the background, responding to the challenges identified by the focus areas and feed the programme in its progression towards its main deliverables. This structure is intended to implement the concept of the innovation climb outlined earlier, and will rely on effective coordination of activities to achieve the fast turnaround objective declared above. The overview of activities in the form of a top-level Gantt-chart is shown in Fig. 2.10.

2.7.3 Nb_3Sn conductor development

2.7.3.1 Scope and Objectives

The main focus of the R&D on Nb_3Sn conductor is twofold: (i) to advance performance of Nb_3Sn wire beyond present state-of-the-art, and (ii) to consolidate performance and ensure industrial availability of state-of-the-art HL-LHC Nb_3Sn wire. Performance represents the full set of requirements, including manufacturing, electrical, magnetic and mechanical properties as well as cost, as specified for the FCC Conductor Development programme [59]. As we have stressed earlier, R&D is still needed to achieve the FCC targets, which we project over a period of seven to ten years, with significant results from the R&D work during the first five years.

A key R&D objective will be to develop optimized manufacturing processes for enhancing J_C to the target 1500 A/mm^2 at 16 T and 4.2 K [60]. The methodologies proven to reach J_C at laboratory scale need to be scaled up, in parallel with study of electro-magnetic stability, e.g. achieving high enthalpy margin, and improvement of the mechanical properties of the novel wires and cables, as a mitigation to

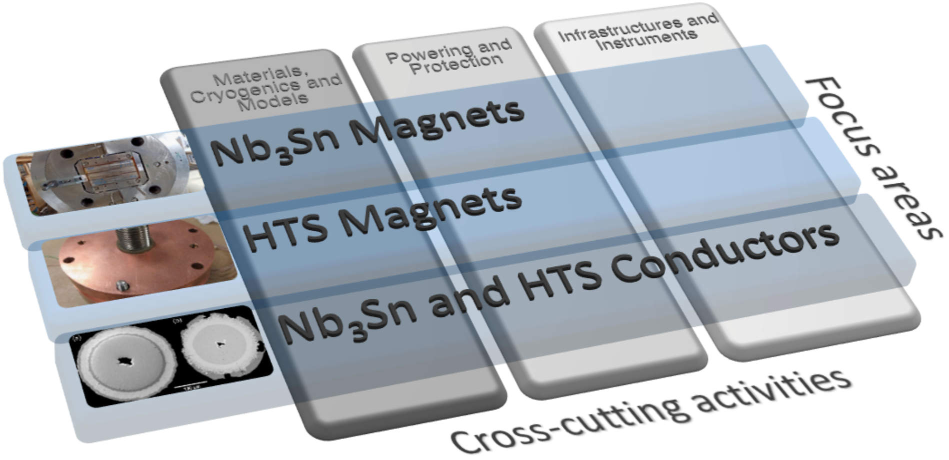


Fig. 2.9: Schematic representation of the structure of the proposed programme, consisting in three focus areas running with the support of cross-cutting activities.

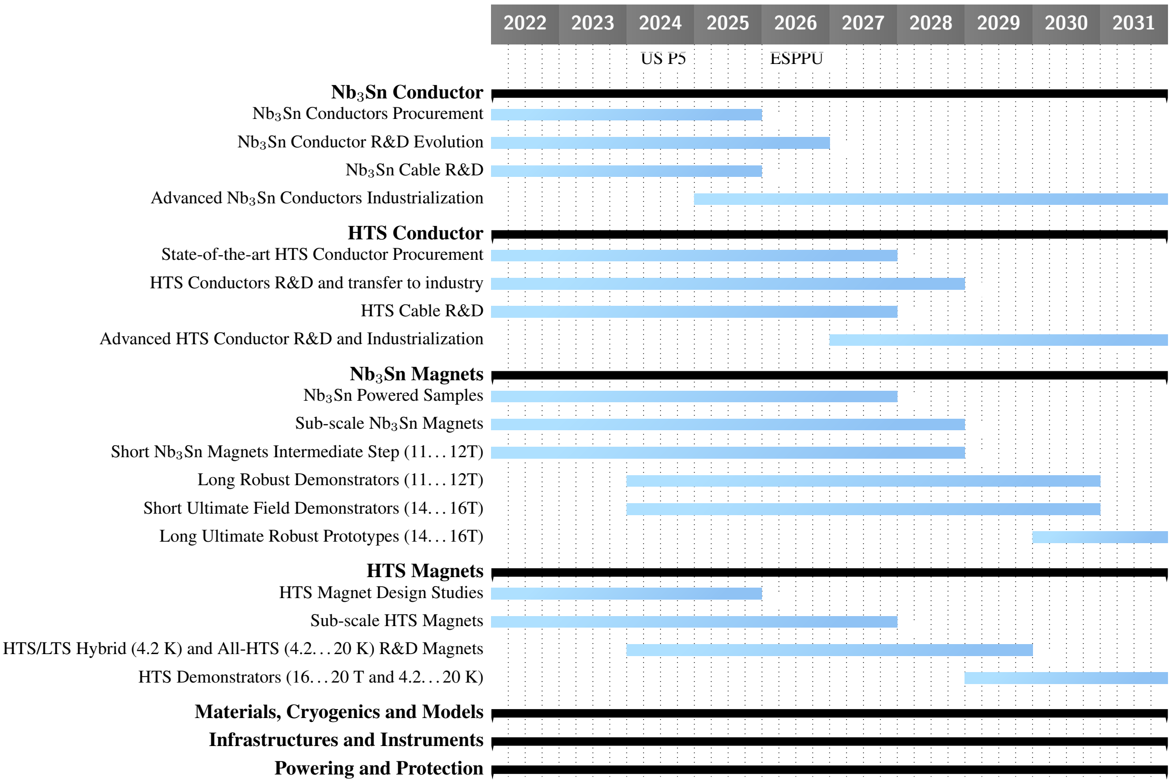


Fig. 2.10: Timeline of the main activities forming the proposed program.

the brittle nature of Nb_3Sn and degradation risk. These studies are mandatory for a full exploitation of the J_C potential.

Experience from the CERN FCC Conductor Development programme indicates that R&D activity in laboratories is a prime source of innovation in materials [61,62], especially when control and analysis of properties at the nanoscale level are needed. Novel concepts have been generated in laboratories, whose agility and focus have proven crucial for the initial R&D phase. Work in industry, however, shall accompany and start at the early stage of the development to enable identification and selection of routes and technologies that have potential for industrialization. Industrialization shall be pursued both at the level of production of novel wires, as well as studying feasibility of large billets for large-scale production. This is a key step towards cost reduction, aiming at a target value of 5 €/kA m at 16 T and 4.2 K .

The development of Rutherford cables is included in this activity, as well as extensive measurement of their electro-mechanical performance. The reference targets for successful cabling are a critical current degradation of the wire in the cable below 5% and retention of the stabilizer resistivity ratio above 100. The study of mechanical stability and wind-ability for use in coils is of particular relevance, especially for wide cables with high in-field current capability, including the optimization of their electro-mechanical performance. The latter shall include the impact of impregnation process. The activity will be naturally in tight interaction with Nb_3Sn relevant magnet technology.

Similarly, development and qualification of low-resistance splices between LTS cables, both in low and high fields, are essential to enable grading high-field magnet designs, or to simplify and increase robustness of the manufacturing process. Also this study will require tight interaction with specific Nb_3Sn magnet R&D and relevant technology.

2.7.3.2 Identified Tasks

- MAG.LTSC.SOAP - Procurement of Nb_3Sn wires in industry, cable manufacturing, and qualification of wires and cables as required by the magnet programme. The initial phase will be based on state-of-the-art specifications (HL-LHC);
- MAG.LTSC.COND - Development and characterization of novel Nb_3Sn wires with improved performance beyond the state-of-the-art, towards robust high J_C wires. This R&D effort explores materials and architectures via effort done at laboratories and industry and interacts closely with magnet development to integrate electro- and thermo-mechanical results in relevant geometry and conditions;
- MAG.LTSC.CABL - Development and characterization of cables using novel wires and geometries (e.g. large number of strands). This activity includes study and qualification of electrical, magnetic and mechanical properties as well as iteration with the magnets' designers to quantify cables' wind-ability for the different coils' layouts;
- MAG.LTSC.ADVP - Evolution of the procurement activity in the direction of advanced wire composition and architecture, as a result of the wire R&D activity, including an effort to enlarge the industrial manufacturing base;

2.7.3.3 Top-level Milestones and Deliverables

- MAG.LTSC.M1 - Launch procurement of state-of-the-art Nb_3Sn conductor, Q1 2022;
- MAG.LTSC.M2 - Launch development of novel Nb_3Sn wires, Q1 2022;
- MAG.LTSC.D1 - $\sim$2 tons of cabled and qualified state-of-the-art conductor, Q4 2023;
- MAG.LTSC.M3 - Assess feasibility of targets for production of at least 100 m unit lengths of novel wires, Q3 2024;
- MAG.LTSC.D2 - Advanced Nb_3Sn wire in unit lengths of about 100 m, Q1 2025;
- MAG.LTSC.M4 - Assess results from R&D and update performance of HFM reference wire, Q2 2025;
- MAG.LTSC.M5 - Industrialize novel wires Q1 2025- Q4 2027;
- MAG.LTSC.D3 - Novel generation of cables in unit length of at least 100 m, Q4 2025.

2.7.4 HTS conductor

2.7.4.1 Scope and Objectives

R&D on HTS conductor is considered essential for a subsequent successful implementation in HTS coils and magnets. The first objective is the definition of performance targets adapted to accelerator magnet applications, which will guide the development, from materials to cables, to achieve such targets. We propose that activities in Europe are focused on REBCO tapes. The reason, as mentioned earlier, is that very high in-field electric performance is already available in commercial REBCO tapes, with upper values of industrial production reaching J_e (4.2 K, 20 T) up to 2000 A/mm^2 (see Fig. 2.3) [65]. Material engineering at the nanoscale and artificial pinning techniques are well controlled, and several industrial suppliers on the market are able to produce unit lengths of tape in the range of several hundred meters.

Given the exceptional state of the art values in J_e, the R&D work focus on achieving controlled, homogeneous and reproducible electro-mechanical and geometrical properties along the full tape length, e.g. low internal electrical resistance between layers, high internal adhesion strength among layers, low electrical resistivity of the copper stabilizer, controlled geometry. Innovation will be required for conceiving and qualifying novel high-current cables made from tape conductor. This study shall be performed in conjunction with the design of HTS magnets and the understanding of the specific requirements.

The results of this work will provide direct feedback to industrial manufacturers, raising their awareness of needs, identified problems and potential solutions. Industry will be crucial in the demonstration of feasibility of long lengths and low cost. Indeed HTS cost reduction is mandatory to make future large-scale applications affordable. Some routes towards cost reduction may be process optimization, insertion of new technology, and production scale-up. We remark here that the scale of production needed for an HTS accelerator magnet R&D will not be sufficient to influence significantly cost. At the same time, we should be able to benefit from relatively large on-going procurement of HTS conductor from other communities, e.g. fusion and energy.

Finally, a crucial aspect of the HTS conductor R&D will be the identification, development and qualification of cable configurations suitable for accelerator quality magnets, also taking into account a possible evolution of the needs of beam dynamics. Existing (e.g. stacks [66, 67], CORC [68], Roebel [69], STAR [70]) and novel concepts will be studied, considering their electro-dynamic performance (e.g. the need for transposition), quench detection and quench protection (to be addressed at the level of tapes and cables before coils), the effect of insulation and impregnation, and the development of low-resistance joints (with procedure scalable to magnet construction). As we remarked earlier for Nb_3Sn, HTS conductor development and qualification will have to act in synergy with the R&D on HTS magnets and relevant technology.

2.7.4.2 Identified Tasks

- MAG.HTSC.SOAP - Procurement of REBCO tapes in industry, qualification and extensive characterization of electro-mechanical properties, including response to quench;
- MAG.HTSC.COND - Development of REBCO tapes with improved performance beyond the state-of-the-art, tailored to accelerator applications. R&D on other HTS materials, including multi-filamentary HTS wires;
- MAG.HTSC.CABL - Concept development, assembly and extensive characterization of REBCO cables for use in HTS magnets. Development of splice technology at the level of the tape and cable, suitable for integration in HTS magnets.

2.7.4.3 Top-level Milestones and Deliverables

- MAG.HTSC.M1 - Launch procurement of HTS conductor, Q1 2022;
- MAG.HTSC.M2 - Review performance of REBCO tape for accelerator magnets, Q4 2023;

- MAG.HTSC.M3 - Select cables' layout for winding magnet demonstrators, Q3 2024;
- MAG.HTSC.D1 - ~20 km of qualified tape (12 mm equivalent width) by Q1 2025;
- MAG.HTSC.D2 - Unit lengths of representative cables (~50 m) by Q1 2025.

2.7.5 Nb_3Sn magnet R&D

2.7.5.1 Scope and Objectives

Nb_3Sn magnet R&D is the most prominent top-level, cross-cutting, and integrative activity in the proposed programme. The scope of this activity is essentially derived from the 2020 ESPPU, i.e., to "investigate the technical and financial feasibility of a future hadron collider at CERN with a centre-of-mass energy of at least 100 TeV". For Nb_3Sn magnets, this goal translates into a major push to provide robust and cost-effective performance near the ultimate limits of Nb_3Sn superconductor.

- Performance is defined in terms of a maximum field in the magnet aperture, a high initial training quench with few training quenches up to ultimate field, and the absence of degradation under cyclic load and repeated cool-down/powering/warm-up cycles. Appropriate electro-mechanical margins need to be implemented, for which the community habitually uses a "margin on the loadline", as well as a generic mechanical design limit for the coil composite of 150 MPa van-Mises stress at room-temperature and 200 MPa von-Mises stress under cryogenic conditions. To mitigate the risks of excessive training, critical current reduction, and degradation, we suggest in the medium term to re-define appropriate engineering margins based on local stress-strain states in the conductor and composite, and to establish a multi-scale framework of experimental results and numerical models that inform the design process;
- Robustness is defined based on scalability of the technology, i.e. a technology that works equally well for short magnets and 15-m-long magnets, and can be applied at an industrial scale with high production yield. Present experience shows that length scale-up may come with definite challenges related to deformation and residual strain in the coil after heat treatment and to the differential contraction mismatch of individual magnet components during cool-down. Due to the strain sensitivity of Nb_3Sn, this mismatch can lead to conductor degradation. Moreover, the magnet production for HL-LHC shows that the yield and methodology are not yet suitable for upscaling, and require a decisive improvement;
- Cost relies critically on economies of scale and on the introduction of industrial processes which will include the automation of specific process steps. Neither economies of scale, nor the automation of process steps will be achievable in the present project period. Nonetheless, every design choice and process development must consider the potential impact on cost and the prospect of future automation.

Finding the right balance between cost-efficiency, maximum field, and robustness is at the core of this R&D activity, and progress in all three areas is crucial to provide satisfactory input into the next ESPPU.

This progress is likely not going to come from a merely evolutionary change of existing Nb_3Sn technology. Rather, it will be the product of a vigorous innovation and R&D programme that involves all other activities described in this document. Fast turnaround testing at the smallest possible scales is key to an effective innovation funnel that may enable decisive breakthroughs in performance, robustness, and even cost. To this end, we propose to structure the program as outlined in Fig. 2.11, by making use of the following development vehicles:

- Non-powered standardized samples for electrical, and thermo-mechanical characterization. The samples will be developed jointly with technology development, aiming at material and composite

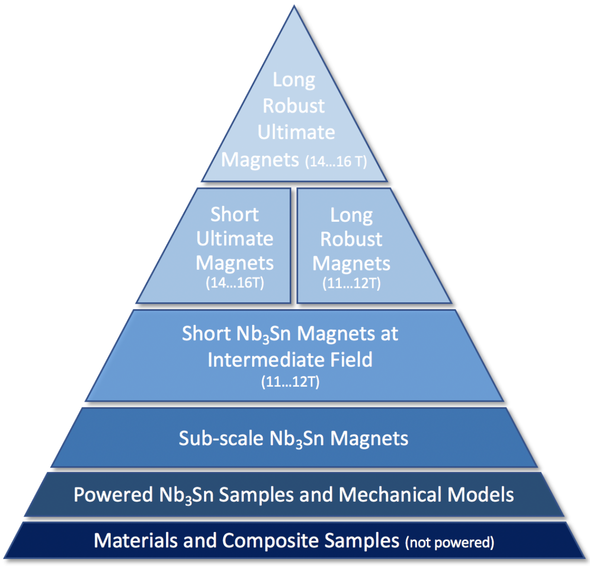


Fig. 2.11: Schematic representation of the technology pyramid towards the development of Nb_3Sn ultimate dipole magnets. The first tasks are shared, then two final objectives are pursued in parallel: on the left, the path towards ultimate-field Nb_3Sn accelerator magnets; on the right, the path towards long Nb_3Sn robust accelerator magnets, eventually joining in the final objective of highest practical field with robust performance.

properties, validation tests for new technology variants, and design parameters. Work on these samples goes hand in hand with the cross-cutting activity on material testing.

- powered samples, in order test smallest possible scale at which single challenges of HFM can be representatively addressed and studied, e.g., cable degradation, bonding and sliding properties, techniques for reliable jointing of SC cables, etc.
- subscale magnets, which constitute a first step in magnet technology implementation, identifying strength and weaknesses of specific technology integrated in a coil winding. A subscale magnet aims at reproducing the performance margins, but not the main field, in a small (essentially hand-held) magnet assembly. New conductors can be validated at this scale (e.g. designs resilient against degradation).
- short magnets, which are a true representation of magnet design and construction, but for the length, mandatory demonstration step before long magnets. It is likely that short magnets will be built with two coil layers/decks first, aiming for 12 T in the aperture. This step is followed by an ultimate performance design. The short-magnet scale will benefit from the faster turnaround of mirror configurations in the early stages of the programme.
- long magnets, which demonstrate the suitability of a technology in terms of length scale-up. Special attention is paid at this stage to the prospect of industrialization and automation. Mirror configurations, as well as cool-down/warm-up cycles with dummy coils can be a valuable tool to intercept difficulties at the earliest possible stages.

2.7.5.2 *Identified Task*

We define here tasks on the basis of a single development site (laboratory). Tasks of sample measurements are likely to be shared among laboratories, while demonstrator tasks will run in parallel to cover the respective design and technology variants selected.

- MAG.LTSM.SMPL - Sample construction, test and evaluation. We group in this activity non-powered samples as well as powered samples and mechanical models representative of magnet conditions;
- MAG.LTSM.SUBS - Construction, test and analysis of subscale magnets;
- MAG.LTSM.SD12 - Design, construction, test and analysis of short 12-T demonstrator magnets as an intermediate step towards ultimate performance, and to develop robust designs;
- MAG.LTSM.SD16 - Design, construction, test and analysis of short ultimate-field Nb_3Sn demonstrator magnets;
- MAG.LTSM.LD12 - Design, construction, test and analysis of long 12-T demonstrator magnets.

The ultimate goal, long robust dipole magnets at ultimate performance is beyond the horizon of the time scale considered here and is not explicitly appearing as a task.

2.7.5.3 Top-level Milestones and Deliverables

In the staged fast-turnaround programme devised, milestones are reached every time an R&D vehicle on the next-higher scale becomes available for exploitation. Milestones are attached to each of the scales and are reached when the first deliverable on each scale is tested, analyzed, and the corresponding concept validated. Corresponding deliverables at each scale are produced at the respective appropriate time intervals, as listed below. We define here milestones and deliverables on the basis of a single laboratory. Milestones and deliverables are intended to be multiplied by the number of laboratories contributing to the specific task.

- MAG.LTSM.SMPL.Dx - 10 to several 10s of deliverables per year;
- MAG.LTSM.SUBS.Dx - 3 to 4 deliverables per year;
- MAG.LTSM.SD12.Dx - 1 to 2 deliverables per year;
- MAG.LTSM.LD12.Dx and MAG.LTSM.SD16 - 1 deliverable every 1 to 2 years.

The cadence of deliverables at each scale naturally slows down when the next milestone is reached. The smaller-scale R&D objects are then mostly needed to address problems encountered at the higher level(s), or to feed-forward potential break-through technologies.

In addition to the above fast-turnaround multi-scale milestones and deliverables, one additional milestone and deliverables are added:

- MAG.LTSM.Mα - At the beginning of the programme, an in-depth knowledge transfer from past and on-going Nb_3Sn magnet R&D programmes will take place. This initial milestone will be likely organized through a series of technical meetings and laboratory visits. The transfer shall focus on what we know works well, what we know could/should be improved, and what we know we don't know. Planned by Q4 2022;
- MAG.LTSM.Dω - This final deliverable takes the form of a summary document, weaving all available results from the individual programmes together into one coherent and credible statement, arguing whether the sum of all magnets built and tested constitutes the required demonstration of technical and financial feasibility of the FCC-hh magnet system. Planned by Q4 2026.

2.7.6 HTS magnet technology

2.7.6.1 Scope and Objectives

As for HTS materials and cables, this R&D is of an explorative nature. HTS superconducting accelerator magnets are the only option to generate fields beyond the reach of Nb_3Sn. Plain consideration of engineering current density would suggest that magnetic fields in the range of 25 T could be generated by

HTS, both with Bi-2212 and REBCO, as shown in Fig. 2.3. This needs to be moderated by the fact that mechanics and quench management may not be feasible, or practical, at the projected forces, stresses, stored energy and energy density. The actual limits of a feasible HTS accelerator magnet need hence to be established.

A second element of this R&D is triggered by the consideration that with the actual cost of HTS, a full-HTS winding may not be affordable. A hybrid solution may be considered, where LTS are used in the lower magnetic field area (e.g. below 15 T), and HTS is used above. A hybrid configuration requires the use of liquid helium as coolant. At the same time, as we can clearly see in Fig. 2.3, performance of HTS in the range 10 to 20 K has reached values of J_e well in excess of 500 to 800 A/mm2, i.e. the level that is required for compact accelerator coils. The exploration of magnet designs working in an intermediate temperature range (e.g. 10 to 20 K) and dry magnets (conduction cooled) has considerable interest, because it would open a pathway towards a reduction of power to run the cryogenics (due to higher COP), a reduction of the helium inventory (e.g. dry magnets), or the use of alternative cryogens. In this case, obviously, the magnet would have to be wound completely from HTS. A summary of alternatives to be considered is shown in Table 2.1

Table 2.1: Alternative HTS magnet configurations.

	Temperature range	**Cooling mode and fluid**
Full HTS	4.5 K . . . 20 K	LHe, GHe, LH2, dry
Hybrid LTS/HTS	1.9 K . . . 4.5 K	He II, LHe

For HTS, where technology is relatively immature, the work on magnet design and technology will go hand in hand with tape and cable development. As already mentioned in the R&D on HTS conductors, good uniformity of the current density over long unit lengths (from present state of the art of 200. . . 300 m to 1 km), and development of features matching magnet challenges (e.g. good adhesion of layers, low internal electrical resistance) or facilitating them (e.g. a “Current Flow Diverter” to increase quench propagation speed) should be primed above increased critical current.

The matter of HTS cables is of special importance to the magnet R&D. Cables with high current capacity are required to decrease the magnet inductance (for powering and protection reasons). High current density options being considered are tape stacks [66,67], Roebel [69], CORC [68], and STAR [70]). The work of the coming years should determine the most suitable cables to fit the needs of accelerator magnets construction and operation. Besides the practical matter of coil winding (see later), a fundamental question to be addressed is the need of transposition. Though possibly secondary from the point of view of field quality, which is expected to be dominated by the large persistent currents contribution, the impact on transposition on performance needs to be studied. Finally, full characterization at the scale of the cable (besides the single tape) will accompany design and analysis of demonstrator magnets. Example of high-priority activities, besides critical current, are current sharing and transfer length among tapes, basic mechanical properties, and current density dependence on angle, stress and strain. Joint technology (resistance value and joint robustness) is of utmost importance for magnet technology. Though already included in the HTS conductor R&D, this needs to be directly linked to the magnet design from the beginning of the process. Finally, the HTS conductor design may require including features necessary or beneficial to magnet protection, such as detection systems based on conductor temperature or voltage sensing and compensation.

The design of the future magnets which is part of this R&D work should take into account particular characteristics of HTS tapes and cables. REBCO winding geometry tends to be constrained by the use of tapes. The end design is possibly the main focus area, due to the tape aspect ratio making a hard-way bend difficult. Several magnet design options have emerged in the past (e.g. aligned blocks, cloverleaf and CCT) and the effort should strive to improve them, or find new ones. The coil shape should be optimized to maximize the efficient use of superconductor (e.g. reducing the field components normal to the tape), avoiding excessive margins.

Along the line of innovation, inspired by R&D on ultra high-field solenoid magnets, non-insulated or partially-insulated winding configurations could be considered. This configuration, generally referred-to as "Controlled Insulation" (CI), would benefit magnet protection, potentially reaching the limit of self-protection. However, we are not yet certain that CI windings are applicable to accelerator magnets, especially with regard to transient effects and stability when compared to UHF solenoids. A design study needs to be complemented by development of related technology, and in particular the possibility to achieve a pre-set contact resistance, reproducible from coil to coil. Tests of such windings should be led at reasonable current magnitude with requirements for accelerators (e.g. a ramp rate of 20 mT/s corresponding to 20 T in 1000 s), possibly extended to higher ramp rates relevant for other applications (e.g. 1-100 T/s range for ion therapy synchrotrons or fast acceleration section of muon collider). This question is very important since it can change dramatically the design principle not only of the magnet but also of the conductor.

The HTS magnet R&D will also have to address the effect of screening currents on field quality, compatible with use in an accelerator. Magnetization magnitude and temporal stability are one of the major drawbacks of HTS tapes and could be an issue for accelerator magnets. Control of these effects may require overshoot, vortex shaking, temperature increase, some of which may not be compatible with accelerator operation. This has been only partially addressed in UHF solenoids, mainly concerned with the field magnitude. While options of cables and magnet designs will be explored to find the best way of taming HTS towards a good field quality, we also recognize that alternative methods to control field harmonics (i.e. passive or active shimming, stronger correcting magnets) and innovative beam optics and controls may be required, eventually, to cope with features typical of HTS.

The R&D work on HTS magnets, similar to Nb_3Sn, will depend on advances in computational capability, described in detail later. Specifically, persistent currents and controlled insulation windings will require tailored developments. Several codes are already available to compute these effects, and we must pursue this effort. In the case of HTS the tape aspect ratio (10-4) is a challenge when attempting to model complete cables and whole magnets. A close interaction between design, modelling and testing will be key to foster development and understanding. Finally, it is clear that there is an obvious need in a near future for a facility providing a background field for testing of HTS demonstrator magnets. FRESCA2, SULTAN, and the planned EDIPO reconstruction are possible European test infrastructures. In their present configurations they do not fit HTS dipole tests. A rapid alternative could be to realize a new FRESCA2 type magnet dedicated to this task, or join forces with other programmes to realize a background field magnet and test facility.

The structure of the program on HTS magnets is once again based on an innovation climb represented by the pyramid of Fig. 2.12. The first steps are exploratory and depend heavily on the result of the proposed design studies. As for Nb_3Sn, sub-scale magnet work will precede the work on the two identified routes of hybrid or all-HTS magnets. Results of this R&D will eventually join in the definition, design construction and test of HTS demonstrator magnets.

2.7.6.2 *Identified Tasks*

- In synergy with the R&D on HTS conductors (tasks MAG.HTSC.COND and MAG.HTSC.CABL), and in parallel to HTS magnet design studies (task MAG.HTSC.DSGN), clarify and specify needs based on magnet design options and suitable technology towards the selection and qualification of cables geometry suitable for accelerators. Address at magnet level issues such as: margin and mechanical effects, transposition, persistent current effects, current sharing and quench;

- MAG.HTSC.DSGN - Pursue a design study of HTS magnet options, either hybrid LTS/HTS, for

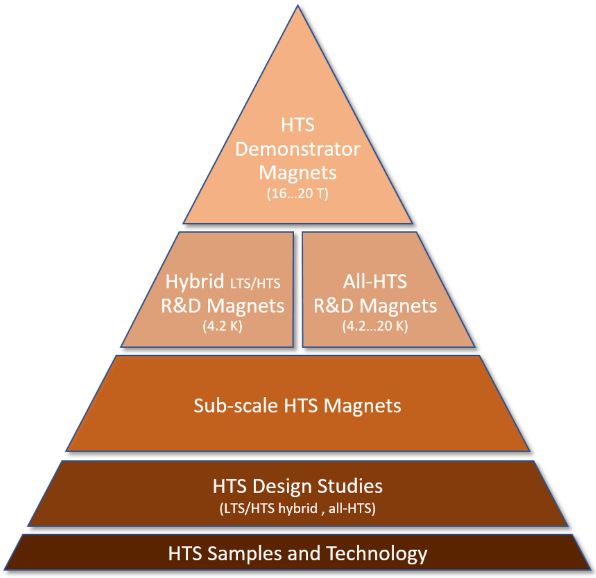


Fig. 2.12: Schematic representation of the innovation pyramid concept for HTS dipole magnets.

operation at liquid helium temperature (e.g. 4.2 K), or full-HTS dipole for operation between liquid helium and higher temperature (e.g. from 4.2 K to 20 K). The study shall include exploration of coil cross sections, end design, optimization of tape alignment, and 'controlled insulation' (CI) schemes;

- Participate in the development of models (tasks MAG.MCM.MDLS and MAG.PETP.MDLS), contributing test results on sub-scale and insert coils, to improve understanding and control of quench and field quality in HTS magnets, including CI winding schemes and special focus on persistent currents magnitude and stability;
- MAG.HTSC.SUBS - Design and manufacture sub-scale and insert coils for technology R&D, representative of the HTS magnet design being pursued, and practical for achieving a fast turnaround R&D cycle. Test the sub-scale and insert coils to validate cable (various configurations) and technology (e.g. insulation or CI, winding shape and end design, joints)
- MAG.HTSC.SRDM - Engineer and manufacture HTS R&D dipole magnet as a preliminary step towards a demonstrator, with parameters to be set once a basic technology selection is reached.

2.7.6.3 Top-level Milestones and Deliverables

- MAG.HTSM.M1 - Design sub-scale and insert coils for technology R&D by Q4 2023;
- MAG.HTSM.M2 - Results of design study of hybrid LTS/HTS dipole by Q4 2024;
- MAG.HTSM.M3 - Results of design on a full-HTS dipole by Q4 2025;
- MAG.HTSM.M4 - Results of sub-scale and insert coil manufacturing (winding, insulation, joints, etc.) and tests performed in the period 2023…2026, completed by Q4 2026;
- MAG.HTSM.D1 - Define a magnet specification, including field performance, of HTS accelerator dipole magnets by Q4 2026;
- MAG.HTSM.D2 - Conceptual design of an HTS accelerator magnet by Q4 2027
- MAG.HTSM.M5 - Initiate the engineering, construction and first test of a HTS dipole demonstrator by Q4 2028

2.7.7 Insulation systems, components, cryogenic and modelling technologies

2.7.7.1 Scope and Objectives

Characterization and development of composite and structural magnet components

We group in this R&D activity the work on all materials and components entering in the construction of magnets, including work on samples (e.g. 10-stacks and multi-scale mock-ups) with the exclusion of superconductors, addressed elsewhere. R&D programmes are already in place in the EU and the USA on composite and structural materials and must be reinforced. A specific focus of this part of the programme is on the development and characterization of insulation systems (polymers and reinforcement) for both Nb_3Sn and HTS magnets. The global strategy to follow is to identify the key parameters, understand how to characterize them, measure the effect of these parameters, and possibly implement them in FE models in the form of a shared results database. The mechanical, electrical, thermal, and tribological characterization should be systematically undertaken from room- to cryogenic temperature on different scales: single material, insulated conductor, and coil assembly integrated into a magnet. Among others, elastic modulus, stress distribution, adhesion, toughness, and thermal properties during assembly and cooling down should be investigated. Friction between the different components (insulation and conductors) and its impact on the stress distribution within a magnet assembly should be addressed. The impact of the impregnation process and system on other parameters (such as stress distribution, internal adhesion, and interface friction) and the role of interfaces and discontinuities within the coil assembly should be explored. This programme should allow identifying the structural and physical parameters (optimal parameters + processability) for optimized coil assemblies in working conditions. To this aim, the use of advanced imaging techniques is recommended as an aid towards the understanding of the nature of magnet degradation.

Thermal management of high field magnets

The cryogenic system of the next circular collider machine will have to cope with significantly higher thermal loads than the LHC. The choice of the FCC nowadays is to use superfluid helium at 1.9 K for cooling the cold mass of the 16T Nb_3Sn superconducting magnets, similar to the LHC. Although superfluid helium cryogenics at 1.9 K is at least two times more expensive than liquid helium at 4.5 K, also a possible choice for Nb_3Sn, this extra cost is largely compensated by the saving on the magnet cost and comes at the benefit of excellent heat transfer in the magnet string. A drawback is the helium inventory, which increases by a factor of six with respect to the LHC (800 tonnes of liquid helium in FCC-hh). Using HTS magnets could be a game-changer since they can be operated at a higher temperature for at least equivalent magnetic performance. Higher temperature operation (10 K to 20 K) would imply a drastic reduction of cost for the cryoplant cryogenics due to a higher system efficiency if novel cryogenic designs and thermal management are envisaged and studied. At these temperatures, the cooling strategy will be different from the one used in the LHC, and the structure of the HTS magnets will have to contain suitable features to adapt to the new cooling strategy. Thermal management of high field magnets (both internal, heat transfer to coolant, and external heat transfer to cryo-plant) will require new engineering solutions that need to be integrated from the start of the magnet design. The need for experimental validation of thermal characteristics of coil packs and the modelling of complete cold-mass design to guide and optimize heat extraction paths under expected accelerator load are indispensable tools for this integrated design

Multiscale and multi-physics modelling

A change in modelling approach is required to remain in step with the engineering challenges ahead, bridge the gap between modelling capability and design methodology and profit from the evolution of the state-of-the-art in computer-aided engineering (CAE). Indeed, like in other fields of engineering, CAE is taking an increasingly important role, providing a standard for design and manufacturing, including practical consideration of cost optimization. At the same time, mastering the challenges identified earlier will require a significant extension of modelling capabilities and a high degree of synergy between design and simulation tools.

In broad terms, the superconducting magnet community has shown that the most relevant physical phenomena involved in the design and analysis of HFM can be modelled with multi-scale modelling and multi-model analysis. At the same time, the work of the past years has evidenced the fact that some of the modelling needs to be augmented, including new physics as well as multi-scale capability from the meso-scale of multi-physics analysis of a conductor to the macro-scale of a full magnet string. This applies in particular to quench initiation and propagation in HTS magnets, a relatively young playground. Multi-model analysis and co-simulation are present standards of integrated design techniques, and was demonstrated at development level. We believe that the next step is to translate this progress into improved design techniques. The core idea is to focus on ”making models talk to each other” with the concept of Model-Based Systems Engineering as a platform for collaborative modelling. Model-based systems engineering (MBSE) is the formalized application of modelling to support system requirements, design, analysis, verification, and validation activities beginning in the conceptual design phase and continuing throughout development and later life cycle phases. MBSE moves from a document-centric paradigm for sharing of information to a model-based sharing of information. Models become repositories of data, queried to provide relevant information. Models can be concatenated into automated workflows. We expect that adoption of this methodology will also lead to a more profound understanding of our magnets from the earliest stages of design onwards.

2.7.7.2 Identified Tasks

- MAG.MCM.MTRL - Pursue the measurement and characterization (constitutive equations) of the mechanical and thermo-physical properties of materials, components and composites, including new-class of materials such as metamaterials, additive fabrication materials and similar novel architectures. As a high priority activity which is part of this task, develop and characterize electrical insulation systems, especially relevant for wind and react Nb_3Sn magnets but also applicable to HTS magnets. Upgrade the facilities required for the measurement and characterizations described above, facilitate sharing, and make available the associated data repository as a reference database for magnet design;

- MAG.MCM.THME - Support design, construction and analysis of magnet performance in specific aspects of electrro- and thermo-mechanical integrated modeling, including comprehensive analysis of manufacturing and operation conditions, aiming at preventing performance loss and degradation;

- MAG.MCM.CRYO - Study alternative magnet thermal designs, operating at higher temperature than liquid helium. Consider operation around 10 to 20 K, towards a low helium content cold mass to reduce the inventory and the complexity of the helium management during quench, as well as a conduction-cooled thermal design with the development of high-performance thermal links. Specialize versatile conceptual thermal designs to cope with the wide variety of magnet options (Nb_3Sn and HTS) and the different respective thermal loads;

- MAG.MCM.MDLS - Pursue the development of physics modelling of relevance to HFM (e.g. quench propagation in HTS) towards augmented modelling capability, accuracy improvement, as well as multi-scale modelling from conductor multi-physics to a magnet string. Advance co-simulation capabilities towards an ideal digital twin of an as-built magnet;

- MAG.MCM.MBSE - Develop and generalize the use of a Model-Based Systems Engineering (MBSE) framework as a unifying information management tool.

2.7.7.3 Top-level Milestones and Deliverables

- MAG.MCM.M1 - Develop measurement facilities and characterize materials and composites relevant to HFM applications, and most important electrical insulations for Nb_3Sn and HTS magnet. This work includes detailed material studies, advanced imaging and analytical techniques, and the development of constitutive equations. Planned by Q4 2025;
- MAG.MCM.M2 - Develop new engineering multi-physics/multi-scale solutions for thermal management of high field magnets (Nb_3Sn and HTS), both internal (e.g. coil heat transfer to coolant) and external (e.g. heat transfer to cryoplant), including measurement of heat transfer in small samples, demonstrators and model magnets. Planned by Q4 2026;
- MAG.MCM.M3 - Integrate and unify computational tools to support the design of conductors, demonstrators and model magnets with an MBSE framework. Specifically, integrate models adapted to the whole spectrum of multi-physics and multi-scales relevant to Nb_3Sn and HTS magnets in including the manufacturing and operation conditions. Planned by Q4 2026.

2.7.8 Magnet protection

2.7.8.1 Scope and Objectives

R&D on magnet powering and protection will be devoted to the development of strategies and methods to detect and safely dump the magnet stored energy, advancing the state of the art to address the challenges outlined earlier. The work on LTS and HTS has commonalities and specificities, as described below.

LTS

Quenches in Nb_3Sn magnets propagate at high velocity, and quench management at the increased stored energy density (see Fig. 2.6) is in first line a matter of decreasing detection and dump time. This evolution towards faster detection and dump will require nonetheless a significant improvement of instrumentation (voltage-based) and active protection devices (e.g. sturdy resistive heaters, and advanced protection techniques such as Coupling Loss Induced Quench, or CLIQ). As the engineering margins decrease, this will also call for an improved knowledge and control of parameters like strand and cable coupling loss (critical to CLIQ).

In parallel to the above developments, it is crucial to understand the true limit of protection in impregnated Nb_3Sn coils. This work shall address failure mechanisms, e.g. of thermo-mechanical origin (peak temperature, peak temperature gradient within the coil, peak temperature difference with respect to the structure) as well as electrical origin (peak voltage). This work would be best performed measuring limits in dedicated small-scale experiments, enfolding in synergy with the characterization and measurement of materials and composites outlined above.

Finally, approaching maturity of Nb_3Sn magnet technology, quality assurance will be of primary importance, to be extended to all aspects of an accelerator magnet, such as dielectric strength and voltage withstand, quench heater and feed-throughs integration, or internal and external bus-work. Again, striving for “robustness” is the keyword of this activity.

HTS (REBCO tapes)

While sharing the challenges of stored energy and energy density with LTS, dealing with quench propagation and protection in HTS magnets requires a revolutionary paradigm shift. Spontaneous quenches are unlikely, because of an enthalpy margin 1 to 2 orders of magnitude higher than in LTS, but when it happens the propagation has a speed 1 to 2 order of magnitudes slower than in LTS. In addition, HTS can possibly operate in a temperature regime beyond liquid helium one (10. . . 20 K), where changes in cooling affect significantly the dynamics of a quench.

The first consequence is that voltage-based detection methods is significantly more difficult, and alternative detection methods may be needed (e.g. fibre optics, temperature sensors, acoustic sensors, hall probes, LHe flow measurement, or other). A first focus of R&D on HTS quench protection is therefore on quench detection, looking both at improved voltage-based methods, as well as alternatives to be integrated in HTS cables and magnets.

The second consequence is that it is difficult to actively quench an HTS magnet. Large energies, seemingly beyond practical, would be needed by embedded heaters, or CLIQ, and here again alternatives are sought (e.g. secondary CLIQ). This is the second focus of R&D on quench protection in HTS magnets, determining whether active protection mechanisms are effective.

Given the above uncertainty on a suitable technology, tailored solutions are sought for HTS solenoids seeking self-protection mechanism based on non-insulated (NI), partial-insulation (PI) or metal-insulation (MI). These controlled insulation (CI) alternatives are of interest, but relevance to accelerator magnets shall be established, considering the electro-magnetic transients during normal operation (joule dissipation and field homogeneity issues) as well as fast dump (transverse currents in between turns and associated force distribution which deviate substantial from normal design conditions). The study of CI winding will be best performed as a combination of simulations and experiments on small-scale coils that need to be designed, realized and tested in order to assess the suitability of this protection mechanism for accelerator magnets.

General

Common to LTS and HTS, powering considerations will require adapting the design of the cables and magnets to reduce inductance and voltages. This will need the development of concepts for magnet strings, providing design values for cable current and voltages.

Both LTS and HTS magnet design will rely on multi-physics simulation of quench, to better master evolution and margins with respect to the local limits. The development of modelling codes adapted to HTS, already mentioned in the magnet section, is essential. Special tools will need to be developed to study the protection of HTS magnets, from initiation (e.g. voltage due to current sharing) through energy dump (e.g. CI windings). The modeling effort should span the whole range from cables to magnets.

The work on powering and protection of LTS and HTS magnets should include redundancy and failure scenarios, which is of primary importance in the case of LTS/HTS hybrid designs.

Finally, the scope of the work proposed includes collection of a large amount of data from multiple diagnostic tools. The reduction and analysis of this data represents a challenge. Here we propose to resort to machine learning to look for regularities, introducing a level of Artificial Intelligence in the analysis of magnet tests.

2.7.8.2 Identified Tasks

- MAG.PETP.MDLS - In close synergy with task MAG.MCM.MDLS, improve and develop computational models relevant to quench detection and protection in Nb_3Sn and HTS high-field magnets;
- MAG.PETP.DSGN - Interact closely with conductor and magnet design, providing design support to achieve suitably large detection and protection margins, compatible with string of magnets powered in series in an accelerator;
- MAG.PETP.INST - Explore quench detection methods for Nb_3Sn and HTS high-field magnets, from known techniques (e.g. voltage threshold and quench heaters) to alternative and novel methods and strategies (e.g. fiber optics, temperature measurements, acoustic emission). Develop and deploy quench diagnostics to assist magnet tests, identify quench origins to understand performance and qualify robust designs;
- MAG.PETP.PROT - Develop protection strategies, methods and devices for Nb_3Sn and HTS high-field magnets, and in particular novel tehnologies such as CLIQ evolutions, and passive protection of partial-insulated windings.

2.7.8.3 Top-level Milestones and Deliverables

- MAG.PETP.D1 Report the result of study and specification for magnet design parameter range (current, voltage, inductance) suitable for operation in a FCC-like magnet string, by Q4 2023;
- MAG.PETP.M1 Complete a survey and establish a specification of advanced diagnostics and detection techniques, by Q4 2023;
- MAG.PETP.D2 Report the result of study on quench in HTS, including CI windings for accelerator applications,m by Q4 2023;
- MAG.PETP.D3 Deploy novel instrumentation to improve diagnostics, identify quench precursors and origin and quench development, by Q1 2025;
- MAG.PETP.D4 Report the result of study on implications of operation in a range of 10 to 20 K for detection and protection, by Q4 2025;
- MAG.PETP.D5 Devise a method and report the results on control and reproducibility of HTS winding properties (transverse resistance) for HTS magnet with self-protection features, by Q4 2025;
- MAG.PETP.M2 Complete the measurement/characterization of thermo-mechanical and dielectric properties and establish protection-related limits, by Q4 2026;
- MAG.PETP.D6 Report the result of study and measurements of dump initiation in Nb_3Sn and in HTS magnets using CLIQ, its evolution, or other novel techniques, by Q4 2026;
- MAG.PETP.M3 Establish a measurement database on instrumented HTS cables and small coils, using voltage and alternative quench detection methods, by Q4 2026;
- MAG.PETP.M4 Complete the comprehensive quench detection and protection design and analysis of Nb_3Sn and HTS magnet variants, by Q4 2026.

2.7.9 Infrastructure and Instruments

2.7.9.1 Scope and Objectives

The high field magnets programme outlined here relies critically on the availability of R&D, manufacturing and test infrastructure, as well as improved or novel instrumentation for measurement and diagnostic.

The concept of fast turnaround is best implemented having a distributed infrastructure, in particular workshop facilities for the construction of short magnets and demonstrators (*magnet laboratories*), as well as cryogenic test facilities for small components, samples and short magnets and demonstrators (*cryogenic test stations*). Consolidating and upgrading such distributed infrastructure, partly already available or in construction, was identified as one of the priority activities of the initial phase of the programme.

Our analysis has further identified some critical missing capability, ranging from facilities for the qualification of superconducting wires, tapes and cables at high magnetic field, to large size manufacturing infrastructure specifically adapted to the range of magnet designs considered. Several of these additional facilities and infrastructures may require large investments, or have large size, and would be best located at one site, to be shared by all contributors to the programme, or a wider community if applicable. This holds in particular for the infrastructure for Nb_3Sn long magnets, which is demanding in terms of space, investment and operation requirements. It is proposed to stage the procurement and construction of these facilities and infrastructures throughout the proposed phases of the programme, also engaging industry which could host some of them, as appropriate.

The significant infrastructures and facilities identified for both superconductors and magnets activities are listed below, classified in manufacturing infrastructure and test infrastructure:

Manufacturing Infrastructure

- Rutherford cabling machines for the development and laboratory-scale production of Nb_3Sn cables with large in-field current capability and a large number of strands (typically 40 to 60);
- Novel cabling machines for the development and production of long lengths of new types of HTS cables. This will require the prior development and demonstration of HTS cable concepts appropriate for use in accelerator magnets, which will be the outcome of the preliminary R&D phase on HTS conductor;
- Dedicated electrical insulation and braiding machines, providing the electrical insulation of cables;
- Dedicated winding machines for the production of LTS and HTS coils, operated in grey rooms and suitable for a high degree of automation;
- Short ($\sim$3 m for R&D) and long (up to $\sim$15 m for long magnets) reaction furnaces for the heat treatment of Nb_3Sn coils in controlled atmosphere;
- Short ($\sim$3 m for R&D) and long (up to $\sim$15 m for long magnets) chambers for vacuum pressure impregnation of LTS and HTS coils;
- Short and long presses and tooling for different assembly steps (e.g. curing, collaring or keying, welding);

Test Infrastructure

- Test stations for the electro-mechanical qualification of HTS and LTS wires and tapes, in external magnetic fields up to 18 T for Nb_3Sn and in excess of 20 T (ideally up to 25 T) for HTS. Liquid helium conditions are requested (1.9 K and 4.5 K) but allowing also higher temperatures (10...20 K range);
- A test station for HTS and LTS cables, requiring conditions of field and temperature comparable to those for single wires and tapes, but also high currents and large aperture;
- A test station consisting of a high-field magnet with a large bore, providing a background field and enabling the measurement of HTS coils in a significant magnetic field. The need of measuring HTS coils in a background magnetic field is a new input for test infrastructure, a specific requirement for the qualification of HTS sub-scale and R&D magnets;
- Vertical test stations for the test of LTS and HTS R&D and demonstrator magnets at cryogenic temperature (1.9 K and 4.5 K for Nb_3Sn, and variable temperatures, from liquid helium to liquid nitrogen, for HTS);
- Multi-purpose, horizontal or vertical test facilities for long cryo-magnet assemblies (including test for lengths of coils/cold masses of up to 15 m);
- Equipment for standard electrical and mechanical tests and measurements;
- Equipment for high voltage tests, tests in Paschen conditions, and partial discharge tests at small and full scales;
- Magnetic measurement benches adapted to the R&D magnets and demonstrators.

The scope of activity finally encompasses R&D on the instrumentation and diagnostics required to advance understanding of superconducting magnet science. We enlist here upgrade of existing instrumentation, but also activities based on emerging techniques that can be applied and adapted to magnet R&D (e.g. diffraction, spectroscopy and imaging techniques), as well as work on novel diagnostics.

2.7.9.2 Identified Tasks

- MAG.IETI.INST - R&D on novel sensors, diagnostic and instruments, in close collaboration with task MAG.PETP.INST for the detection and measurement of quench, and task MAG.MCM.MTRL for measurement technology relevant to material science;

- MAG.IETI.PINF - Design, specification, procurement and commissioning of conductor and magnet production facilities, including Rutherford cabling machine for Nb_3Sn, cabling machines for HTS, and infrastructure for short and long coils and magnets;
- MAG.IETI.TCON - Procurement or construction of test station for Nb_3Sn wire and HTS conductor at increased field, current and temperature capability
- MAG.IETI.TINS - Design and engineering of cable and insert test stations for Nb_3Sn and HTS cables, and HTS sub-scale and R&D magnets;
- MAG.IETI.TMAG - Design, construction, commissioning and operation of vertical and horizontal test stations for R&D and demonstrator magnets, including multi-purpose and variable temperature test facilities.

2.7.9.3 Top-level Milestones and Deliverables

- MAG.IETI.M1 Complete a survey and establish a specification of advanced diagnostics and measurement techniques relevant to HFM, by Q4 2023;
- MAG.IETI.D1 - Test station for Nb_3Sn wire commissioned, by Q4 2024;
- MAG.IETI.D2 - Test station for HTS conductor commissioned, by Q4 2024;
- MAG.IETI.D3 - Rutherford cabling machine for Nb_3Sn cables installed and operational, by Q1 2025
- MAG.IETI.D4 - Infrastructure for long Nb_3Sn coils/magnets available, by Q2 2027;
- MAG.IETI.D5 - Multi-purpose test facility for long Nb_3Sn coils/magnets available, by Q2 2027.

2.7.10 Integrated Roadmap

The tasks identified have been organized in a top-level graphical roadmap towards the development of Nb_3Sn and HTS conductor and magnets, and the supporting activities of cross-cutting nature identified earlier. This graphical representation expands the single tasks and provides a longer term perspective by identifying logical next steps over the next 15 years. The timeline reported here is compatible with the integrated development plan of a Future Circular Collider, as detailed in [64].

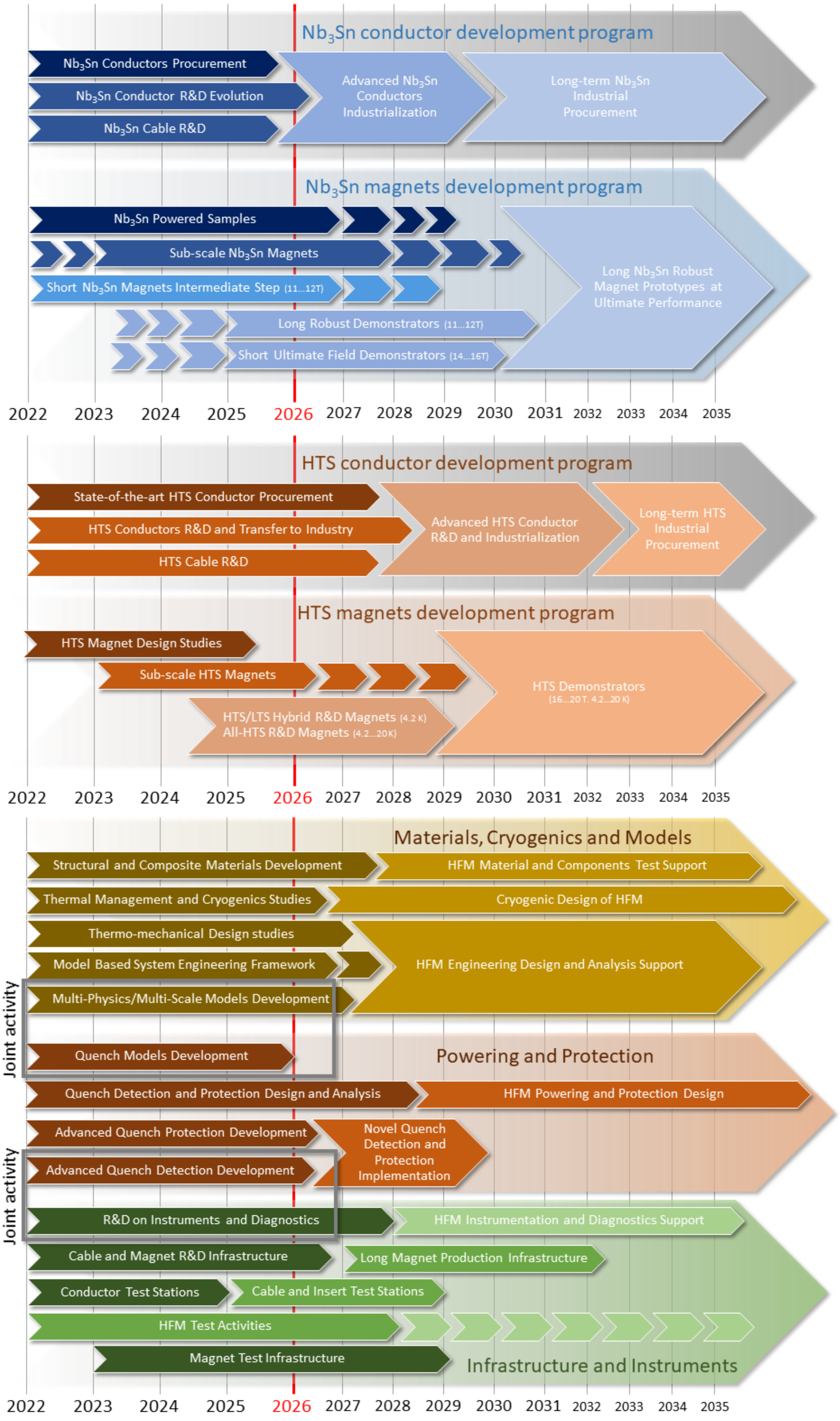


Fig. 2.13: Roadmap of magnet developments and associated technologies.

2.7.11 *Value of the programme*

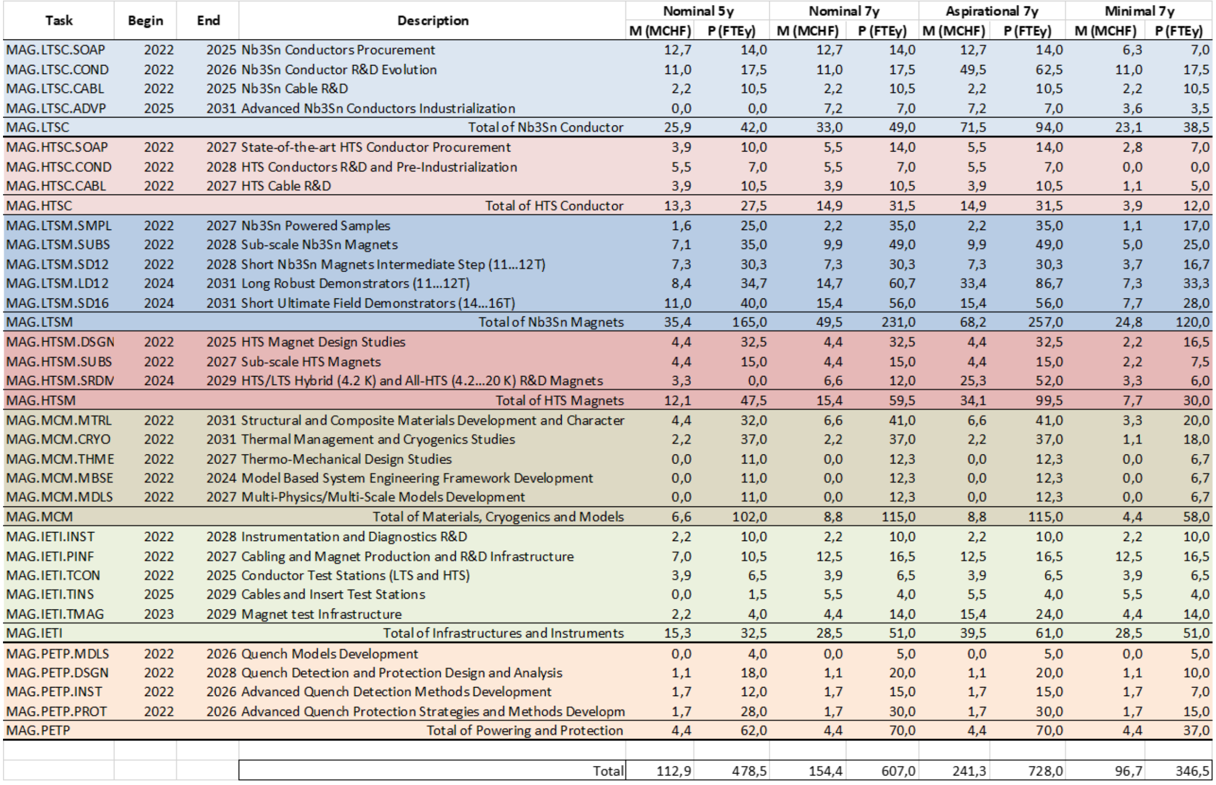
The value of the programme has been estimated using a bottom-up approach. Values are quoted as material value M (in MCHF) and personnel P (in FTEy). Personnel groups all classes, permanent (academic and technical staff) and temporary (academic and technical staff, students, post-docs and all other forms of external support labor acting on the laboratory premises). The value was estimated taking a reference period of 7 years, which is the duration that allows reaching consolidated results on both conductor and magnet technology. For completeness, a value at 5 years was also estimated, which provides a basis for comparison to the other accelerator R&D areas.

The results of this evaluation are summarised in Tab. 2.2, where we report the total value of material (M, in MCHF), and personnel (P in FTEy) and the split among the activities identified above for three scenarios: nominal, aspirational and minimal.

The nominal scenario corresponds to the tasks, milestones and deliverables described above. The value of this scenario is M = 154 MCHF and P = 607 FTEy over the 7 years reference period, and a partial value of M= 113 MCHF and P= 479 FTEy over 5 years. To be noted that the Nb_3Sn conductor activities require a significant investment in the procurement of superconductor, about 50% of the total material value of this activity. This procurement is only marginally contributing to the conductor R%D, but is obviously necessary to feed the magnet development. The case is different for the HTS conductor, where tape and cable R&D take the dominating share of the value of the program.

The material and personnel profiles in time for the nominal scenario are reported in Fig. 2.2. We remark that the technology activities on Materials, Cryogenics and Models have a significant share of personnel, based on a comparably large number of students and early researchers engaged in this material science and modeling activity where innovation is expected to be at its highest.

Table 2.2: Magnet development Tasks breakdown.



Task	Begin	End	Description	Nominal 5y		Nominal 7y		Aspirational 7y		Minimal 7y	
				M (MCHF)	P (FTEy)	M (MCHF)	P (FTEy)	M (MCHF)	P (FTEy)	M (MCHF)	P (FTEy)
MAG.LTSC.SOAP	2022	2025	Nb3Sn Conductors Procurement	12,7	14,0	12,7	14,0	12,7	14,0	6,3	7,0
MAG.LTSC.COND	2022	2026	Nb3Sn Conductor R&D Evolution	11,0	17,5	11,0	17,5	49,5	62,5	11,0	17,5
MAG.LTSC.CABL	2022	2025	Nb3Sn Cable R&D	2,2	10,5	2,2	10,5	2,2	10,5	2,2	10,5
MAG.LTSC.ADVP	2025	2031	Advanced Nb3Sn Conductors Industrialization	0,0	0,0	7,2	7,0	7,2	7,0	3,6	3,5
MAG.LTSC			Total of Nb3Sn Conductor	25,9	42,0	33,0	49,0	71,5	94,0	23,1	38,5
MAG.HTSC.SOAP	2022	2027	State-of-the-art HTS Conductor Procurement	3,9	10,0	5,5	14,0	5,5	14,0	2,8	7,0
MAG.HTSC.COND	2022	2028	HTS Conductors R&D and Pre-Industrialization	5,5	7,0	5,5	7,0	5,5	7,0	0,0	0,0
MAG.HTSC.CABL	2022	2027	HTS Cable R&D	3,9	10,5	3,9	10,5	3,9	10,5	1,1	5,0
MAG.HTSC			Total of HTS Conductor	13,3	27,5	14,9	31,5	14,9	31,5	3,9	12,0
MAG.LTSM.SMPL	2022	2027	Nb3Sn Powered Samples	1,6	25,0	2,2	35,0	2,2	35,0	1,1	17,0
MAG.LTSM.SUBS	2022	2028	Sub-scale Nb3Sn Magnets	7,1	35,0	9,9	49,0	9,9	49,0	5,0	25,0
MAG.LTSM.SD12	2022	2028	Short Nb3Sn Magnets Intermediate Step (11...12T)	7,3	30,3	7,3	30,3	7,3	30,3	3,7	16,7
MAG.LTSM.LD12	2024	2031	Long Robust Demonstrators (11...12T)	8,4	34,7	14,7	60,7	33,4	86,7	7,3	33,3
MAG.LTSM.SD16	2024	2031	Short Ultimate Field Demonstrators (14...16T)	11,0	40,0	15,4	56,0	15,4	56,0	7,7	28,0
MAG.LTSM			Total of Nb3Sn Magnets	35,4	165,0	49,5	231,0	68,2	257,0	24,8	120,0
MAG.HTSM.DSGN	2022	2025	HTS Magnet Design Studies	4,4	32,5	4,4	32,5	4,4	32,5	2,2	16,5
MAG.HTSM.SUBS	2022	2027	Sub-scale HTS Magnets	4,4	15,0	4,4	15,0	4,4	15,0	2,2	7,5
MAG.HTSM.SRDM	2024	2029	HTS/LTS Hybrid (4.2 K) and All-HTS (4.2...20 K) R&D Magnets	3,3	0,0	6,6	12,0	25,3	52,0	3,3	6,0
MAG.HTSM			Total of HTS Magnets	12,1	47,5	15,4	59,5	34,1	99,5	7,7	30,0
MAG.MCM.MTRL	2022	2031	Structural and Composite Materials Development and Character	4,4	32,0	6,6	41,0	6,6	41,0	3,3	20,0
MAG.MCM.CRYO	2022	2031	Thermal Management and Cryogenics Studies	2,2	37,0	2,2	37,0	2,2	37,0	1,1	18,0
MAG.MCM.THME	2022	2027	Thermo-Mechanical Design Studies	0,0	11,0	0,0	12,3	0,0	12,3	0,0	6,7
MAG.MCM.MBSE	2022	2024	Model Based System Engineering Framework Development	0,0	11,0	0,0	12,3	0,0	12,3	0,0	6,7
MAG.MCM.MDLS	2022	2027	Multi-Physics/Multi-Scale Models Development	0,0	11,0	0,0	12,3	0,0	12,3	0,0	6,7
MAG.MCM			Total of Materials, Cryogenics and Models	6,6	102,0	8,8	115,0	8,8	115,0	4,4	58,0
MAG.IETI.INST	2022	2028	Instrumentation and Diagnostics R&D	2,2	10,0	2,2	10,0	2,2	10,0	2,2	10,0
MAG.IETI.PINF	2022	2027	Cabling and Magnet Production and R&D Infrastructure	7,0	10,5	12,5	16,5	12,5	16,5	12,5	16,5
MAG.IETI.TCON	2022	2025	Conductor Test Stations (LTS and HTS)	3,9	6,5	3,9	6,5	3,9	6,5	3,9	6,5
MAG.IETI.TINS	2025	2029	Cables and Insert Test Stations	0,0	1,5	5,5	4,0	5,5	4,0	5,5	4,0
MAG.IETI.TMAG	2023	2029	Magnet test Infrastructure	2,2	4,0	4,4	14,0	15,4	24,0	4,4	14,0
MAG.IETI			Total of Infrastructures and Instruments	15,3	32,5	28,5	51,0	39,5	61,0	28,5	51,0
MAG.PETP.MDLS	2022	2026	Quench Models Development	0,0	4,0	0,0	5,0	0,0	5,0	0,0	5,0
MAG.PETP.DSGN	2022	2028	Quench Detection and Protection Design and Analysis	1,1	18,0	1,1	20,0	1,1	20,0	1,1	10,0
MAG.PETP.INST	2022	2026	Advanced Quench Detection Methods Development	1,7	12,0	1,7	15,0	1,7	15,0	1,7	7,0
MAG.PETP.PROT	2022	2026	Advanced Quench Protection Strategies and Methods Developm	1,7	28,0	1,7	30,0	1,7	30,0	1,7	15,0
MAG.PETP			Total of Powering and Protection	4,4	62,0	4,4	70,0	4,4	70,0	4,4	37,0
			Total	112,9	478,5	154,4	607,0	241,3	728,0	96,7	346,5

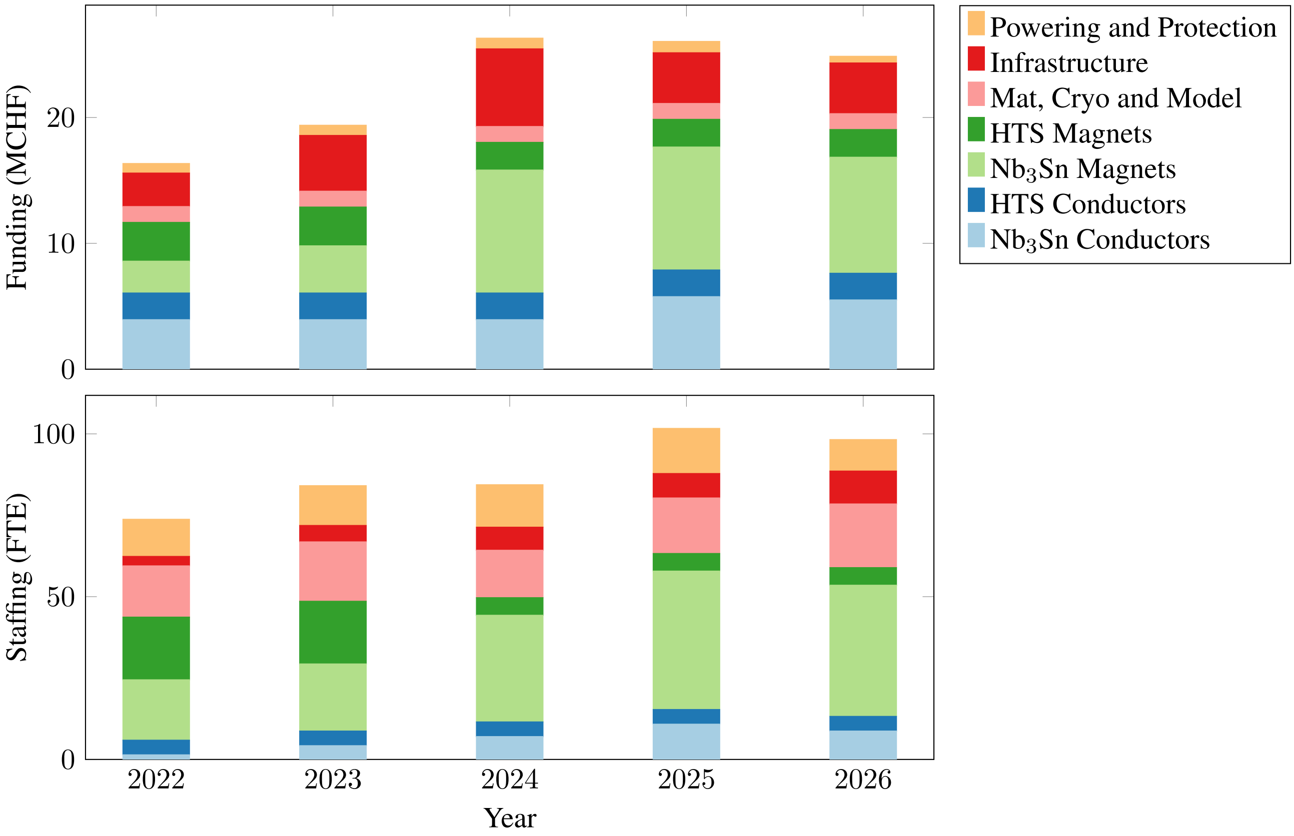


Fig. 2.14: Time profile of estimated nominal HFM material (funding) and personnel (Staffing) engagement.

The aspirational scenario has been built estimating the value of these additional contributions:

- Augmented engagement with and from industry (up to 34 MCHF 2022-2027 + 100 MCHF 2027-2035) consisting of:
  - Participation from the early R&D phase to the engineering review of methods and processes towards robust design, including considerations of cost-optimization and production on large-scale (e.g. use of massive automation and AI), as well as scoping tests (2025);
  - Early investment in manufacturing lines implementing a large degree of flexibility (e.g. through robotization) and suitable at a later stage for prototyping and pre-series production of full-length magnets (order of 15 m) (2025-2027);
  - Once concepts are demonstrated, initiating manufacturing of long prototype magnets in preparation of a pre-series production, complementing the efforts in the laboratories (2027-2035).
- Support to superconductors research and production in Europe (up to 35 MCHF 2022-2027 + 30 MCHF 2027-2035):
  - Upgrade R&D infrastructure and sustain development of technical superconductors for HFM (2027);
  - Expand collaboration with European superconductor industry in the development of advanced HFM conductors with improved electro-mechanical performance, integrating industrial perspective, and transferring novel superconductors manufacturing routes to industrial production (2027);

    - Support to superconductor production in Europe through targeted infrastructure and procurement actions (2027-2030).
- Distributed test capability at cryogenic conditions for LTS and HTS conductors and magnets (10 MCHF 2022-2027 + 15 MCHF 2027-2035)
    - Build additional test sites for liquid-helium and variable temperature testing of HFM R&D magnets (or equivalent samples) for fast turn-around in R&D mode (2025-2027)
    - Upgrade conductor and cable test capability to meet HTS target performance (20 T) (2025-2027)
    - Increase long-term cryogenic test capability in EU, test of magnet cryo-assemblies (2035)

The value of the aspirational scenario has been estimated at M = 241 MCHF and P = 728 FTEy over the reference period of 7 years.

Finally, a minimal scenario has been built by prioritizing activities that secure conductor development and magnet research on priority results (e.g. preventing degradation) and the construction of necessary infrastructures (in particular the test stations), while limiting magnet R&D through a focus on only a few of design options. The following risks are associated with this choice:

- While the focus is put on the development of advanced Nb_3Sn wires and REBCO, less conductor would be made available for magnet development, thus reducing the scope of manufacturing and testing;
- Reducing the number of magnet design options and reusing coils/magnet structures will increase the risks on the delivery of optimal solutions for the next ESSPU;
- Slower development of advanced technologies will thwart innovation, thus resulting in an increased risk that engineering solutions will be based on present practice.

The value of the minimal scenario has been estimated at M = 97 MCHF and P = 365 FTEy over the reference period of 7 years.

2.7.12 Impact of a High Field Magnet R&D programme

2.7.12.1 Applications to Other Fields and Society

We examine here what is the potential of High Field accelerator Magnets for other applications of science and society, and whether intense magnetic fields would enhance the performances of such applications or, simply, bring it to existence. This section is a review of the status of development of magnets for a wide range of applications and compares it to the situation of HEP accelerator magnets (HEP_AM). It starts sorting the different applications, it follows with a selection of the magnet parameters that allow comparing distinct magnets and ends with the conclusions derived from such a comparison.

Table 2.3 provides a global and condensed overview of the applications of high magnetic fields: How the magnetic field (B) and the current (I) affects the relevant parameters for a given application, how that field is produced, significant examples for every group of applications and why high magnetic field enhance the application.

Table 2.3 includes all uses where high magnetic fields (some comments about the consideration of high magnetic field will be done later) are required. It also includes some, where high currents are requested since they are very much related. For the sake of efficiency, only those applications (in grey in Table 2.3) with a closer liaison to magnets for HEP_AM will be considered for comparison. The next step is to establish the most relevant parameters defining a superconducting magnet. Table 2.4 lists those parameters and the impacts and challenges associated to them. Two separate set of magnitudes have been

Table 2.3: The usefulness of high magnetic fields.

Fundamentals	**Application form**	**Examples of Interest**	**Why high field is required**
Laplace Force $(F = B.I)$	Electrical machine	Energy Generation, Ground, Aerial & Marine transportation, MHD	Increasing the force and power density > e.g. Renewables, Efficient Ships, Clean Airplanes
Magnetic Pressure $(P = B^2/2\mu_0)$	Electrical Machines, Magnetic Bearings	Energy Generation Ground transportation	Increasing the global force and power force and density > e.g. Ultra-high-speed transport
Magnetic Rigidity $(\rho = R.B = \rho/q)$	Magnets	Accelerators, Gantries & Fusion	Reducing the sizes of circular accelerators, gantries and fusion coils > e.g. Ultra-high energy accelerators. Ultra-compact accelerators. Medical devices.
Larmor Frequency $(\omega = B.\gamma)$	Magnets	NMR, MRI Systems	Increasing the resolution of the system > Ultra high field NMR, MRI systems
Magnetic Energy Density $(e = B^2/2\mu_0)$	Magnets	Energy Storage	Increasing the specific and global energy > e.g. G Joule range SMES for grid applications. Hybrid energy storage systems
Faraday´s Law $(V = -N.d(B.S)/dt)$	Transformers, Fault Current Limiters (FCL)	Energy transmission & distribution	Compact and environmentally friendly transformers. New FCL types > e.g. Grid protection
B itself	Magnets	Science & Magnetic Separation	Affects all scientific phenomena involving high fields > Semiconductors, biology...
I itself	Cables	Energy transmission & distribution	Increasing the current density > e.g. DC links. Urban networks

considered: Those that can be quantified and those, which are qualitative and are basically associated to technological aspects.

Once these parameters have been chosen, a deep survey for a number of selected applications was carried out to perform a comparison between HEP_AM and those for other applications. Table 2.4 summarises this survey showing ranges of values for each of the selected parameters. Two categories have been considered: State of the Art Magnets which include those running in their present application or those which can be considered as consolidated prototypes already tested and commissioned and Future Magnets, integrating magnets in a design phase or even under fabrication and which can be presently considered the future trend in their respective fields.

Table 2.4 allows establishing a number of conclusions to help placing HEP_AM in the global context of high field magnets:

1) The meaning of high field is relative to the application. While high field user magnets want to reach 40 T and high field NMR magnets beyond 1 GHz require 30 T, many other magnets for medical accelerators or for other applications consider 5 to 10 T as real high field that can provide significant improvements to the application. HEP_AM field requirements around 20 T are in a middle range. Nevertheless, their stored energy is rather high and this constitutes an issue in terms of magnet protection. 2) HEP_AM need to work at high current densities in order to make them compact. This implies working at very low temperatures with high mechanical stresses in the coils that have to be limited to avoid con-

Table 2.4: Relevant parameters for High Field Magnets.

MAGNITUDES	IMPACT ON	ASSOCIATED CHALLENGES AS MAGNETIC FIELD INCREASES
QUANTITATIVE		
Magnetic Field (B)	The application performance and its environment including human hazard	SC properties of the superconductor. Stress level in the magnet
Operating Temperature (T)	The cryogenic system and efficiency	SC properties of the superconductor
Operating Current Current Density (J)	The power supplies, converters and current lead	SC properties of the superconductor. Stress level in the magnet
Number of Turns (N)	The operating current, energisation and stored energy	Induced voltages during quench. Winding process
Dimensions: Bore Length and Volume of Field (D), (L), (VoF)	Direct impact and requirements of the application and cooling	Volume of superconductor and cost, mechanical support and fabrication, quench generation, detection & protection
Stored Energy (E)	The power supplies and converters	Induced voltages and temperature during a quench. Quench protection
Coil Stress (σ)	Structural Magnet Design. Conductor degradation	Limitation and homogenisation of stresses
Ramp Rate (RR)	The power supply, cryogenic system, electrical insulation	Level of AC losses, wire design and manufacturing
Maximum Operating Voltage (V)	The electrical insulation and thermal design	Electric field and interface superconductor to electrical insulation
Accuracy and Stability of Magnetic Field (FA)	The shielding and contact resistances	Development of SC Switches, Accurate Power Supplies, Coils Positioning
QUALITATIVE		
SC Technology	The performance, cost (OPEX & CAPEX), size...	Conductor availability with the required quantity & specifications
Shape of the coil	The manufacturing method	Developing adequate tooling and machinery
Operation Mode (Persistent/Driven)	The field stability	Developing superconducting switches for HTS

ductor degradation and damage. As for other applications e.g. fusion magnets, the implementation of mechanical structures limiting theses stresses in the conductor constitute one of the major challenges. 3) While in HEP_AM the weight is not an issue, in some other applications it really is or it can be crucial. In this regard there is a clear tendency to eliminate the iron closing the magnetic flux path using additional superconducting coils. In other cases, it has been proposed to used magnetic materials with higher saturation fields. 4) While for some applications increasing the field is a real and challenging requirement (HEP_AM is a good example) in many others it is preferred to increase the operational temperature in order to decrease the OPEX, to reduce the complexity of the facility and to extend its use. 5) Regarding the type of superconductor to be used, there are basically two categories: Those applications for which magnetic fields lower than 5 T are enough (some medical applications, most of MRI, most of gantries) and those which need fields beyond 10 T (HEP_AM, NMR, some MRI). 6) For the first group there are two choices: using the conventional technology based on NbTi working below 5 K or using HTS to work at temperatures up to 30 K allowing a significant reduction of operational cost and complexity for the cryogenic facility. This second group is under development and constitutes one of the trends in magnet technology. 7) For the second group, practically all the applications consider a graded configuration of the magnets with sections made from NbTi, Nb_3Sn and eventually HTS. This scheme requires working at low temperature but reduces the amount of needed HTS. Future proposal consider eliminating NbTi

Table 2.5: Values of the Relevant Parameters for present and future High Field Magnets for different applications.

APPLICATIONS	**STATUS**	**MAGNET TYPE**	**Magnetic field (B)**	**Temperature (K)**	**Current density (A/mm^2)**	**Bore (mm)**	**Coil Stress (MPa)**	**Stored Energy (MJ)**	**PROPOSED MAGNET TECHNOLOGY**
HEP MAGNETS	pre	q-Pole	11	1.9	500	60	115	15	Race Track Cosθ + Cold Iron Nb_3Sn
	Fut	q-Pole	16	1.9		60	130	35	Flat Race-Track + Cold Iron. Nb_3Sn (among other several configurations)
FUSION	pre	Toroid	12	4.5	$\sim$ 600	14.700		2.200	ITER radial plates for TF coils
	Fut	Toroid	20	4.5-20		3000-4000			Compact HTS partially insulated coils)
THERAPY ACCELERATORS	pre	Solenoid	<8.9	4.5		700		9.6	Solenoid Nb_3Sn + Warm Iron
	Fut	Solenoid	<8.9	4.5		700		32	Solenoid Nb_3Sn. No Iron
OTHER MEDICAL ACCELERATORS	pre	Solenoid	<4.5	<5.5	<100	<400		<0.3	Solenoid NbTi + Warm or Cold Iron
	Fut	Solenoid	<4.5		<130				Solenoid NbT+ Warm Iron + Cold Holmium poles
	Fut	Solenoid	2.6	30					REBCO Tapes. No Iron
GANTRIES	pre	q-Pole	2.9	4.2		30			-Race-Track Cos + Cold Iron. NbTi. Conduction Cooled -Surface NbTi Coils
	Fut	q-Pole	6	4.2		30			Race-Track CosΔREBCO. Cold Iron. Conduction Cooled
	Fut	q-Pole	4	4.2		46			CCT Coils. NbTi. Conduction Cooled
	Fut	Toroid	3.5	4.2	105	800	50	30	Pancakes in a Toroidal arrangemet. NbTi
	Fut	Toroid	3.5	4.2	90	800	50	30	Pancakes in a Toroidal arrangemet. REBCO tapes
NMR	pre	Solenoid	<28	2		540			Solenoid LTS+BiSCO Persistent
	Fut	Solenoid	30.5						Solenoid LTS+ReBCO Non Insulated
	Fut	Solenoid	18.7	10-20					Solenoid HTS Helium free
MRI	pre	Solenoid	11.7	1.8	25-39	900	150	338	NbTi. Double Pancake. No Iron
	Fut	Solenoid	14.1	4.2	50-70	600-700		180	NbTi+Nb_3Sn. No Iro
	Fut	Solenoid	2.9	7	120	560		1.6	HTS Pancake Coils
HIGH FIELD FACILITIES	pre	Solenoid	32	4.2	200	34 clear bore	360	8.3	Solenoid LTS+HTS double pancake
	Fut	Solenoid	40	4.2	>600	34			Solenoid LTS+HTS double pancake

and even Nb_3Sn, allowing to increases the working temperature to reduce OPEX, but this seems to be a long-term development which will not be available before the next decade1. Future HEP_AM belong to the second group. They will include a Nb_3Sn section and probably an inner HTS section. 8) A particular case of these graded magnets are hybrid magnets in which one of the sections is resistive. Their field of application seem to be restricted to high field laboratory magnets due to the power consumption that they require. 9) Regarding the different magnet topologies, there are a number of possibilities which are common to all the applications: a) Racetrack Coils (Flat or curved) b) Solenoids c) CCT and d) Flat Double Pancakes to configure different arrangements like solenoids or toroids. HEP_AM coil configurations are not yet fixed and at present many are under development. Besides those mentioned in the previous point, other like the Common Coil or the Block Coil are under consideration for the next generation of magnets.

2.7.12.2 Industrial Ecosystem

The main guiding question in this section is: „What is the impact of the HFM Roadmap on industry?“ To answer this, several expert interviews have been done for this roadmap with senior experts from LTS, HTS and magnet manufacturing industry from leading European companies in this field (Bruker, Theva, Bilfinger Noell). The experts were asked to recommend specific actions from the industry point of view and their feedback was summarised and condensed to the main points.

The main challenges for developing high field magnets for accelerators with respect to industry are:

- Have suitable conductor available at low cost and high quality because the conductor is the major cost part of accelerators. A high quality requires a reliable and reproducible manufacturing process with a high yield for long lengths and high throughput. To develop a suitable conductor the main requirements need to be defined at a very early stage together with industry. This is strongly recommended to better understand the implications and dependencies between requirements and manufacturing efforts.
- Get a qualified group of all partners needed together because multidisciplinary cutting-edge technology needs to be developed first and then transformed to efficient series production. Experts, gathered in a unique network of excellence, are needed at all development processes at the different stakeholders and it is recommended to exchange them also directly with industry.

A key point is, that it is mandatory for industry to make profit with their products and services. In general, growth and the prospect for profit increases the interest of industry and triggers very often innovation and investment in companies. This has been proven by the huge progress in LTS material development within the ITER and LHC projects. Therefore, a continuous, long lasting and serious R&D programme in accelerator magnets would certainly improve the material towards higher quality which usually results in higher throughput, higher performance and lower cost of the material. This will help to transform the material into a conductor that is applicable to high field magnets for future accelerators.

Special material aspects and measures Superconducting materials for high field accelerator magnets need usually very special and unique requirements that are not very often needed in other superconducting applications (See section impact to ecosystem). Therefore a dedicated R&D process is needed to develop the conductor and the respective manufacturing processes. After this is done, the LTS and HTS material industry is prepared to increase the capacity but needs a reliable purchase plan for this in order to make profit. Setting up new manufacturing routes or factories requires a huge investment (larger than 10 Mio. €) and this cannot be done without a reliable purchase perspective. Nevertheless, we assume at present, that the main drivers for a considerable market increase of HTS conductors, will very likely come from other application fields than accelerators.

A high reliability, predictability and a certain base load are mandatory from the industry point of view to contribute to such a long-lasting R&D effort. To convince investors to setup a new manufacturing route it is further mandatory to have reliable framework agreements and R&D- and delivery contracts. The material cost is split roughly in four parts: material cost, machine use, labour use and yield. This means that increasing yield and throughput are the main factors to decrease material cost.

To summarise, the main impact of an HFM roadmap on industry could be the mandatory increase in capacity by setting up of new and dedicated manufacturing lines which further results in the medium and long-term in an additional cost decrease.

Special magnet aspects and measures Superconducting magnets for high field accelerators are complex and unique and require expertise from many disciplines and fields (e.g. material, simulation, coil manufacturing, complex structures, quench protection, cryogenics). Therefore, an early engagement of industry is mandatory to find a balance between high requirements and their dependency with development and series production. Usually this very special development does not lead to a new product line for the industry with huge follow-on prospects but it helps to keep and further develop the expertise in the industry along the many manufacturing, production and testing steps.

The main benefits of an HFM roadmap on industry can be seen in, that a few technology aspects can be used in other fields, that the working capacity of key persons is better utilised, that the know-how in specific fields can be expanded and that the industry is better prepared for follow on projects. As an example, a detailed roadmap with clear and increasing involvement of industry could try to avoid long time gaps between first demonstrators and final production as seen in previous accelerator projects. In these gaps of several years it was difficult for industry to keep the experts and know-how in the company.

Special cooperation aspects and measures Keep and further develop the expertise at all stakeholders is mandatory as well and medium and long term special partnerships with CERN, industry and R&D partners are recommended. To keep industry expertise on a high level during the long way from R&D, over prototyping, pre-industrialisation to series production it is mandatory to establish a strong collaboration to industry. The engagement of industry is usually increasing from R&D towards series production. A long-term accelerator strategy and roadmap will provide a basic workload for industry and helps to keep and extend industrial know-how in this field. Since know-how in industry will be extended, especially while going towards high field high-temperature superconducting magnets, such a development will help to improve the product portfolio of the industry. There is a need to explore new (new for Europe) ways of collaborations between laboratories and industry. This could include a consistent programme of demonstrators and prototypes and a clear perspective to keep them involved.

With respect to cooperation, the main impact of HFM roadmap on industry could be the establishment of new and special cooperation to focus the efforts.

The main challenge in each large and complex R&D project is, to reach the objectives in the planned budget, schedule and quality. Assuming that the timeline is given, the two main decisive factors are industry for the budget and the requirements for the quality. Within the requirements the field tolerances are a major cost driver and an analysis is recommended where the requirements can be released. Furthermore, a kind of sensitivity analysis that shows the interaction between requirements and cost is recommended.

2.7.13 Training and Education

The HFM programme will set a common, integrated and multidisciplinary environment for whom it is designed as a platform for developing knowledge and sharing experiences, best practices and benchmarks of the HFM technological development cycle, linking universities, research centers and industrial partners from several countries. Training a new generation of researchers and professionals across the whole development cycle of HFM research and engineering, in promoting inclusive education and gender equality across all levels, shall be an integral part of the programme mission. Material sciences, electrical engineering, cryogenics, mechanical engineering, applied and fundamental superconductivity and magnetism communities will be connected into a single cross-sectorial R&D, opening unique interdisciplinary opportunities for fostering a solid European network for superconductivity applications that will last beyond the programme duration. The programme builds upon other EU initiatives such as EuroCirCol (`http://www.eurocircol.eu),ARIES(https://aries.web.cern.ch/`), EASITrain (`https://easitrain.web.cern.ch/`) and will be promoted by tailored initiatives at existing applied superconductivity, materials and cryogenics conferences and schools... It will integrate partners with advanced tools for material manufacturing and characterisation, field testing facilities and high-performance computing clusters from the HFM field and related domains. The goal is to promote the exchange of members, fulfill needs, foster the development in the area of accelerator science and technology, and in particular applied superconductivity and attract students of all levels and early-researchers to join the HFM partners. To achieve these objectives, the following specific actions shall be undertaken:

- Encourage researchers and engineers to present and popularise their jobs and activities at the high schools level to attract youngsters in this domain of science and technology and especially applied superconductivity;
- Provide introductory courses to the concepts of accelerator science, engineering and technology aimed at undergraduate students to increase the attractiveness of our field through new or existing events such as the CAS of JUAS schools;
- Create or join a cross-sector network structure for early-researchers or Ph.D. students, e.g., "Marie Skłodowska-Curie Actions," to develop talents of the next generation of researchers and engineers on the HFM technology involving both academic laboratories and SMEs with specific grants;
- Coordinate, organise, and support advanced topical training activities for technicians, engineers, graduate students and early-stage researchers in Europe, in a worldwide context, on the HFM technologies and related fields through dedicated programmes of personnel exchange among laboratories, in the frame of existing or new initiatives (e.g. COST actions);
- Create an open, inclusive, gender-balanced network of excellence to promote synergies among partners by harboring an exchange programme at different levels (technicians and scientists) through which fundamental knowledge, experimental skills and engineering techniques are mutualised in the area of high field magnets science and technology as well as related fields;
- Coordinate, support and strengthen the communications and outreach activities for accelerators in Europe focusing on the technical and social implication of the HFM programme in using different communication channels and especially social media, new or existing like the CERN newsletter…

2.8 Conclusion

High Field Superconducting Accelerator Magnets are a key enabling technology for HEP Accelerators. It was so in the past and so it will be in the future, strengthening the fruitful companionship of the past 50 years. Present state of the art HFM is based on Nb_3Sn, with magnets producing fields in the range of 11 T to 14 T. We have tackled in the last years the challenges associated with the brittle nature of this material, but we realize that more work is required and the manufacturing is not robust enough to be considered ready at an industrial scale.

Great interest was stirred in recent years by the progress achieved on HTS, materialised not only in the fabrication of demonstrators for HEP, but also with the successful test of magnets in other fields of applications such as fusion and power generation. The tendency shows that the performance of HTS magnets will exceed that of the Nb_3Sn, and also that both technologies can be complementary to produce fields in the range of 20 T, and possibly higher.

The HFM programme described here should enable us to propose, by the next update of the European strategy, a Nb_3Sn magnet technology and a field level that can be used for a future particle collider, and to determine a horizon for the use of magnets using HTS superconductors. The main goal of the programme is to find the intersection between affordability, robustness and good performance.

To achieve this, the HFM programme proposes a strategy based on three main development axes, focusing on: Nb_3Sn and HTS conductors; Nb_3Sn magnets; HTS magnets. Cross-cutting axes will support the programme around key technologies: materials, cryogenics and modelling; powering and protection; infrastructures and instruments.

The methodology of the proposed programme is based on sequential development happening in steps of increasing complexity and integration, e.g. from samples, to small scale magnets, short magnets and long magnets in order to produce a fast-moving technology progression. Indeed, we are convinced that fast-tracking and innovation are crucial to meeting the declared goals.

For Nb_3Sn conductor, the tasks identified are the development of new robust wires for industrial production, and optimisation of the necessary cables. A similar approach is proposed for HTS, although here work is more at R&D level, and industrialization is less imminent than for Nb_3Sn.

For Nb_3Sn magnets, two objectives have been defined: the development of a 12T demonstrator of proven robustness suitable for industrialization, in parallel to the development of an accelerator demonstrator dipole reaching the ultimate field for this material, towards the target of 16 T.

For HTS magnets, a dual objective is proposed: the development of a hybrid LTS/HTS accelerator magnet demonstrator and a full HTS accelerator magnet demonstrator, with a target of 20 T and the potential for operation at temperatures higher than liquid helium, albeit at reduced field.

Nb_3Sn is today the natural reference for future accelerator magnets, but HTS represents a real opportunity provided the current trend of production and price reduction is sustainable. Energy efficiency efforts in line with societal trends should also be retained as one of the objectives when developing the next generation of magnets. The use of HTS conductors operated at higher temperatures could be a step in the right direction.

Different scenarios of engagement were considered, and are summarized below in graphical form. Taking into account the time required to produce the desired step in magnet technology, the basis for evaluation was taken as 7 years, i.e. 2022 to 2027 (included). The nominal scenario represents an effort of 154 MCHF in material investment and some 597 FTEy in personnel, see Fig. 2.15, with a partial engagement at 5 years at the level of 114 MCHF and 447 FTEy, shown in Fig. 2.16. An aspirational scenario, with augmented engagement with industry, was evaluated at 233 MCHF in material investment and 718 FTEy over 7 years, see Fig. 2.17. A minimal scenario, evaluated at 97 MCHF in material investment and 335 FTEy over 7 years, see Fig. 2.18, bears significant risk on delivery of the decisive results sought after.

As signified at several instances here, we recognize the crucial role of infrastructure for the manufacturing and measurement of magnets. This is an essential part of the programme, where the requested features, equipment and instrumentation have also been identified. The funding identified will allow leaving a significant inheritance of infrastructure for future programmes. We have also discussed to some extent the impact of the development of HFM magnets on the industrial ecosystem and on the training and education of future generations of applied scientists. In fact, one of the objectives of our aspirational scenario is to propose actions to support European industry, responding to the on-going evolution of business models, and foster the deployment of developments and innovations from research to industry.

Finally, we would like to emphasise the values of collaboration, and the connection to the on-going programmes worldwide. Realizing the proposed HFM programme will build a broad and resilient basis of competence, a strong community, and the opportunity to educate the future generation on subjects of high-technological content.

The challenge for the next decade is considerable, but the high-field magnet community is ready to meet it.

References

[1] R. R. Wilson. The Tevatron. Technical Report Fermilab TM-763. `https://inspirehep.net/files/54f7bb5ee644835a87b8ee6a0afd9e4d`.

[2] R. Meinke. Superconducting magnet system for HERA. *IEEE Trans. Mag.*, 27(2):1728–1734, 1991. `https://doi.org/10.1109/20.133525`.

[3] M. Anerella et al. The RHIC magnet system. *Nucl. Inst. Meth. Phys. Res. Sect. A*, 499(2-3):280–315, 2003. `https://doi.org/10.1016/S0168-9002(02)01940-X`.

[4] O. Brünning et al. (eds.). LHC design report, volume I: The LHC main ring. Technical Report CERN-2004-003, 2004. `http://dx.doi.org/10.5170/CERN-2004-003-V-1`.

[5] L. Evans and P. Bryant (eds.). LHC Machine. *JINST*, 3(S08001), 2008. `https://doi.org/10.`

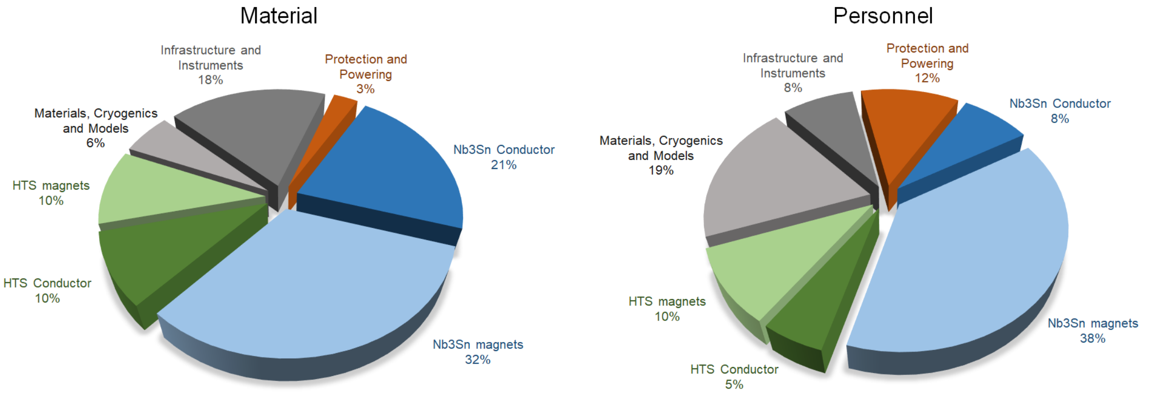


Fig. 2.15: Value of the proposed program in the nominal scenario (material and personnel) evaluated over the 7 years basis taken as reference.

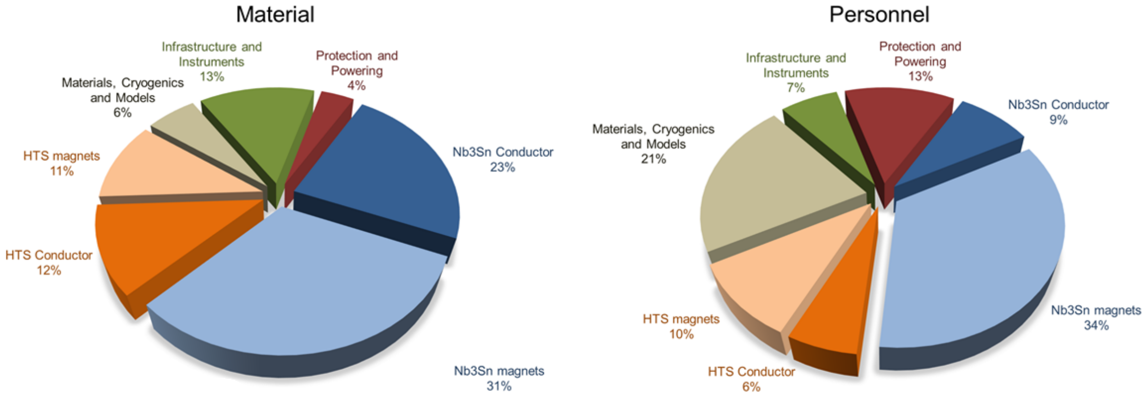


Fig. 2.16: Partial Value of the proposed program in the nominal scenario (material and personnel) evaluated after 5 years from the start.

1088/1748-0221/3/08/S08001.

[6] J. K. Hulm and R. D. Blaugher. Superconducting solid solution alloys of the transition elements. *Phys. Rev.*, 123(5):1569–1581, 1961. https://doi.org/10.1103/PhysRev.123.1569.

[7] L. Rossi. The Large Hadron Collider and the role of superconductivity in one of the largest scientific enterprises. *IEEE Trans. Appl. Supercond.*, 17(2):1005–014, June 2007. https://doi.org/10.1109/TASC.2007.899260.

[8] L. Bottura et al. Advanced accelerator magnets for upgrading the LHC. *IEEE Trans. Appl. Sup*, 22(3):4002008, 2013. https://doi.org/10.1109/TASC.2012.2186109.

[9] O. Brüning and L. Rossi. The High Luminosity Large Hadron Collider. *Advanced Series on Directions in High Energy Physics, World Scientific*, 24:1793–1339, 2015. https://doi.org/10.1142/9581.

[10] C. Sutton L. Rossi and A. Szeberenyi. Superconductivity leads the way to high luminosity. *CERN Courier*, 53(1):28–32, 2013. https://cds.cern.ch/record/1734885.

[11] EU supports the LHC high-luminosity study. *CERN Bulletin*, (45-46), 2011. https://cds.cern.ch/record/1394587.

[12] A. Schaeffer. The light at the end of the tunnel gets brighter. *CERN Bulletin*, (32-34), 2014.

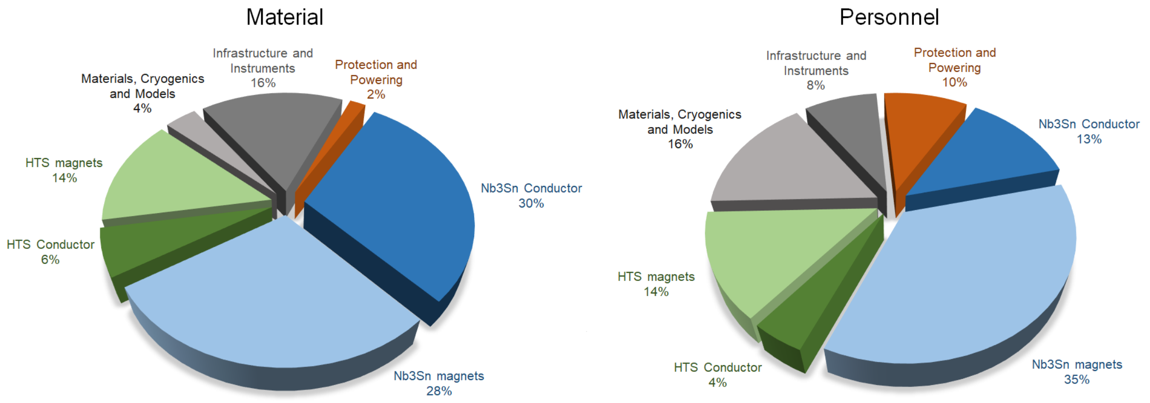


Fig. 2.17: Value of an aspirational program (material and personnel) evaluated over the 7 years basis taken as reference.

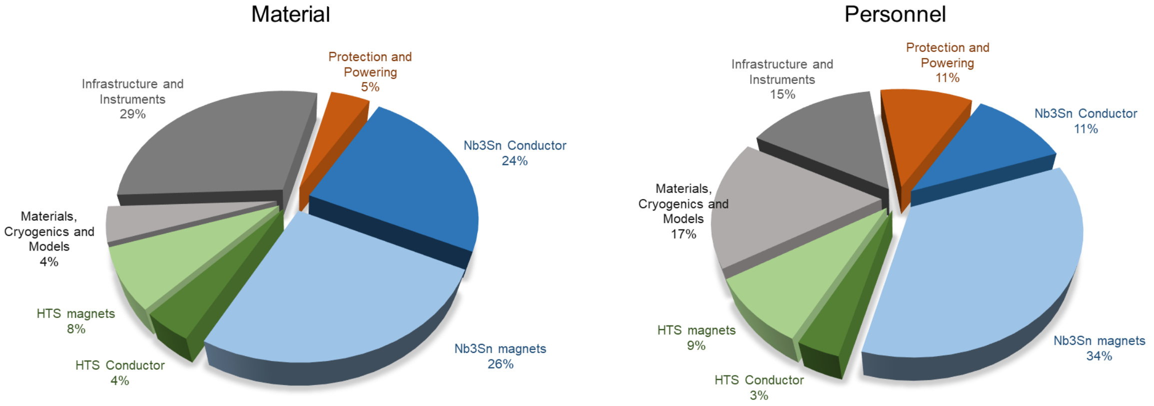


Fig. 2.18: Value of a minimal program (material and personnel) evaluated over the 7 years basis taken as reference, with increased delivery risk.

https://cds.cern.ch/record/1746208.

[13] A. Abada et al. FCC-hh: The Hadron Collider. *Eur. Phys. J. Spec. Top.*, 228:755–1107, 2019. https://doi.org/10.1140/epjst/e2019-900087-0.

[14] A. Apyan et al. CEPC-SPPC preliminary conceptual design report, volume II - Accelerator. Technical Report IHEP-CEPC-DR-2015-01, IHEP-AC-2015-01, 2015. https://inspirehep.net/literature/1395736.

[15] P. Limon. Design study for a staged Very Large Hadron Collider. Technical Report Fermilab TM-2149, 2001. https://doi.org/10.2172/781994.

[16] S. Geer. Muon colliders and neutrino factories. *Annual Rev. of Nucl. Sci. Part.*, 59:347–365, 2009. https://doi.org/10.1146/annurev.nucl.010909.083736.

[17] W. Chou. Muon colliders and neutrino factories. *ICFA Beam Dynamics Newsletter*, 55, August 2011. https://icfa-usa.jlab.org/archive/newsletter/icfa_bd_nl_55.pdf.

[18] R. Assmann al. First thoughts on a higher-energy LHC. Technical Report CERN-ATS-2010-177, 2010. https://cds.cern.ch/record/128432.

[19] J. P. Delahaye et al. Muon colliders, 2019. arXiv/1901.06150 [physics.acc-ph]. https://inspirehep.net/literature/1714987.

[20] B. T. Matthias et al. Superconductivity of Nb_3Sn. *Phys. Rev.*, 95(6):1435, 1954. `https://doi.org/10.1103/PhysRev.95.1435`.

[21] R. Scanlan. Conductor development for high energy physics-plans and status of the US program. *IEEE Trans. Appl. Sup*, 11(1):2150–2155, 2001. `https://doi.org/10.1109/77.920283`.

[22] R. Kephart et al. The U.S. LHC Accelerator Research Program: A proposal, 2003. `https://www.uslarp.org/LARP_Proposal.pdf`.

[23] G. Ambrosio et al. Nb_3Sn high field magnets for the High Luminosity LHC upgrade project. *IEEE Trans. Appl. Supercond.*, 25(3):4002107, 2015. `https://doi.org/10.1109/TASC.2014.2367024`.

[24] S. Gourlay et al. The U.S. magnet development program plan. `https://escholarship.org/uc/item/5178744r`, 2016.

[25] R. Aleksan. Coordinated accelerator research in Europe: Final report. `https://cordis.europa.eu/project/id/506395/reporting`, 2004.

[26] A. Devred et al. Status of the Next European Dipole (NED) activity of the Collaborated Accelerator Research in Europe (CARE) project. *IEEE Trans. Appl. Sup*, 15(2):1106–1112, 2005. `https://doi.org/10.1109/TASC.2005.849506`.

[27] G. de Rijk et al. The EuCARD High Field Magnet Project. *IEEE Trans. Appl. Sup*, 22(3):4301204, 2012. `https://doi.org/10.1109/TASC.2011.2178220`.

[28] M. Karppinen et al. Design of 11 T twin-aperture Nb_3Sn dipole: Demonstrator magnet for LHC upgrades. *IEEE Trans. Appl. Sup.*, 22(3):4901504, 2012. `https://doi.org/10.1109/TASC.2011.2177625`.

[29] P. Ferracin et al. Magnet design of the 150 mm aperture low-β quadrupoles for the High Luminosity LHC. *IEEE Trans. Appl. Sup*, 24(3):4002306, 2013. `https://doi.org/10.1109/TASC.2013.2284970`.

[30] M. K. Wu et al. Superconductivity at 93-K in a new mixed-phase Y-Ba-Cu-O compound system at ambient pressure. *Phys. Rev. Lett.*, 58(9):908, 1987. `https://doi.org/10.1103/PhysRevLett.58.908`.

[31] H. Maeda, Y. Tanaka, M. Fukutomi, and A T. Asano. New high-T_c oxide superconductor without a rare earth element. *Jap. J. Appl. Phys.*, 27(2):L361–4, 1988. `https://doi.org/10.1143/JJAP.27.L209`.

[32] Bruker Presse release. World's first 1.2 GHz high-resolution protein NMR data. `http://cern.ch/go/Kn9F`.

[33] S. Hahn et al. 45.5-tesla direct-current magnetic field generated with a high-temperature superconducting magnet. *Nature*, 570:496–499, 2019. `https://doi.org/10.1038/s41586-019-1293-1`.

[34] L. Rossi and C. Senatore. HTS accelerator magnet and conductor development in Europe. *Instruments*, 5:8, 2021. `https://doi.org/10.3390/instruments5010008`.

[35] L. Rossi et al. The EuCARD2 future magnets program for particle accelerator high-field dipoles: Review of results and next steps. *IEEE Trans. Appl. Supercond.*, 28(3):4001810, 2018. `https://doi.org/10.1109/TASC.2017.2784357`.

[36] L. Rossi et al. REBCO coated conductor development in the ARIES program for HTS accelerator magnets, 2018. Invited presentation to ASC Superconductivity News Forum. `http://cern.ch/go/7JJF`.

[37] IFAST Project Office. Innovation fostering in accelerator science and technology (I.FAST). H-2020 Proposal 101004730 to EU Call INFRAINNOV-04-2020. `https://ifast-project.eu/`, last accessed 2 November 2021.

[38] W. B. Sampson et al. Nb_3Sn dipole magnets. *IEEE Trans. Magnetics*, 15:117–118, 1979. `https:`

//doi.org/10.1109/TMAG.1979.1060162.

[39] C. Taylor et al. A Nb_3Sn dipole magnet reacted after winding. *IEEE Trans. Magnetics*, 21:967–970, 1985. https://doi.org/10.1109/TMAG.1985.1063680.

[40] A. D. McInturff et al. Test results for a high field (13 T) Nb_3Sn dipole. In *Proceedings of the 17th Particle Accelerator Conference (1997)*, pages 3212–3214. IEEE, May 1998. https://doi.org/10.1109/PAC.1997.753158.

[41] A. F. Lietzke et al. Test results for HD1, a 16 tesla Nb_3Sn dipole magnet. *IEEE Trans Appl. Supercon.*, 14:345–348, 2004. https://doi.org/10.1109/TASC.2004.829122.

[42] J. C. Perez et al. 16 T Nb_3Sn racetrack model coil test result. *IEEE Trans. Appl. Supercond.*, 26(4):4004906, 2015. https://doi.org/10.1109/TASC.2016.2530684.

[43] CERN News. High five for CERN European Union projects. https://home.cern/news/news/cern/high-five-cern-european-union-projects, 23 November, 2020.

[44] D. Schoerling and A. Zlobin (eds.). *Nb_3Sn Accelerator Magnets*. Particle Acceleration and Detection Series. Springer, 2019. https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-16118-7.

[45] T. Boutboul et al. Heat treatment optimization studies on PIT Strand for the NED Project. *IEEE Trans. Appl. Sup*, 19(3):2564–2567, 2009. https://doi.org/10.1109/TASC.2009.2019017.

[46] E. Rochepault and P. Ferracin. *Nb_3Sn accelerator magnets*, chapter CEA–CERN block-type dipole magnet for cable testing: FRESCA2. Particle Acceleration and Detection Series. Springer, 2019. https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-16118-7_12.

[47] A. Zlobin et al. Development and first test of the 15 T Nb_3Sn dipole demonstrator MDPCT1. *IEEE Trans. Appl. Supercond.*, 30(4):4000805, 2020. https://doi.org/10.1109/TASC.2020.2967686.

[48] A. Devred. Status of the 11 T dipole and CERN magnet programs beyond HiLumi, October 2019. Presented at the 9th HL-LHC Collaboration Meeting, Fermilab, 14–16 Oct. 2019. https://indico.cern.ch/event/806637/contributions/3487461/.

[49] A. Tollestrup and D. Larbalestier. Very high field superconducting magnet collaboration, July 2011. Presented at Eucard HTS Magnet Program Meeting, CERN, 26 Jul. 2011. https://indico.cern.ch/event/148320/contributions/1386701/.

[50] X. Wang et al. Development and performance of a 2.9 tesla dipole magnet using high-temperature superconducting CORC wires. *Supercond. Sci. Technol.*, 34(1):015012, 2020. https://doi.org/10.1088/1361-6668/abc2a5.

[51] T. Shen and L. Garcia Fajardo. Superconducting accelerator magnets based on high-temperature superconducting Bi-2212 round wires. *Instruments*, 4(2):17, 2020. https://doi.org/10.3390/instruments4020017.

[52] L. Garcia Fajardo et al. First demonstration of high current canted-cosine-theta coils with Bi-2212 rutherford cables. *Supercond. Sci. Technol.*, 34(2):024001, 2021. https://doi.org/10.1088/1361-6668/abc73d.

[53] The European Strategy Group. 2020 update of the European Strategy for Particle Physics. Technical Report CERN-ESU-013, June 2020. http://dx.doi.org/10.17181/ESU2020.

[54] Q. J. Xu. High field superconducting magnet program for accelerators in China. In *Proceedings of 10th International Particle Accelerator Conference (IPAC2019)*, Melbourne, Australia, May 2019. https://doi.org/10.18429/JACoW-IPAC2019-FRXXPLM1.

[55] V. Corato et al. Progress in the design of the superconducting magnets for the EU DEMO. *Fusion Eng. Des.*, 136 B:1597–1604, 2018. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.fusengdes.2018.05.065.

[56] National Research Council. Opportunities in High Magnetic Field Science. *National Academies Press*, 2005. ISBN:978-0-309-09582-2.

[57] National Research Council. High Magnetic Field Science and Its Application in the United States,

Current Status and Future Directions. *National Academies Press*, 2013. ISBN: 978-0-309-38778-1.

[58] Final Report Summary. EMFL (Creation of a distributed European Magnetic Field Laboratory). EU Grant agreement ID: 262111.

[59] A. Ballarino and L. Bottura. Targets for R&D on Nb_3Sn conductor for High Energy Physics. *IEEE Trans. Appl. Supercond.*, 25(3):6000906, 2015.

[60] A. Ballarino et al. The CERN FCC Conductor Development Program: A Worldwide Effort for the Future Generation of High-Field Magnets. *IEEE Trans. Appl. Supercond.*, 29(5):6001709, 2019.

[61] X. Xu. Nb3Sn conductors with artificial pinning centers. https://indico.cern.ch/event/1012691/contributions/4290709, 2021. presented at Workshop on State-of-the-Art in High Field Accelerator Magnets, April 14-16.

[62] S. Balachandran et al. Beneficial influence of hf and zr additions to nb4at%ta on the vortex pinning of nb_3sn with and without an o source. *Supercond. Sci. Technol.*, 32:044006, 2019.

[63] The European Strategy Group. Deliberation documenton the 2020 update of the european strategy for particle physics. Technical Report CERN-ESU-014, March 2020.

[64] M. Benedikt. Future Circular Collider: The Integrated Programme (FCC-int). https://fcc-cdr.web.cern.ch/reports/EPPSU18_FCCint.pdf, 2018.

[65] A. Molodyk et al. Development and large volume production of extremely high current density $YBa_2Cu_3O_7$ superconducting wires for fusion. *Scientific Reports*, 11(5):2084, 2021.

[66] A. Ballarino. Alternative Design Concepts for Multi-Circuit HTS Link Systems. *IEEE Trans. Appl. Sup.*, 21:980–984, 2020.

[67] D. Uglietti et al. Non-twisted stacks of coated conductors for magnets: Analysis of inductance and AC losses. *Cryogenics*, 110:103118, 2020.

[68] J.D. Weiss et al. Introduction of CORC wires: highly flexible, round high-temperature superconducting wires for magnet and power transmission applications. *Supercond. Sci. Technol.*, 30:014002, 2017.

[69] W. Goldacker et al. Roebel cables from REBCO coated conductors: a one-century-old concept for the superconductivity of the future. *Supercond. Sci. Technol.*, 27:093001, 2014.

[70] S. Kar et al. Progress in scale-up of REBCO STAR wire for canted cosine theta coils and future strategies with enhanced flexibility. *Supercond. Sci. Technol.*, 33:094001, 2020.

3 High-gradient RF Structures and Systems–*WORK IN PROGRESS*

Editor: S. Bousson[a]

Panel members: S. Bousson[a,*] *(Chair), H. Weise*[b] *(Co-Chair), G. Burt*[c], *G. Devanz*[d], *A. Gallo*[e], *F. Gerigk*[f], *A. Grudiev*[f], *D. Longuevergne*[a], *T. Proslier*[d], *R. Ruber*[g]

Associated members: P. Baudrenghien[f], *O. Brunner*[f], *S. Calatroni*[f], *A. Castilla*[c], *N. Catalan-Lasheras*[f], *E. Cenni*[d], *A. Cross*[h], *D. Li*[i], *E. Montesinos*[f], *G. Rosaz*[f], *J. Shi*[j], *N. Shipman*[f], *S. Stapnes*[f], *I. Syratchev*[f], *S. Tantawi*[k], *C. Tennant*[l], *A.-M. Valente*[l], *M. Wenskat*[b], *Y. Yamamoto*[m]

[a]IJCLab, Orsay, France
[b]DESY, Hamburg, Germany
[c]Lancaster University, UK
[d]CEA, Saclay, France
[e]LNF/INFN Frascati, Italy
[f]CERN, Geneva, Switzerland
[g]Uppsala University, Sweden
[h]University of Strathclyde, UK
[i]LBNL, Berkeley, California, USA
[j]Tsinghua University, Beijing, China
[k]SLAC, Stanford, California, USA
[l]Jefferson Lab, Virginia, USA
[m]KEK, Tsukuba, Japan

3.1 Executive summary of findings to date

3.2 Introduction

3.3 Motivation

3.4 Panel activities

The expert panel was fully constituted in April 2021 and held its first meeting on the 6th May. The panel held several meetings afterwards, every 2 weeks in average. The first task was to precisely determine the technological domain covered by the panel and then to define its state of the art. Both superconducting RF and normal conducting RF international scientific communities are regularly exchanging about their progress through the TESLA Technology Collaboration (TTC) workshops for the first one and through the recurrent High Gradient Technology Workshops for the second one, so the information on the state of art is easily accessible.

To panel organized a dedicated workshop (held virtually) on the 7th and 8th July 2021 (https://indico.cern.ch/event/1052657/) with the double objective of understanding the requirements and challenges of future HEP facilities regarding RF acceleration and to define key technologies and developments which are essential on the way towards the construction of future accelerators for high energy physics (HEP). Presentations performed and discussions held during this workshop have been the primary material used to produce this report.

---

[*] sebastien.bousson@ijclab.in2p3.fr

This contribution should be cited as: High-gradient RF Structures and Systems, DOI: 10.23731/CYRM-2021-XXX.61, in: European Strategy for Particle Physics - Accelerator R&D Roadmap, Ed. N. Mounet,
CERN Yellow Reports: Monographs, CERN-2021-XXX, DOI: 10.23731/CYRM-2021-XXX, p. 61.

Links and coherence with the international Snowmass process, and in particular with the topical group of the Accelerator Frontier AF7 (Accelerator Technology R&D) are ensured thanks to the participation of some members of our LDG expert panel to this AF7 group.

To produce the roadmap, the panel worked in parallel over the 3 main topics: superconducting RF structures, normal conducting RF structures and high power RF sources, ancillaries and control. In each area, we tried to identify where significant progress could be achieved and that are relevant for the whole panel of considered future HEP facilities.

3.5 State of the art and R&D objectives

3.5.1 SRF challenges and R&D objectives

3.5.1.1 Bulk Niobium and the path towards high quality factors at high gradients

Bulk Niobium technology for SRF cavities has been under constant optimization since now 50 years and today is still the main operational technology for the construction of SRF accelerators.

The definition of material standards, standard recipes for surface preparation and precise procedures for surface cleaning has set a very robust baseline allowing the construction of large scale SRF accelerators (examples being the European XFEL, LCLS-II at SLAC, SHINE in Shanghai, SNS and ESS).

Even though the hard fundamental limit of Niobium is close to be reached since now 10 years, very specific and alternative surface and heat treatments have been investigated to tune the cavity performance to the very stringent specifications required by new projects and thus improve very specifically the driving parameters (Q_0, E_{max}, fabrication cost, reliability, among others). Bulk Niobium technology will be still competitive for years to come, compared to the new alternative thin film superconductors being under investigation. Still many technical and technological challenges have to be tackled to allow their industrialization.

The various new treatments under investigation and optimization can be divided into three main focus areas:

- Material structure: The fine grain structure (FG), obtained from laminated ingots, originally the only solution commercially available, has been surpassed in terms of physical properties and cost by large grain structures (LG) obtained by sliced ingots. However, the latter suffer from technical limitations due to anisotropic mechanical properties. Challenges with respect to pressure vessel regulations are under discussion. Medium grain structures (MG) are under investigation and development as these could offer the same physical properties (superconducting, thermal) as LG with improved mechanical properties compulsory for reliable cavity fabrication.
- Heat treatments: Baseline heat treatments often include an initial 800°C hydrogen degassing/recrystallization treatment and usually also the so-called low temperature baking at 120°C during 48h. These baseline treatments associated with advanced surface treatment (final electropolishing below 15°C), demagnetization procedure and cooling procedures (high temperature gradients to promote magnetic flux expulsion) and magnetic hygiene revealed the efficiency and improvements offered by specific heat treatments as nitrogen doping, nitrogen infusion and 2-step baking. Nitrogen doping allowed to reach unprecedented Q_0 at the expense of the maximum achievable accelerating gradient. On the contrary, nitrogen infusion and 2-step baking exhibit an only slight improvement of Q_0 but very high fields can be reached at low RF losses ($Q_0 > 10^{10}$ above 40 MV/m). Heat treatments at intermediate temperature (between 200°C and 600°C) have been recently investigated and revealed doping-like behavior (Q_0 rise versus accelerating gradient) but with a way simpler process.
- Surface polishing: Since several years, the efforts made to reduce the temperature of electropolishing (EP) treatment below 15°C led to unprecedented cavity performances. Low temperatures

during chemical treatment is the key to promote optimum performances after specific heat treatments as described earlier. Alternative polishing techniques as Metallographic Polishing (MP) and more recently Electrolytic Plasma Polishing (EPP) are under investigation. The ambition is to reduce the cost and eventually the ecological footprint of the standard chemical processes. No real improvement of cavity is foreseen as roughness better than what is achieved by EP does not seem to be a key parameter, unless for future deposition of thin films.

3.5.1.2 Field emission reduction is a must for all accelerators

Field emission is one of the main reasons for the degradation of the superconducting cavities' quality factor. Its presence can limit the ultimate performances of superconducting RF (SRF) cavities and hence the cryomodule in which they are assembled. In general, the field emitted current tends to become more severe during beam operation. Hence, it can affect the entire accelerator's final performance. Dust particles on the cavity surface are the most common sources of contamination leading to field emission during cavity operation.

For these reasons, it is essential to better understand how this phenomenon is generated and evolves from the SRF cavity preparation, in the clean room, through the cavity assembly in the cryomodule until the final accelerator module test and during machine operation.

The field emission issue can be addressed at three different levels:

- Clean room preparation: Clean environment is mandatory to preserve the cavity package's high performance. Improvement in manipulation, pumping/venting procedures and automation can be valuable assets for high performance and mass production. The introduction of robots in the assembly line can relieve operators from tedious, time consuming and heavy work while ensuring robustness and reproducibility. It can have a beneficial impact on cost saving for mass production.
- Diagnostics: Analyzing X- and γ- ray patterns emerging from the cryomodule is a valuable method to diagnose field emission; with a proper detector system it is possible to evaluate recovery or mitigation methods. Specific diagnostic tools need to be developed for cryomodule testing and operation.
- Mitigation and recovery: There are ongoing efforts to develop in-sit treatments capable of cavity performance recovery or to mitigate detrimental effects due to field emission, this in the most cost-effective way. Plasma cleaning and dry-ice rinsing are very promising and need further development.

Finally, field emission is a long-standing issue in the SRF field and will become even more relevant for the future high gradient and high-performance superconducting cavities, hence for future HEP facilities' operation.

3.5.1.3 Thin superconducting films for superconducting radiofrequency cavities

Superconducting radio frequency (SRF) cavities are one of the cornerstone infrastructures of particle accelerators. As mentioned in the previous chapter, for the past 50 years great advances have been made with the bulk Nb technology that is now reaching reproducibly $\sim 35\,\mathrm{MV/m}$, Q$\sim$2–5 10^{10} at 2 K. Nibbling on the last cavity performance improvements to reach reproducibly the Nb intrinsic limits will become increasingly difficult and exponentially expensive. In order to overcome this roadblock, a technological leap is needed to produce next generation SRF cavities with cost-effective means and reliable production methods scalable to industry. Practical solutions are:

1. **Reduced amount of superconducting materials**: the SRF performance is dominated by the superconductors' properties within the surface layer of a few penetration depths. Hence, micron-thick films should be able to replace the more expensive bulk material while still maintaining bulk

equivalent SRF cavity performances. Furthermore, the much higher heat conductivity of Cu substrates reduces the risk of quenches. Recent remarkable results obtained at CERN with Nb/Cu have demonstrated the feasibility of this approach. This approach also suppresses the chemical etching of Niobium and replaces it with chemical surface preparation of Cu that does not use Hydrofluoric acid. In addition, the chemical recipes used can be transformed into processes that only leave a small amount of "dry" waste, which is a lot easier to deal with than large amounts of liquid waste. Once elaborated it can work for bulk Nb and Cu. Cooling procedures of thin superconducting films on Cu cavities have to be optimized in order to avoid thermoelectric trapped flux.

2. **Increased operation temperature (Q)**: Higher Tc materials such as A15 compounds (Nb_3Sn, Nb_3Al, V_3Si) and MgB_2 with critical temperatures two to four times higher than Nb would enable an operation at 4.2 K or higher and significantly reduce operational costs while still preserving the needed SRF cavity Quality factor ($> 10^{10}$). Well established results obtained at Cornell and Fermilab with Nb_3Sn synthesized on bulk Nb cavities have demonstrated quality factors of 10^{10} at 4.2 K up to 22–24 MV/m. The major challenge is now to reproduce these results on Cu substrates and cavities. An increase of the operation temperature to 4.2 K represents an energy saving of a factor of 3 for the cryogenic system with respect to 2 K operation and significantly simplifies the helium distribution network. This potentiality is of primary importance for high current CW facilities such as ERL-based accelerators for which huge savings in operation costs could be achieved.

3. **Increased maximum operation gradient (E_{max})**: To that end new multilayers hetero-structures with higher critical fields than Nb have been proposed. The multilayer approach composed of nanometric superconducting (50–200 nm) and insulating (5–10 nm) thin film stacks has the potential to significantly increase E_{max} by 20 to 100% as compared to Nb. This solution can be applied on any optimized thin films mentioned in point 1 and 2. The major challenge is to demonstrate the feasibility of this solution for higher gradients i.e. > 50 MV/m. A 50% increase in the maximum accelerating gradient implies a construction cost saving for XFEL-scale accelerator of about 100 M€ and a 50% lower cryomodule operational cost.

An ideal solution would merge approaches 1 to 3. To that end complementary deposition techniques and efforts must be pursued in Europe. For few microns thick films (points 1 and 2) HPCVD, HIPIMS, CVD, etc. techniques are well adapted and have demonstrated high quality superconducting materials (Nb, NbN, Nb_3Sn, MgB_2, etc.) on coupons scales. For the multilayer approach (point 3) however a nm scale uniformity has to be achieved on complex shaped structures. To reach this goal the use of a deposition technique with demonstrated industry-scale production capability and nm scale conformality and thickness control over arbitrary shapes have to be selected.

Priority should be given to the deposition techniques that can be scaled up to complex geometric shapes such as SRF cavities; i.e. optimized structural, chemical and electrical properties obtained on flat coupons have to be homogeneous and reproducible on a 1.3 GHz cavity shape. Vapor phase (CVD, ALD, PVD), Plasma assisted deposition (HIPIMS, custom DC/AC sputtering) and Electrodeposition are promising methods that meet the complex geometric requirements.

In addition to the mentioned deposition methods and superconducting alloys, the thin film R&D program relies on the success of three key factors common to the three mentioned research thrusts:

1. **Normal metal (Cu and Al) substrates**: the structural and chemical substrate properties are a crucial aspect of thin film deposition with bulk-like superconducting properties. In particular, substrate roughness needs to be reduced well below the film thickness (1–5 microns), and the role of surface chemical properties (oxides, impurities) needs to be better controlled and understood. Investment on seamless cavity fabrication (mechanical, electrodeposited or 3D printing) is needed to reduce the impact of welds on SRF performance. The cavity geometry itself could be design and optimized to facilitate the coating process. Chemical surface treatments such as HF-free

electropolishing, buffered chemical polishing and/or passivation layer deposition are methods of choice that could enable stable Cu surface preparation in one laboratory and deposition in another laboratory. This aspect should reinforce laboratory collaboration and speed up R&D outcomes.

2. **Innovative cooling techniques**: High Tc superconducting thin films will enable higher SRF cavity operation temperature ($\geq 4.2\,$K), and hence will open the way for new conduction cooled accelerating structures using new cooling techniques (cavity wall with integrated liquid He cooling circuit or pulsating heat pipes, etc.) and cooling channels instead of helium tanks. Indeed, one of the major problems is the evacuation of the energy inhomogeneously deposited inside the cavity towards the cold source. Regardless of the superconducting film used, improved heat transfer is essential. It is therefore necessary to offer innovative solutions that use existing and available technologies to ensure optimal heat transfer. Additive manufacturing of metals (Cu and Al alloys or elemental) becomes an option for designing optimized thermal links and structures cooled by cryo-coolers. Several conditions are necessary for this: 1/ materials with optimized thermal conductivity (> superconductors); 2/ increase in heat transfers and Helium consumption by optimizing the exchange links and surfaces; 3/ optimized mechanical properties, both on the material and on the geometry of the cavity; 4/ compatibility with ultra-high vacuum and low surface roughness.
3. **Infrastructures and manpower**: high through-put characterization methods on samples with demonstrated predictive capability for cavities RF performances are an absolute necessity for a successful R&D program prior to cavity scale-up. Besides all the usual structural (diffraction, MEB, TEM, etc.), chemical (Spectroscopy, SIMS, etc.) and electronic (transport) characterization techniques applied to samples, special effort should be dedicated to reinforce means and efforts on the development of Tunneling Spectroscopy, Magnetometry and RF tests on samples with QWR (quarter wave resonators). In a second step, cavity scale-up is mandatory to demonstrate project feasibility. To that end, the SRF community research programs need: 1/ a sufficiently large number of RF cavities (mono-cell and multi-cell for relevant project frequencies) at various frequencies (400 MHz, 600 MHz, 700 MHz, 1.3 GHz); 2/ an RF testing facility dedicated to R&D at cryogenic temperature (down to 1.8 K), that can handle a large spread of frequencies (400 MHz to 6 GHz). This capability should handle 2–3 tests per week at least with in-situ metrology (magnetic field and temperature mapping, X-ray detectors, etc.). In addition, a reinforced International collaboration framework (collaborative agreements) and international student program should be implemented to provide the necessary task force for a competitive and accelerated R&D throughput.

3.5.1.4 Challenges regarding the construction of SRF Couplers

Superconducting cavities cannot be operated without Fundamental Power Couplers (FPC) and High Order Mode (HOM) Couplers. Both types of RF couplers play a fundamental role with respect to R&D objectives for future HEP facilities. Whenever the community invests in better SRF cavities, driven by new challenging beam parameters, the FPCs and HOMCs will also require efforts. Since long, the worldwide expert's community addresses design and technology issues: RF & multipacting simulations, the maximum RF power, the number of couplers per cavity, the choice of ceramic, its surface preparation (e.g. TiOx or TiN layers), possible discoloration, the copper coating of stainless- steel parts (bellows are critical), diagnostics, and last but not least coupler conditioning and testing in dedicated infrastructures. All major laboratories and projects (incl. non-HEP large-scale facilities) have their own FPC and HOMC history, but many problems were and are shared. Key items like the ceramics for the windows (be it disk, cylindrical or coaxial) are of utmost importance, and heat transfer, the suppression of multipacting by coating or DC voltage polarization is to be studied, the qualification for cleanroom handling and cryostat integration are a must. Finally, mass production for large scale facilities requires perfectly qualified vendors who typically have the challenge that almost each project triggers a fabrication re-start after a longer break between projects.

The charge of the RF power coupler community, in view of future large scale HEP (and other e.g.

FEL and ERL) projects is to have sufficiently strong R&D activities and to address technology improvement but also a sustainable production. Expertise in the laboratories can be preserved by addressing identified main potentials of performance improvement, reliability, cost-effectiveness and energy efficiency. Young researchers need to be trained in existing and in some cases also new technical infrastructures. Expertise, knowledge and also infrastructure can be shared for many large-scale projects, the latter of course to be evaluated on a case to case basis.

3.5.1.5 Application of high gradient SRF technology for muon accelerators

Muon collider studies have only recently re-started and will need high-gradient (> 20 MV/m) multi-cell cavities at low frequencies in the range of 300 to 400 MHz. Look for synergy in SRF technology with already ongoing projects and R&D activities. While it will still take a few years until parameters for potential prototype cavities are defined, the need for SRF infrastructure capable of handling large multi-cell cavities should already be taken into account in the planning for new or upgraded SRF facilities.

3.5.2 NC RF challenges and R&D objectives

3.5.2.1 High frequency NC RF

High gradient acceleration through NC, high frequency structures (S-C-X band) provides at present the highest accelerating fields on a scale suitable for a high energy physics facility like an e^+/ e^- linear collider. In this respect this is the best option as far as the facility compactness is of primary concern. Furthermore, to improve the operational gradients, simplify the construction process of all components, reduce the conditioning time, reduce the cost and delivery time of the RF power sources (klystrons), transfer expertise to industry to allow production of all components over orders of magnitude larger scale are the main challenges for building a HEP facility based on this technology. Gradients at level or in excess of 100 MV/m have been demonstrated in many CLIC-type X-band accelerating sections, even those incorporating HOM dampers. Larger gradients have been demonstrated in tests of prototypes made in hard copper or copper alloys.

However, reaching the highest gradients at an acceptable breakdown rate requires a long-lasting conditioning process, with typical duration of various months. Also, the peak RF power required to reach the highest gradients is substantial, so that it results to be impractical to design a facility where sections are driven close to their physical limits by external RF power plants. In fact, the gradient baseline of all projects based on X-band klystron driving accelerating modules is in the 60–80 MV/m range, well below the demonstrated physical limits that are mostly exploited only in two-beam configuration. To operate sections closer to the present and (hopefully improved) future breakdown limit it is necessary to increase either the available RF peak power in the tubes or the intrinsic efficiency of the sections themselves. Obviously, the second would be preferable for cost and sustainability considerations. Clever design, such as distributed input coupling, or suitable technologies, such as the use of cryogenic copper, dielectrics and maybe even HTS superconductors, are promising roads to be explored in this respect. Cryogenic copper has been mainly tested on C-band so far, showing an efficiency increase allowing in principle to conceive a linear collider based on this technology.

At present, high gradient experimental R&D is carried out in a limited number of test facilities around the world, with a testing capability of few tens of structures per year. The number of the klystrons installed in the test facilities is also limited. Since a HEP infrastructure based on this technology would require a number of RF modules of the order of $> 10^3$, it is clear that scalability in view of mass production and industry involvement are crucial issues to be addressed.

3.5.2.2 Low frequency NC RF in strong magnetic field for muon collider

To date, a muon collider is the only viable solution for a lepton collider with center-of-mass collision energy at the scale of 10 TeV. Muon Accelerator Program (MAP) developed the concept where a short, high-intensity proton bunch hits the target and produces pions. The decay channel guides the pions and collects the muons produced in their decay into a beam. To provide required luminosity several cooling stages then reduce the longitudinal and transverse emittance of the muon beam using a sequence of absorbers and RF cavities in a high magnetic field. The accelerating cavities are key to cooling efficiently with limited loss of muons. They need to operate at frequency range of 300 to 700 MHz and provide a high gradient in a strong magnetic field, up to 30 MV/m in 13 T. It has been shown experimentally at Fermilab's MuCool Test Area that the achievable accelerating gradient in RF cavities based on conventional copper technology is strongly reduced when operating in strong magnetic field which makes the use of cavities limited to low gradient and dramatically reduce the efficiency and increase the size of the muon cooling complex. The main challenges are to show feasibility of stable operation at high gradient in strong magnetic field and to develop practical RF cavities suitable for mass production.

The two approaches have been considered in MAP, high-pressure hydrogen filled cavities and beryllium wall cavities. Although the dedicated test program at MuCool Test Area has demonstrated that both approaches result in cavities operating up to 50 MV/m in 3 T, this remains an unconventional technology with potential risks and hazards. It is necessary to experimentally develop it further before applying it to a muon cooling test facility and ultimately to the muon collider.

This R&D program includes:

- Consolidation of achieved results (50 MV/m) and pushing it to stronger magnetic fields up to 13 T.
- Investigation of other materials (Al, AlBe, CuBe, and other alloys) which may show similar or better performance and are better suited for RF cavity fabrication.
- Investigation of operation parameters including lower, down to cryogenic, temperatures and shorter RF pulse lengths.

To perform this program, a dedicated RF test stand is mandatory. In addition to a MW level peak RF power source, it must have high field ($\sim$10 T) solenoid. After MAP program has been stopped and MuCool Test Area decommissioned no such a test stand is available anywhere in the world. There is a strong and urgent need to build it in the near future to facilitate the development of RF technology for muon cooling.

In addition, synergy with other ongoing high gradient R&D programs should be exploited including for example CLIC study and CERN L4-RFQ spare project where in addition to RF test stands a high voltage DC test setups have become an integral part of the R&D program. It offers fast and cost-effective way to investigate the high gradient properties of many different materials in a large parameter space including operating at cryogenic temperatures.

3.5.2.3 General NC RF studies covering new geometries, breakdown studies, conditioning, dark current modelling and simulations, etc.

Despite its importance to the maximum gradient of an RF structure, breakdown is still poorly understood. For decades it was believed that it was a phenomena entirely down to surface electric field and surface geometry, since 2000 we have known that the magnetic field also plays a role related to pulsed heating but in the past decade there has been a real leap forward in understanding, with models related to mechanical stress leading to tip formation and models involving local power flow and field emitted beam loading coming forward. This is leading to new figures of merit in the design of RF structures and hence new geometries designed to avoid breakdown.

As well as breakdown modelling there has also been recent studies into conditions with the development of statistical conditioning models that can be used to optimize the best routing for conditioning. The long held belief that breakdowns condition a structure has been replaced with a work hardening model based on number of pulses. Studies of the role of dislocation dynamics in breakdown and conditioning is a fast developing field.

While significant progress has been made, full understanding is not complete but is expected to increase significantly over the next 5–10 years.

3.5.2.4 NC RF manufacturing technology

Accelerating structures are made with ultra-precision diamond machining involving tolerances in the µm range and surface roughness in the range of 1/10 to 1/100 of a micrometer. Subsequent bonding and brazing operations need to be carried out in an inert atmosphere to avoid surface pollution. Several months of conditioning is needed per structure to reduce the break-down limits. For large facilities like CLIC, the production cycle needs to be simplified and the reliability of the assembly of full modules with damping, absorbers and wakefield monitors needs to be improved, while the quality of the assembled structures needs to be maintained or even improved. At present, structures are measured and tuned by hand, which is a time-consuming process not applicable to large-scale fabrication. State of the art: gradients of 100–120 MV/m have been achieved in modules that often require repeated mechanical corrections in order to be qualified.

Performance improvement

For industrialisation, vacuum brazing needs has already been applied at some labs and needs to be studied further. The production of two halves with subsequent EBW has been tested once and promises to reduce the production and conditioning time. The use of hard copper and of rectangular integrated discs deserves further R&D.

Technical infrastructure

High precision milling, vacuum brazing, ultra-precision metrology are available at various suppliers but the knowledge of using this infrastructure efficiently often hinges on a few technical experts, which quickly disperse in case of longer production breaks. It is important to keep this expertise at least in a few laboratories. Structure assembly and handling may profit from chemistry, procedures and clean-room environments as used for SRF cavities. This approach should be studied further.

3.5.2.5 MM-wave & Higher frequency structures

MM-wave and THz acceleration is a growing area of research worldwide. As part of the compact light programme Lancaster, CERN, INFN and Strathclyde have developed a novel Ka-band travelling and standing wave structures. While initially aimed at an intermediate gradient lineariser system, there is scope for such technology to operate at higher gradients that X-band technology.

Main challenges and requirements for HEP facilities

With the higher frequencies come smaller apertures making transverse dynamics and short-range wakefield much more challenging. To be useful for HEP we must be able to transport higher charges with less drift-space taken up by focussing systems. As the wavelength is also smaller it takes electrons several ten's of mm-wave periods to become relativistic making longitudinal dynamics more complex similar to proton linacs. In the long term mass production of high frequency structures needs to be developed to minimise the cost.

MM-wave accelerators are useful as short bunch injectors, where the small period allows tight bunching, linearisers as part of a bunch compressor, short pulse diagnostics or as main accelerators. For a main accelerator the advantage is the higher gradients (200 MV/m or more) possible due to the operation at higher frequencies and shorter filling times, allowing shorter accelerators. However, the beam dynamics issues would have to be overcome to allow either higher bunch charges ($\sim$nC) or to higher repetition rates (10 kHz or more).

State of the art and performance improvement

At Ka-band, a design was developed for Compactlight that used a 3 MW RF source to drive a 30 cm TWS at 38 MV/m, while previous studies at CERN used a two-beam accelerator to demonstrate gradients of 152 MV/m for an 8 ns pulse. At higher frequencies 100–300 GHz high gradients have been demonstrated with wakefield driven structures a maximum gradient of 400 MV/m has been demonstrated and electrons accelerated by up to 200 keV while Gyrotron driven structures have achieved 150 MV/m, however 3 MW laser-based sources are now available allowing gradients in excess of this. The bunch charges are typical ten's of pC.

At 100–300 GHz the first challenge is to demonstrate > 100 MV/m gradients and acceleration of 1 MeV, this should be accessible with current technology. Little research has been done on beam transport between accelerating stages, and longitudinal dynamics in the injection stage and this should allow the development of full linac's. The shorter filling times could offer improved energy efficiency of future accelerators as you waste less energy filling the structure, however this would need the development of more efficient mm-wave sources.

Technical infrastructures

MM-wave accelerators can currently be tested at the CLARA accelerator for fully relativistic beams but beam time is currently limited. At lower energy 100 keV level DC guns and THz driven guns exist in DESY, and Cockcroft.

3.5.3 High RF power and LLRF: challenges and R&D objectives

3.5.3.1 High-efficiency klystrons & solid-state amplifiers

Main challenges

High gradients of NC structures reduce the footprint of the accelerator, but increase the RF power requirements quadratically, leading to klystrons with up to 50 MW peak power, which are already being employed. CLIC uses the two beam schemes, which effectively reduces the peak power but requires two accelerators for one physics beam. Even if larger gradients become possible in the future, they may not be usable because the RF sources become prohibitively expensive. Higher efficiency tubes can reduce the voltage of the modulators, reduce the size of the RF stations, and provide higher output power. For CW or long-pulse acceleration mostly superconducting cavities are used with gradients up to around 30 MV/m already in operation. Here it is not so much the peak power but the average power, which determines the cost and size of RF power sources. Solid state gained ground in recent years but the volume, overall efficiency, power combination techniques and reliability can pose a challenge.

Main requirements for HEP facilities

Efficient high peak power in the X-band range is needed for NC accelerators, while efficient high average power devices up to $\sim$2 GHz are typically needed for SC accelerators. The first requirement is unique to HEP facilities and some medical applications, light sources, and screening technologies, which means that the market is very small. With the broadcasting industry moving to smaller power devices in the GHz range, the market for high average power devices is also declining. Muon colliders RF systems are expected to use a large variety of frequencies with high peak power and high efficiency requirements.

State of the art and performance requirements

High efficiency klystrons made important progress in the last five years and successful prototypes showed that the technology works with a frequency coverage from a few 100 MHz to 10s of GHz. Solid state made the step into the MW range with the installation and operation of the CERN SPS solid state plant at 200 MHz, a frequency so far not covered by klystrons. R&D on high-efficiency klystrons needs to continue and several suppliers show interest and are ready to collaborate with laboratories in the production of prototypes. While solid state is set to take over the market of tetrodes for lower frequency high-power RF amplifiers, the technology needs to improve efficiency. The combining networks are of crucial importance as they define the fault tolerance and maintainability. Improved efficiency at the transistor or amplifier module level is expected to be driven by industry. Combining networks or combining cavities, reliable operation, packing factor and overall efficiency are areas, where laboratories can contribute R&D.

Technical infrastructures

Testing RF power stations with peak power in the range of several 10s of MWs, as well as CW power stations in the MW range need significant infrastructure, which is often not available at the manufacturer. Larger industrial productions will likely need lab-based test stations in order to keep down the cost. Prototyping of solid state combining technologies and the development of high-efficiency klystrons in the labs are vital to enable industrial production, and to moderate the cost of the production of high-power RF systems in industry.

3.5.3.2 MM-wave & gyro-devices

Gyro-devices are capable of delivering high powers at significantly higher frequencies so are critical for mm-wave linac development. At the boundary between RF and Mm-wave at Ka-band there is scope for both klystron and gyrotron based sources. As part of the compact light programme Lancaster, CERN, INFN and Strathclyde have developed a novel Ka-band (36 GHz) RF system including the development of Ka-band RF sources. A key issue is the shortage of high power RF sources, where klystron and gyro-klystron devices are being developed.

Main challenges and requirements for HEP facilities

The main challenges are the development of high power, high efficiency short pulse mm-wave sources, and the beam dynamics (both transverse and longitudinal). Currently the power available in short pulses is ten's of kW, while MW are required for HEP applications. MW level sources do exist but tend to be long pulse. Both laser-laser based and electron-beam based sources are under development with two 3 MW 36 GHz sources designed already. Laser-based sources can deliver GV/m fields in free space with instantaneous powers of a up to 30 MW but in very short picosecond pulses that are difficult to synchronise but have had little development so far.

State of the art and performance improvement

At Ka-band, a design was developed for Compactlight that used a 3 MW RF source to drive a 30 cm TWS at 38 MV/m), while previous studies at CERN used a two-beam accelerator to demonstrate gradients of 152 MV/m for an 8 ns pulse. At higher frequencies 100–300 GHz high gradients have been demonstrated with wakefield driven structures a maximum gradient of 400 MV/m has been demonstrated and electrons accelerated by up to 200 keV while Gyrotron driven structures have achieved 150 MV/m, however 3 MW laser-based sources are now available allowing gradients in excess of this. The bunch charges are typical ten's of pC.

At Ka-band, the 3 MW sources should be build and proven to work. Coaxial Gyro-Klystrons offer the potential of 10 MW sources in the future. At present laser-based sources are well suited to very short pulses, and low rep-rates, while electron beam based sources such as gyro devices tend to be long pulse and high rep-rate but neither currently deliver the intermediate length pulses required here.

3.5.3.3 Technologies to reduce RF power needs for acceleration

The frequency control of high-Q superconducting cavities is an area for power savings that has further potential. Two areas are of particular interest: very low beam loading, and operation with rapidly changing beam currents.

Low beam loading case

Low beam loading results in a very small intrinsic cavity bandwidth down to a few Hz or a few 10s of Hz. Keeping the frequency of the cavities controlled to such a level is challenging due to small vibrations, coming from cryogenics, the vacuum system or other external sources. Therefore the fundamental power coupler (FPC) is usually over-coupled, resulting in a larger bandwidth of the cavity-coupler system. However, in doing so the power needs are often increased tenfold with respect to the power needed for acceleration and surface losses of the cavities. Correcting the cavity frequency fast enough to compensate microphonics has the potential reduce the power needs for low-beam loading machines by up to a factor of 10 (e.g. LHeC, PERLE, HIE-ISOLDE, etc.).

High beam loading case

For high beam loading cavities with rapidly changing currents such as the LHC cavities (e.g. at injection), the cavity frequency is usually adjusted to be optimum for either the full beam current or 50% of the beam current (half-detuning scheme) in order to optimize peak power needed from the RF system. Changing the cavity tune during the transients (no beam to full beam) could significantly reduce the peak power needs. In the case of HL-LHC the peak power needs during injection could be reduced by 50% or more.

Technology for rapid cavity tuning

With the rise of purpose-designed low-loss ceramics it became possible to design tuning devices for SC cavities that do not rely on mechanical deformation. Instead a fraction of the stored RF power is coupled out, send through a Ferro-Electric Fast Reactive Tuner (FE-FRT), which shifts the phase as a function of externally applied voltage. The electromagnetic wave is then reflected back into the cavity, thereby changing its frequency. The proof-of-principle has been done and R&D for a full-scale tuning device, applicable to the LHC has started. Further work for ERLs and future circular colliders should follow.

3.5.3.4 LLRF

Today's LLRF & controls infrastructure (electronics & software) is mostly developed within the different laboratories for highly specific machine requirements. This means that each lab is putting aside resources for its own design and development of electronic cards, firmware and software, which are not exchangeable. In recent years some laboratories started using Commercial Off The Shelf (COTS) components in order to reduce their in-house electronics effort and in order to standardise their equipment. This development must be encouraged so that existing resources can be used towards higher-performance software (e.g. machine learning) instead of machine-specific hardware.

Main challenges and requirements for HEP facilities

- High-current colliders: minimizing RF power through more advanced algorithms for beam loading compensation. Development of very low-noise demodulators/modulators.
- Very large machines: instantaneous signal transmission to a large number of distant RF stations.
- Standardisation/compatibility: development of standard electronics modules (ideally COTS), which will enable standardised firmware and software blocks that can be exchanged between labs.
- Archiving: maintenance of growing firmware and software libraries for existing machines such that ageing software can still be edited and deployed on newly made spares.

State of the art and performance improvement

- Use of deterministic links (such as White Rabbit, Update Link, etc.) for synchronizing several RF stations and injectors has been proven to be effective and should be developed further.
- More structured design methodologies can save programming time, ease archiving, and make code blocks more exchangeable between different labs.
- System on chip: the combination of FPGAs with DSPs and even with ADCs can drastically reduce the manpower effort: all communication between these different elements needs to be defined and programmed today, while system-on-chip architectures would make this effort obsolete.
- Development and deployment of new platforms such as uTCA, ATCA, etc. together with industry and in coordination with other laboratories to enable the use of advanced algorithms.

Technical infrastructures

- A centralised and powerful synthesis machine for all firmware developments and archives should be available in each lab.
- Test infrastructures for COTS components.
- Tools for code testing and development. Tools for simulation of entire FPGA design.

3.5.3.5 Artificial Intelligence (AI) and machine learning

Machine learning is being developed in several labs for use in RF conditioning and operation of accelerators. This involves a computer algorithm being trained to identify the difference between a good RF pulse, a bad RF pulse and anomalies. The algorithm then constantly analyses RF traces and characterising them. This can be used to identify advance triggers or warnings of failures or real-time detection in order to take corrective actions. This is a new field but expertise exists in many labs like CERN, STFC and JLab.

Main challenges and requirements for HEP facilities

Predicting and avoiding SRF and RF faults, initial studies suggest this is possible, but it's a new field. Typical expected gain could be the minimisation of field emission, arcs and trips of RF systems. In some cases, the time window between fault prediction and the fault may be short, so we need considerations of what targeted mitigations are possible (such as turning cavity voltages down temporarily for instance).

To make progress in this field, there is a need to access large volumes of the right data recorded at the right time to train the algorithm. This requires a fundamental shift in how accelerators take data and make them available for machine learning.

State of the art and performance improvement

Currently studies are performed in retrospect analysing past data. On tests the breakdowns can be predicted a little before it happens but work is required to assess if that's an artifact of the data. Work has also been done on fault classification and this has been very successful separating normal pulses from arcs in different components, outgassing, multipactor, abnormal klystron pulses, etc. The algorithms were able to find rare breakdown events in the decay of the pulse that were being missed in traditional detection methods.

3.6 Delivery plan

In order to address the R&D objectives depicted in the previous chapter, the panel has defined corresponding work programs for each of the topic and sub-topic. In the large majority cases, three different investment (budget, allocated FTEy) scenario are proposed:

- The nominal plan is roughly based on the actual effort of European labs in generic R&D dedicated to RF acceleration in terms of allocated FTEy and budget.
- The minimal scenario is obtained either by a reduced ambition in some programs or by putting priorities between programs and then remove the one with the lowest priority.
- The aspirational scenario is the full sum of all programs, but with reasonable or affordable ambition: in any case, for a short to medium term plan, FTEs just cannot be infinitively multiplied because these R&D plans required already trained and skilled people.

The proposed plan is addressing generic R&D program for RF acceleration. The corresponding estimated costs is the required budget to develop technologies and solutions that could be later on adapted to the targeted HEP projects that could benefit from the scientific and technological outcome. The required budget for the specific adaptation or optimization for a given facility is not accounted here, as we consider it as direct project funding.

The Generic R&D budget is to support development of new concepts, new ideas and to prove its feasibility. The complete demonstration of the operational performances for a given objective (project) could sometimes only be performed on a full scale prototype (for instance a full cryomodule). This development phase should be also funded directly by the projects and are not accounted in our estimates.

Infrastructure and equipment costs: when we analyzed that a specific equipment was globally missing in our European labs, its cost has been integrated in the program. But we considered that the existing infrastructure are already supported in terms of operation and maintenance, so the corresponding costs and also some FTEs (operators) are not integrated in the presented program budget.

3.6.1 Superconducting RF

3.6.1.1 Bulk Niobium and the path towards high quality factors at high gradients

1. **Push forward the development and validation of large/medium grain material.**
   (a) Milestones at 5 years:
      i. Operational CW cryomodule at gradients > 20 MV/m.
      ii. Develop new vendors of LG/MG ingots to allow mass production.
   (b) Milestone at 10 years: scale to lower frequencies than 1.3 GHz (larger cavities).
2. **Continue R&D on vacuum heat treatment and doping.**
   (a) Milestones at 5 years:
      i. Push further investigation of the so-called mid-T baking (300–600°C) and doping.
      ii. Fine tuning of parameters of advanced heat treatments as mid-T baking, doping, etc.
      iii. Demonstrate improvements and applicability of these advanced heat treatment for other frequencies than 1.3 GHz.
   (b) Milestone at 10 years: apply advanced heat treatments as standard treatment for new accelerator projects.
3. **Improvement of surface polishing and characterization techniques: standard techniques (EP, BCP) and developing new techniques (EPP, MP, etc.).**
   (a) Milestones at 5 years:
      i. Develop new infrastructures for large cavities (multicells, low beta, etc.): extra-cold EP, rotational BCP.

   ii. Investigate and identify new polishing techniques compatible with SRF requirements and industrialization.

  (b) Milestone at 10 years: new and advanced polishing techniques mature for new accelerator projects.

Table 3.1: Costing scenarios for bulk niobium R&D.

Scenario	Minimal	Nominal	Aspirational
Scope	reduced (1&2)	full (1&2&3)	full (1&2&3)
Cost for 5 years[a]	3 MCHF	4 MCHF	6 MCHF
FTEy for 5 years[b]	60	75	100

[a] Includes dedicated and specific facilities for R&D needs, prototypes, consumables. Does not include cost of standard SRF infrastructures required for cavity test (clean rooms, etching labs, vacuum furnace, cryostats, cryogenics, etc.).

[b] Includes dedicated R&D FTE. Does not include FTE required to operate standard SRF facilities.

3.6.1.2 *Field emission reduction is a must for all accelerators*

1. **Develop robotization/cobotization (human-robot collaboration) for surface processing/cleaning of SRF components.**
   (a) Milestone at 5 years: operational robot in clean rooms and demonstrate improved cleanliness.
   (b) Milestone at 10 years: apply as standard for new accelerator projects.
2. **Pursue R&D effort on particle counting in clean room and X-rays diagnostics capabilities.**
   (a) Milestone at 5 years: show improved efficiency and yield of surface preparation.
   (b) Milestone at 10 years: apply as standard diagnostics for new accelerator projects.
3. **Intensify R&D on field emission mitigation/in-situ recovery techniques (dry-ice, plasma).**
   (a) Milestone at 5 years: deployment and show efficiency of these techniques for accelerator in operation.
   (b) Milestone at 10 years: apply as standard pre-treatment or recovery treatment for new accelerator projects.

Table 3.2: Costing scenarios for field emission reduction R&D.

Scenario	Minimal	Nominal	Aspirational
Scope	reduced (1&2)	full (1&2&3)	full (1&2&3)
Cost for 5 years	3 MCHF	4 MCHF	5 MCHF
FTEy for 5 years	30	40	50

3.6.1.3 *Thin superconducting films for superconducting radiofrequency cavities*

The thin films research and development efforts in Europe should pursue three main goals with the following roadmap and milestones:

1. **Continue R&D Niobium on Cu—construction cost saving and securing supply:** fabrication cost reduction for cavity fabrication with frequencies < 700 MHz. The goal is to reach RF perfor-

mances (Q and E_{max}) similar to bulk niobium. As a standard for the ongoing R&D efforts, 1.3 GHz cavities will be used with performance targets of $Q = 10^{10}$ at 20 MV/m, followed by $Q = 10^{10}$ at 30 MV/m. In parallel, high performance will be established on lower frequency cavities (400 MHz to 800 MHz) and multicellular cavities in order to demonstrate the performances potential for HEP projects based on low frequency cavities (ERL, FCC).

   (a) Milestone at 5 years: reach bulk niobium performances on 1.3–0.4 GHz elliptical and various cavity shapes (WOW, SWELL).
   (b) Milestone at 10 years: scale up process to multicellular cavities (1.3–0.6 GHz).

2. **Intensify R&D of new superconductors on Cu—**4.2 K **operational cost saving:** operation cost reduction (higher operation temperature > 4.2 K). Such superconductors are selected A15 compounds (Nb_3Sn, Nb_3Al, V_3Si) and MgB_2. Proof of principle has been achieved with Nb_3Sn on niobium cavities, the goal is now to achieve the same performance on Cu cavities at 1.3 GHz: $Q = 10^{10}$ at 15–18 MV/m and 4.2 K. Scaling to lower frequencies (600 MHz) cavities will also be investigated to cope with the need of ERLs and FCC.
   (a) Milestones at 5 years:
      i. A15 (Nb_3Sn, V_3Si, etc.): reach same performance as Nb_3Sn on Nb at 4.2 K on several cavity geometry (1.3–0.6 GHz).
      ii. MgB_2: feasibility (critical temperature > 30 K) on 1.3 GHz cavity.
      iii. Study the influence of mechanical deformations and induced strain ($\sim$0.1 %) of cavities on the RF performances of A15 and MgB_2 alloys.
   (b) Milestones at 10 years:
      i. A15: reach same performances at 4.2 K as bulk Nb at 2 K, scale to other frequencies (elliptical) and investigate the potential for multicell cavities.
      ii. MgB_2: reach same performances at 4.2 K as bulk Nb at 2 K.
3. **Pursue Multilayers—push for high gradient:** operation and construction cost reduction by increasing the maximum accelerating gradient and the quality factor. The goal is to demonstrate improved performance on a 1.3 GHz superconducting RF cavity, i.e. 30–50% increase in the maximum accelerating field and a factor of two in Q_0.
   (a) Milestone at 5 years: demonstrate increased acceleration on 1.3 GHz bulk Nb and thin film Nb/Cu 1.3 GHz elliptical cavity.
   (b) Milestone at 10 years: scale up to various cavity shapes and multicell elliptical cavities.

Table 3.3: Costing scenarios for thin superconducting films R&D.

Scenario	Minimal	Nominal	Aspirational
Scope	reduced (1&2) 2–3 years slower than aspirational scenario	full (1&2&3) 2–3 years slower than aspirational scenario	full (1&2&3)
Cost for 5 years	10 MCHF	15 MCHF	30 MCHF (25+5 for cavity-scale coating facilities)
FTEy for 5 years	40	100	140

In addition to the mentioned deposition methods and superconducting alloys, the thin film R&D program relies on the success of three key factors common to the three mentioned research thrusts:

4. **Intensify Cu cavity production and surface preparation.**

   (a) Milestones at 5 years:
      i. Seamless elliptical Cu substrates (mechanical or electro-deposited) starting at 1300 MHz down to 400 MHz.
      ii. Optimize air stable chemistries (EP-BCP/without liquid waste, heat treatment, passivation layers, etc.) for Cu surface preparation.
   (b) Milestones at 10 years: Scale up processes to multicell cavities (1.3 GHz).

5. **Develop 3D printing and Innovative cooling techniques.**
   (a) Milestones at 5 years:
      i. Develop proper substrate Cu/Al alloys (monocellular cavity 3.9 and 1.3 GHz) for thin films deposition with optimized density (> 99.8%), cooling power and mechanical response (similar to Nb at 4.2 K).
      ii. Demonstrate substrate (cavities) surface roughness $\leq 1\,\mu m$.
      iii. Demonstrate conduction cooled cavities with a selected and optimized innovative heat links and a cryocooler.
   (b) Milestones at 10 years: deposition of thin superconducting films.
      i. Demonstrate bulk Nb performances with thin Nb film on 3D printed/electro-deposited cavity at 4.2 K.
      ii. Demonstrate bulk Nb performances with new superconductors (A15, MgB_2) film on 3D printed/electro-deposited cavity at 4.2 K.
      iii. Develop proper substrate multicell cavities.

6. **Infrastructures and manpower - High throughput testing.**
   (a) Milestones at 5 years:
      i. Dedicated building with thin film specific state of the art infrastructures (clean rooms, chemistry, rinsing/washing, assembly).
      ii. Improved surface characterization methods (spectroscopy, QPR) and cold test diagnostics (temperature mapping on Cu, automated optical inspection, etc.).
      iii. Reinforced International Student and collaboration effort program.
   (b) Milestone at 5 years: high throughput RF testing facility to establish repeatable & reliable performance needed in preparation of series production.

Table 3.4: Costing scenarios for key technologies.

Scenario	Minimal	Nominal	Aspirational
Scope	reduced (4)	reduced (4&5)	full (4&5&6)
Cost for 5 years	2 MCHF	5 MCHF	30 (8+20+2) MCHF[a]
FTEy for 5 years	10	15	55 (25+25+5)[a]

[a] Includes 20 MCHF + 25 FTEy for R&D dedicated cavity-scale testing facility and 2 MCHF for green laser 3D printing machine + 5 FTEy.

3.7 Facilities, demonstrators and infrastructure

3.8 Collaboration and organisation

4 High-gradient Plasma and Laser Accelerators

Editors: R. Assmann[a,b]*, E. Gschwendtner*[c]*, R. Ischebeck*[d]

Panel members: R. Assmann[a,b,*] *(Chair), E. Gschwendtner*[c] *(Co-Chair), K. Cassou*[e]*, S. Corde*[f]*, L. Corner*[g]*, B. Cros*[h]*, M. Ferrario*[b]*, S. Hooker*[i]*, R. Ischebeck*[d]*, A. Latina*[c]*, O. Lundh*[j]*, P. Muggli*[k]*, P. Nghiem*[l]*, J. Osterhoff*[a]*, T. Raubenheimer*[m]*, A. Specka*[n]*, J. Vieira*[o]*, M. Wing*[p]

Associated members: C. Geddes[q]*, M. Hogan*[m]*, W. Lu*[r]*, P. Musumeci*[s]

[a]DESY, Hamburg, Germany
[b]LNF/INFN, Frascati, Italy
[c]CERN, Geneva, Switzerland
[d]PSI, Villigen, Switzerland
[e]IJCLab, Orsay, France
[f]IP Paris, Palaiseau, France
[g]Liverpool University, UK
[h]LPGP-CNRS-Université Paris Saclay, Orsay, France
[i]Oxford University, UK
[j]Lund University, Sweden
[k]MPI Physics, Munich, Germany
[l]CEA, Saclay, France
[m]SLAC and Stanford University, California, USA
[n]LLR, Palaiseau, France
[o]IST, Lisbon, Portugal
[p]UCL, London, United Kingdom
[q]LBNL, Berkeley, California, USA
[r]Tsinghua University, Beijing, China
[s]UCLA, Los Angeles, California, USA

4.1 Executive Summary

Plasma and laser accelerators have demonstrated acceleration of electrons and positrons with very high accelerating gradients of 1 to >100 GeV/m. This is about 10 to 1000 times higher than achieved in RF accelerators, and as such they have the potential to overcome limitations that affect RF accelerators. They have produced multi-GeV bunches with single parameters approaching those suitable for a linear collider. A significant reduction in size and, perhaps, cost of future accelerators can therefore in principle be envisaged. Based on the various R&D achievements, the field has reached the stage of setting up first user facilities for photon and material science in the European research landscape. The many national and regional activities will continue through the end of the 2020s with a strong R&D and construction program, aiming at low energy research infrastructures, for example to drive a free electron laser (FEL) or ultrafast electron diffraction (UED). Various important milestones have been – and will continue to be – achieved in internationally leading programs at CERN, CLARA, CNRS, DESY, ELI, EuPRAXIA,

---

[*] ralph.assmann@desy.de

This contribution should be cited as: High-gradient Plasma and Laser Accelerators, DOI: 10.23731/CYRM-2021-XXX.77, in: European Strategy for Particle Physics - Accelerator R&D Roadmap, Ed. N. Mounet,
CERN Yellow Reports: Monographs, CERN-2021-XXX, DOI: 10.23731/CYRM-2021-XXX, p. 77.

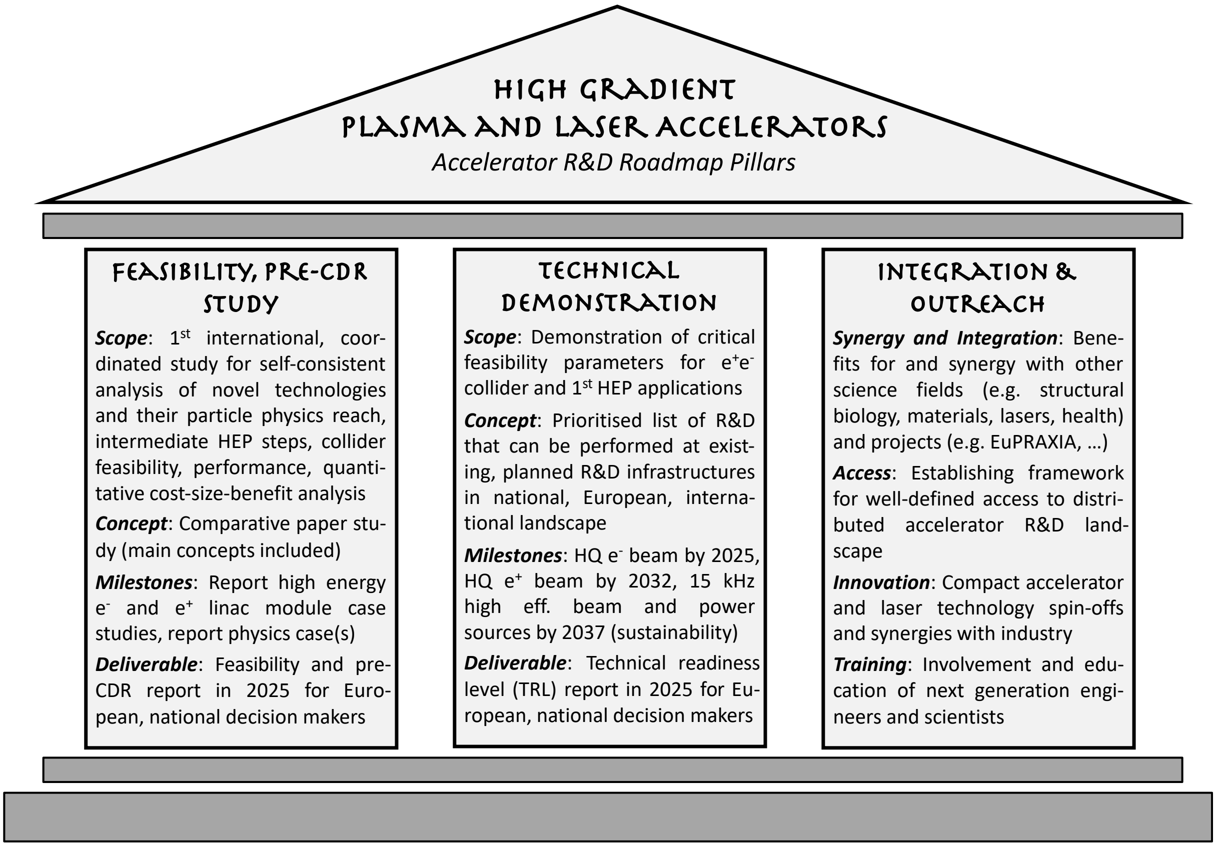
Helmholtz, INFN, LBNL, RAL, Shanghai XFEL, SLAC, Tsinghua University and others. This work should be complemented by early HEP-targeted tests and R&D activities. Given that funding for ongoing activities is mostly from non-HEP sources, several HEP-related aspects are currently not prioritised, for example: staging to high energy; emittance preservation; efficiency; acceleration of positron bunches and beam polarisation.

The Panel makes the following general assessment: Advanced accelerators have made important progress in demonstrating key aspects of plasma and dielectric accelerators, in particular in terms of energy and quality of the accelerated bunch from laser/electron/proton driven accelerators. At the same time, rapid progress in underlying technologies, e.g. lasers, feedback systems, nano-control, manufacturing, etc. has also been made. Various roadmaps have been developed in the EU (EuroNNAc), the US (DOE) and world-wide (ALEGRO), defining R&D needs for a collider at the end of the 2040s. These roadmaps call for additional funding for HEP-oriented R&D in novel accelerators. The feasibility of a collider based on these advanced accelerator schemes remains to be proven. Key challenges in front of us to reach the high energy frontier include a scheme for positron bunch acceleration in plasma, that still needs to be demonstrated on paper. Also, sufficiently high bunch charge for reaching the luminosity goal remains to be achieved. Emittance preservation at the nanometer scale and large overall efficiencies need to be developed. Staging designs of multiple structures with high energy gain and all optical elements remain to be demonstrated, including tolerances, length and cost scaling. High repetition rate and associated power-handling and efficiency issues need to be investigated in detail for luminosity reach in a possible collider.

The panel proposes an R&D roadmap on plasma and laser accelerators that should be implemented and delivered in a three-pillar approach (Figure 4.1). A feasibility and pre-CDR study forms the first pillar and will investigate the potential and performance reach of plasma and laser accelerators for particle physics. In addition a realistic cost-size-benefit analysis is included and will be performed in a comparative approach for different technologies. A second pillar relies on technical demonstrations in particle physics aimed experiments. A third pillar connects the work on novel accelerators to other science fields and to other applications. The proposed delivery plan for the required R&D work defines a minimal plan. The minimal plan executes work in seven work packages and will provide nine deliverables by the end of 2025. Among those deliverables are an integrated feasibility study and four experimental demonstrations. Required additional resources amount to needed funding for 147 FTE-years and 3.15 MCHF of investment. Additional in-kind contributions will be provided and have been specified. The minimal plan connects work and particle physics relevant milestones in 12 ongoing projects and facilities, all listed in the report. Beyond the minimal plan, the expert panel has bundled four additional high priority R&D activities into an aspirational plan. The aspirational plan will develop a scalable plasma source, towards longer acceleration lengths as a path to high beam energy and first particle physics experiments. It will put into place a focused R&D effort on electron bunches with high charge and high quality, as well as developing a low emittance electron source and a high repetition rate laser. The aspiriational plan would require additional resources for 147 FTE-years and 35.5 MCHF investment, beyond the minimal plan. We provide suggestions on organizational aspects in this report. Work package leaders and institutional participation shall be determined in a project setup phase. We note that the implementation of the proposed research requires an adequate a critical mass of experts, as well as experimental and computational facilities. These have been considered in the present proposal, and their availability for the programme is ensured.

4.2 Introductory Material

RF accelerator technology has been a major success story over the past 90 years, enabling the development of complex large-scale machines and applications in a variety of fields from high-energy physics and photon science to medical technologies and industrial tools. With more than 30 000 accelerators in use, accelerator-based technologies have been established as essential instruments all over the world



HIGH GRADIENT
PLASMA AND LASER ACCELERATORS
Accelerator R&D Roadmap Pillars

FEASIBILITY, PRE-CDR STUDY

Scope: 1st international, coordinated study for self-consistent analysis of novel technologies and their particle physics reach, intermediate HEP steps, collider feasibility, performance, quantitative cost-size-benefit analysis

Concept: Comparative paper study (main concepts included)

Milestones: Report high energy e^- and e^+ linac module case studies, report physics case(s)

Deliverable: Feasibility and pre-CDR report in 2025 for European, national decision makers

TECHNICAL DEMONSTRATION

Scope: Demonstration of critical feasibility parameters for e^+e^- collider and 1st HEP applications

Concept: Prioritised list of R&D that can be performed at existing, planned R&D infrastructures in national, European, international landscape

Milestones: HQ e^- beam by 2025, HQ e^+ beam by 2032, 15 kHz high eff. beam and power sources by 2037 (sustainability)

Deliverable: Technical readiness level (TRL) report in 2025 for European, national decision makers

INTEGRATION & OUTREACH

Synergy and Integration: Benefits for and synergy with other science fields (e.g. structural biology, materials, lasers, health) and projects (e.g. EuPRAXIA, …)

Access: Establishing framework for well-defined access to distributed accelerator R&D landscape

Innovation: Compact accelerator and laser technology spin-offs and synergies with industry

Training: Involvement and education of next generation engineers and scientists

Fig. 4.1: Visualization of the three pillars that are proposed to form the accelerator R&D roadmap for plasma and laser accelerators.

today and will continue to play important roles in the future. The recently published 2020 Update for the European Strategy for Particle Physics by the European Strategy Group proposes clear challenges and development goals for the near- and long-term future of accelerators in particle physics. It emphasises in particular the importance of innovation in accelerator technology, listing it as "a powerful driver for many accelerator-based fields of science and industry" with "technologies under consideration includ[ing] high-field magnets, high-temperature superconductors, plasma wakefield acceleration and other high-gradient accelerating structures". It points out the need to define "deliverables for this decade [. . .] in a timely fashion".

Novel high-gradient accelerator technologies, as mentioned in the strategy and as addressed here, replace the metallic walls of established RF accelerators by dielectric walls (dielectric laser accelerators) or by dynamic plasma structures (plasma accelerators). The principle of a dynamic plasma accelerator structure is visualised in Figure 4.2. Relying on dielectric or plasma structures, the severe high field limits of metallic RF structures are overcome and accelerating fields can be increased by a factor 10 to 1 000. The required acceleration length is therefore drastically reduced and highly compact and more cost-effective research facilities and colliders can be envisaged in principle (see also Figures 4.3, 4.5 and 4.8). Plasma and dielectric accelerators develop an alternative path to future collider projects that fully rely on RF technology and reach higher beam energy with a strong increase in facility size and cost.

The availability of lasers based on Ti:Sapphire and chirped-pulse amplification (delivering few-femtosecond-long pulses with more than 100 TW of power) have made it possible to drive accelerating fields exceeding 100 GV/m in plasma. Recently, an energy gain of 8 GeV in only 20 cm of plasma was measured [1]. At the same time, linacs based on plasma accelerators delivering dense relativistic

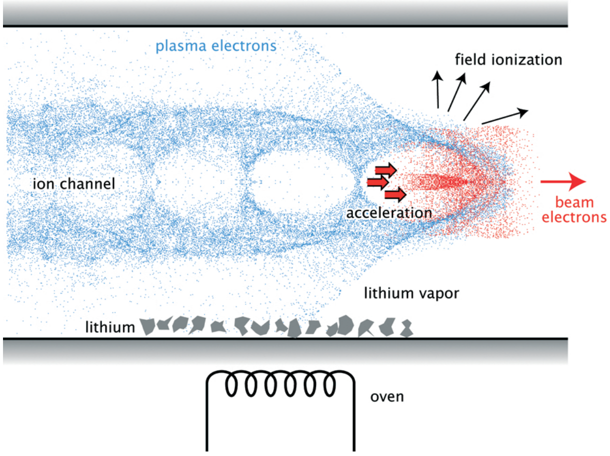


Fig. 4.2: Illustration of a dynamic accelerating structure that has been formed inside a plasma by a preceding driver pulse (here a short electron beam pulse). *Image credit: SLAC, R. Ischebeck*

electron bunches are being used to drive X-ray free-electron lasers (XFELs). Driven by this technology, a record energy gain of 42 GeV in only 85 cm of plasma was measured [2]. Proton bunches were used to accelerate electrons in plasma by 2 GeV [3]. Thus, the promise of high accelerating field (>10 GV/m) and large energy gain ($\gg$1 GeV) from novel accelerators has been demonstrated, as required for collider stages. Important progress in beam quality (low energy spread, small emittance, etc.) and stability was achieved in a variety of experiments, as recently demonstrated by the first free-electron lasing (FEL) with a beam from a laser-driven plasma accelerator at SIOM [4] and from a beam-driven plasma accelerator at LNF/INFN [5]. The community is pursuing collaborative work in the EU-funded EuroNNAc network [6], in the ALEGRO activity [7], the AWAKE collaboration [8], and in the EuPRAXIA project for a European plasma accelerator facility [9], which was included in the ESFRI roadmap in 2021.

In parallel, micrometer-size, periodic dielectric structures powered by laser pulses and THz have also demonstrated acceleration in GV/m fields [10]. Significant progress in the manufacturing of structures with sub-micrometer accuracy, driven by the semiconductor industry, has enabled the fabrication and experimental verification of dielectric structures for particle acceleration ("accelerator on a chip"). These structures are designed to not only accelerate particles, but also focus the particle bunches longitudinally and transversely [11]. Work has proceeded in an international collaboration ACHIP and in individual efforts on dielectric laser and terahertz acceleration. Such an approach leveraging the international semiconductor and communications industries would provide a truly new approach to reducing the cost per GeV of an accelerator.

Other novel concepts and devices have been developed to complement accelerating structures: Plasma-based electron sources produce bunches suitable to be injected in the accelerating structures, and even polarised electrons; R&D on positron sources is making progress; active and passive plasma lenses help to transport and focus beams; energy de-chirpers reduce energy spread; novel instrumentation has been developed, in part to meet the requirements of the unique bunch properties produced by these sources; for example dielectric structures can act as optical beam position monitors.

Different technological options for high gradient, novel accelerators are being pursued by the community, and these options have reached a different level of maturity. Arguably, the successes in reaching multi-GeV beam energy and demonstrating exponential gain in undator-induced photon emission from both laser-driven and beam-driven plasma wakefield accelerators [4, 5] demonstrate the significant progress in this technology in recent years. Other technological options such as dielectric laser and terahertz accelerators have not reached this level of maturity, and further work is required to demonstrate readiness for first applications.

In plasma, the driver, the witness and the accelerating structure interact self-consistently, a situation that creates unique opportunities for the accelerated bunch parameters, but also challenges for the description and control of the system. The development of plasma and dielectric accelerators relies heavily on computer modeling and simulation. Significant progress has been made in fully-relativistic, electro-magnetic particle-in-cell (PIC) simulations that include 'all' of the known physics. These are critical to the development of new concepts and can be used to develop and test new concepts before the more expensive and time consuming experimental studies. In addition, the development of reduced simulation models can retain most of the physics for designing and optimising systems. Such numerical simulations can be used to train neural networks. These surrogate models run in a fraction of the time and can be used to guide the design and optimization of accelerators [12].

These new types of accelerators produce particle bunches or radiation with unique properties. In particular, operation at high frequencies naturally generates small and short accelerated bunches, natural tools for ultra-fast science with sub-fs resolution. High fields in the particle source ("plasma photo-injector") can generate bunches with very low normalised emittance, reaching into the 10 nm regime and, in principle, enabling ultra small beam size. These unique properties of the accelerated bunches open a wealth of applications for high-gradient plasma and laser accelerators in science and technology, ranging from the direct use of the accelerated electrons for ultra-fast electron diffraction (UED) to medical applications and radiation generation.

Particle physics applications at the energy frontier are some of the most demanding, requiring dedicated R&D efforts, as described below. Some other envisioned particle physics experiments, for example in the search of weakly interacting massive particles, make use of beam parameters that could be more readily achieved with novel accelerating schemes. We detail such possible applications in Section 4.6.3.2.

While rapid progress has been made with advanced and novel accelerator concepts, in their description and understanding, significant challenges remain to make them suitable for particle physics applications. Relevant parameters that were achieved individually (accelerating gradient, energy gain, charge, energy spread, emittance, etc.) must now be achieved together. In general, high-gradient plasma and laser accelerators require staging of multiple accelerating structures to reach the relevant hundreds of GeV to multiple TeV energies. Parameters reached in a single stage must be preserved (emittance, relative energy spread, etc.) or repeated (energy gain, handling of driver and accelerated bunches) from stage to stage. A global concept for a collider, possibly involving different advanced accelerator or conventional accelerator components must be developed. This also includes the particle detector, since beams from plasma and laser accelerators may generate high repetition rate collisions (kHz - MHz). However, at this stage of advanced accelerator development, no roadblock has been identified on the roadmap towards an e^+e^- collider.

This report develops a path to demonstrate the feasibility of a collider, that typically should deliver nC charge inside a bunch for both electrons and positrons, with about 100 nm normalized transverse emittance, at a final energy of TeV or higher and with a repetition rate of 15,000 Hz (parameters here for a plasma based accelerator). The path described in this report includes a feasibility study, mostly theory and simulation driven, plus technical R&D tasks with specific deliverables. The minimal plan aims at demonstrating important achievements by the time of the next European strategy, while the aspiriational plan defines additional longer term R&D objectives. The programs are complemented by work in ongoing projects and facilities that are also described and will demonstrate important additional deliverables. Those ongoing projects include work in the United States and work in other science fields.

4.3 Motivation

Top class accelerator research and development relies on the initiative of outstanding scientists who often develop their ideas first on paper. Those ideas sometimes enable ground-breaking progress in science and society. A particular important example is the invention of stochastic cooling by Simon van der

Fig. 4.3: A plasma cell is shown here in comparison to the super-conducting accelerator FLASH at DESY. *Image credit: DESY, H. Mueller-Elsner*

Meer. This later enabled the construction of the SppS collider and the experimental discovery of the Z and W bosons. Simon van der Meer (together with Carlo Rubbia) received the Nobel prize for Physics in 1984 for his invention. Plasma and dielectric accelerators with their ultra-high gradients offer potential for another step-change in accelerator technology. In the following we introduce the motivation for the corresponding R&D, covering the technology, a potential ultra-compact collider and lower energy particle physics experiments.

4.3.1 Ultra-High Gradient Accelerator Technology for Compact Research Infrastructures

Plasma and laser accelerators have intrigued the accelerator field through their potential for compact research infrastructures. Those infrastructures can be used for particle physics but also for other fields, including for example structural biology, materials, medical applications or even archaeological studies. The ongoing R&D is therefore highly motivated (and financed) by applications with lower beam energies, more easily reached. All ongoing efforts support the development of the generic ultra-high gradient accelerator technology with user quality and reliability. This technology will then be an additional instrument in the toolbox of accelerator scientists. Particle physics developments can build on the ongoing R&D, complementing it with additional research topics that are required for colliders or particle physics experiments. Of particular importance for particle physics, less important at lower energy, are power efficiency and high luminosity (small beam size, high intensity).

4.3.2 Collider Development Roadmap – Project Phases

We note that there have already been various sketches of possible colliders relying on high-gradient plasma and laser accelerators. Those studies are valuable starting points for further design work, but do not include realistic designs of the accelerator layout (including in- and out-coupling of power drivers), nor solutions for multi-stage positron acceleration, or provide performance assessments from start-to-end simulations. The various published sketches provide an understanding of the required parameters for constructing a linear collider at the energy frontier, see Table 4.1. The proposed design work here will include the first ever cost-size-benefit analysis for such an advanced collider based on simulation design work.

The work proposed would be the first step in a long term roadmap that would culminate in a compact collider at earliest towards the end of the 2040s, assuming all previous steps are successful. The long term roadmap is also visualised in Figure 4.4. Steps in the long-term roadmap would include the following:

- **2025** – Feasibility and pre-CDR Report on Advanced Accelerators for Particle Physics. This

Table 4.1: Required parameters for a linear collider with advanced high gradient acceleration. Three published parameter cases are listed. Case 1 (PWFA) is a plasma-based scheme based on SRF electron beam drivers [13]. Case 2 (LWFA) is a plasma-based scheme based on laser drivers [14]. Case 3 (DLA) is a dielectric-based scheme [15]. We note that the studies use different assumptions on emittance and on the final focus system, which explains differences in luminosity per beam power.

Parameter	**Unit**	**PWFA**	**LWFA**	**DLA**
Bunch charge	nC	1.6	0.64	4.8×10^{-6}
Number of bunches per train	-	1	1	159
Repetition rate of train	kHz	15	15	20 000
Convoluted normalised emittance ($\gamma\sqrt{\epsilon_h\epsilon_v}$)	nm-rad	592	100	0.1
Beam power at 5 GeV	kW	120	48	76
Beam power at 190 GeV	kW	4 560	1 824	2 900
Beam power at 1 TeV	kW	24 000	9 600	15 264
Relative energy spread	%	$\leq$0.35		
Polarization	%	80 (for e$^-$)		
Efficiency wall-plug to beam (includes drivers)	%	$\geq$10		
Luminosity regime (simple scaled calculation)	10^{34}cm^{-2}s^{-1}	1.1	1.0	1.9

includes an assessment of Technical Readiness Levels (TRL), taking into account results from technical milestones until 2025.

- **2027** – Definition of physics case and selection of technology base for a Conceptual Design Report (CDR), in accordance with guidance from European Strategy. Update on timeline as required for particle physics and realistically achievable.
- **2031** – Publication of a CDR for a Plasma-Based Particle Physics collider.
- **2032** – Start of Technical Design Report (TDR), prototyping and preparation phase. Eventual start of a dedicated test facility (to be defined in pre-CDR report).
- **2039** – Decision on construction.
- **2040** – Start of advanced collider construction.
- **2046** – Start of advanced collider commissioning.
- **2048** – Start of advanced collider operation for particle physics detectors.

4.3.3 Lower Energy Particle Physics Experiments

The acceleration of electrons to high energies in the 10s to 100s of GeV range opens up the possibility for new particle physics experiments: the search for dark photons, measurement of quantum electrodynamics (QED) in strong fields and high-energy electron–proton collisions. In these experiments the critical parameters are the beam energy and intensity. Generally, the requirements on the beam quality are less stringent when compared to an e^+e^- collider at the energy frontier.

Preliminary studies show that the beam parameters for early particle physics experiments can be produced by novel advanced acceleration schemes. Therefore, plasma and laser accelerators have the potential to support these lower energy particle physics experiments already early on, at the same time covering particle physics goals that are new and unique. In addition, these near-term applications of plasma wakefield accelerators provide the opportunity to demonstrate the viability of this technology.

In the proposed study we will consider the different experimental requirements as well as the optimization of the plasma and laser acceleration technology. The first particle physics experiments

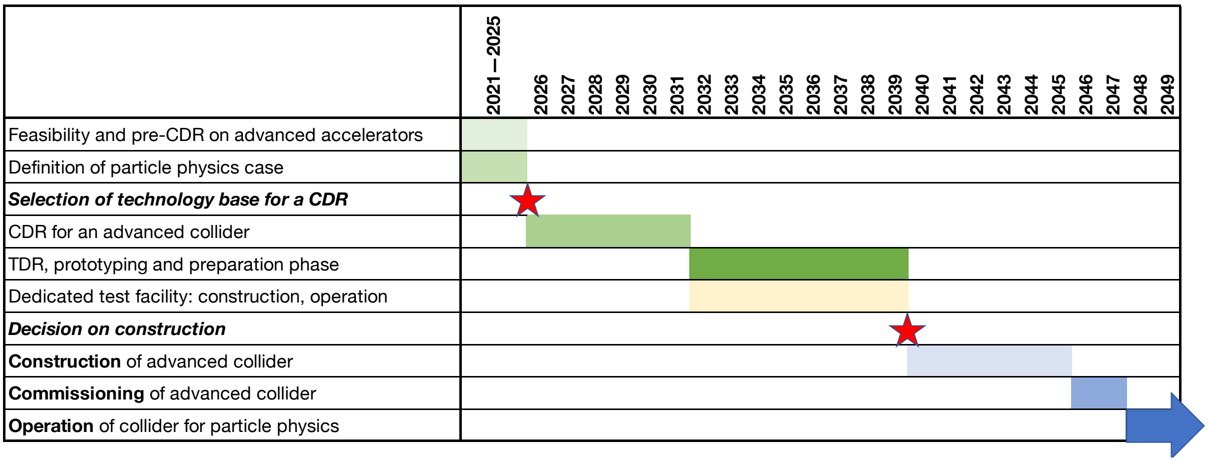


Fig. 4.4: Roadmap towards the development of a collider.

using the plasma or laser acceleration technology appear to be viable within the next 10–15 years.

4.4 Panel Activities

4.4.1 Mandate and scope

The expert panel "High Gradient Acceleration – Plasma, Laser" is charged with defining the roadmap in the area of plasma wakefield and dielectric acceleration. This includes as particular tasks: (1) Develop a long-term roadmap for the next 30 years towards a HEP collider or other HEP applications. (2) Develop milestones for the next ten years taking explicitly into account the plans and needs in related scientific fields, as well as the capabilities and interests of the stakeholders. (3) Establish key R&D needs matched to the existing and planned R&D facilities. (4) Give options and scenarios for European activity level and investment. (5) Define deliverables and required resources for achieving these goals until the next European strategy process in 2025, in order to enable as best as possible critical decisions for R&D lines for HEP.

4.4.2 Activity

The expert panel was formed during February 2021 and had its kick-off meeting on March 2, 2021. An extensive process of consultation with the advanced accelerator community was put in place, steered via twenty-two meetings of the expert panel. The activity was announced world-wide, and experts were invited to subscribe to an email list. By the end of May, 231 experts had registered to this list and were participating in the roadmap process. A first town hall meeting was held on March 30 and set the scene for advanced accelerators for HEP [16]. The meeting included talks on high-energy physics facilities or experiments at the energy frontier (linear collider) and at lower energies (dark matter search, highly non-linear QED, low energy gamma-gamma). HEP-relevant parameter examples and two possible case studies were assembled and distributed. Also, a number of questions were formulated by the panel and sent to the community, together with a request for input. A second [17] and a third [18] town hall meeting were held on May 21 and 31, where in total 48 speakers presented their input to the roadmap process. These meetings were attended by up to 135 participants at a given time. Finally, this strategy was presented at a town hall meeting at the European Advanced Accelerator Concepts Workshop (EAAC) in Frascati [19].

4.4.3 International Activities and Integration

Particle physics is an international endeavor, and we recognise that a coordinated strategy will be the most successful. In parallel to the activities of this expert panel, there are ongoing international activities in the United States and Asia. In the US, the Particle Physics Community Planning Exercise (a.k.a. 'Snowmass') is set up by the Division of Particles and Fields (DPF) of the American Physical Society. Input to Snowmass is organised through ten different frontiers, including the Accelerator Frontier.

The Accelerator Frontier has several topical groups, including AF-6 'Advanced Accelerator Concepts'. Advanced Accelerator programs are developing new concepts for particle acceleration, generation and focusing that could revolutionise the cost paradigm for future accelerators. The AAC Topical Group will focus on the concepts being developed worldwide, the potential impact they could have on the accelerator complex and future colliders, the major challenges that need to be addressed, and the development time and cost scales. The concepts considered in AF6 include the plasma and laser accelerators that are the topics of this report. To ensure the required international coordination and to arrive at a globally coherent roadmap for novel accelerators, the AF-6 convenors include membership from the Expert Panel and vice versa.

4.5 State of the Art

Research on high-gradient plasma and laser accelerators is distributed across many universities and research laboratories. Close collaboration between the academic sector and government-funded laboratories has fueled many important advances in the field. Although the research is not coordinated by a single entity, it is characterised by an open exchange of ideas and personnel with individual groups focused in different areas. Existing research facilities are described in Section 4.8. Funding for this research comes from many sources; from governments and universities to a private foundation.

Initial experiments with accelerators based on plasma or on laser-driven microstructures demonstrated accelerating fields around or exceeding gradients of GV/m (see also Figure 4.7). In laser-driven plasmas an energy gain of 8 GeV in only 20 cm of plasma was measured [1]. Electron-driven plasma accelerators have shown an energy gain of 42 GeV in only 85 cm of plasma [2]. Proton bunches were used to accelerate electrons in plasma by 2 GeV [3]. In parallel, micrometer-size, periodic dielectric structures powered by laser pulses have demonstrated acceleration in GV/m fields [10], and addressed longitudinal and transverse focusing of the particle bunches [11].

It is however clear that building an accelerator requires much more than demonstrating the accelerating gradient and energy gain. Specifically, the efficiency needs to be sufficiently high, and the energy spread and emittance need to be preserved to a large degree to enable a collider. There has been strong progress in addressing these aspects individually. These efforts are now addressed by the research groups, and first applications of novel accelerating concepts are emerging: exponential growth of radiation was observed in an EUV FEL driven by an electron beam generated in a laser-driven plasma wakefield accelerator at SIOM [4], and in a near-infrared FEL driven by a beam-driven plasma accelerator at LNF/INFN [5]; protons from laser-driven accelerators are tested for radiation therapy. At the same time, the control of the phase space of electron bunches in a dielectric laser accelerator (DLA) shows that these devices have a potential in ultrafast electron diffraction: measurements of hexagonal boron nitride, using an electron gun designed for a DLA, and using DLA to characterise the electron pulses have been performed.

Applications in particle physics, in particular the design of a collider at the energy frontier, have significantly more demanding requirements on the electron beams. Many questions are still open, from the particle source to acceleration and beam delivery. In many cases, it is not yet clear what the best approach will look like—in some cases, it is even unknown what the best beam parameters are to address a certain particle physics questions, and consequently what technology would be best suited to generate and accelerate the beams.

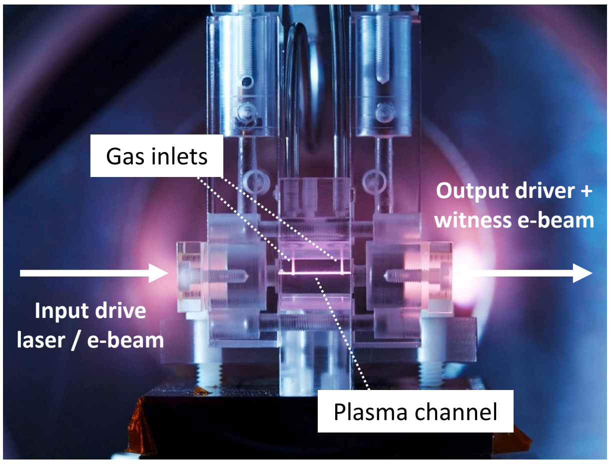


Fig. 4.5: Building blocks of a plasma wakefield accelerator: this setup, only a few centimeters in size, is used to generate a plasma channel. *Image: DESY, H. Mueller-Elsner*

There exist a number of rough parameter sketches and ideas for an e^+e^- or $\gamma\gamma$ collider based on plasma or dielectric technology (for example [13–15]). In strong contrast to other novel concepts (for example the muon collider) there has never been a coordinated, pre-conceptual design study for such a collider. Such a coordinated study is required to address feasibility, perform supporting simulations and to estimate rough size and costs.

Some of the challenges on the road towards a linear collider at the energy frontier are:

- The particle energy will be in the TeV range, at least two orders of magnitude greater than the largest energy gain achieved in a plasma-based accelerator.
- Achieving the luminosity goals for a linear collider will require ultra-bright beams, characterised by a high density of particles in phase space. Reaching these goals will require a suitable combination of bunch charge, repetition rate and emittance.
- A high energy efficiency is required for sustainability.
- Losses and beam tails must be controlled for several reasons: to avoid damage and minimise cooling when delivering the beams through the plasma channels or in the dielectric structures, respectively, to reduce detector backgrounds and to minimise the environmental impact of the facility.

In the following, we will outline present research activities directed towards first applications of high-gradient plasma and laser accelerators. In many cases, the relevant beam parameters are particle energy and beam brightness. Additionally, other figures of merit such as energy spread, reproducibility, reliability and energy efficiency have to be taken into consideration. The experimental programme is supplemented by the development of numerical and theoretical tools. These tools support the understanding of the experiments and guide the development of new concepts. The R&D objectives laid out in Section 4.6 build on the present research and address the issues most relevant for particle physics experiments.

4.5.1 Tests of Complete Accelerator Systems

The systems outlined in this section aim at building an entire accelerator system which generates beams suitable for certain applications.

High Quality Beams: Electron-driven Plasma-Accelerator-based FEL in Saturation – Two test facilities in Europe, FLASHForward [20] at DESY and SPARC_LAB [21] at INFN-LNF and CLARA at Daresbury [22] (involving Strathclyde University ASTeC, UCLA and SLAC), are conducting experi-

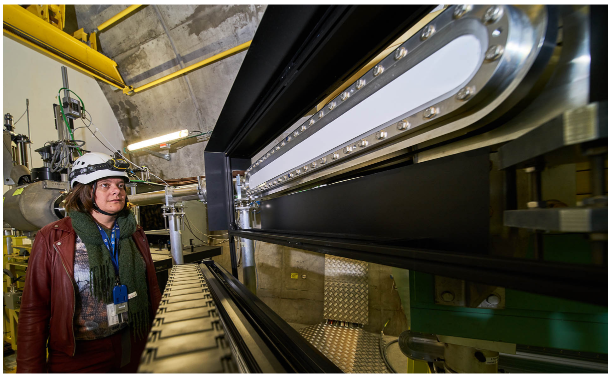


Fig. 4.6: Diagnostics for the accelerated electrons in the AWAKE experiment at CERN. *Image credit: CERN, M. Brice, J. M. Ordan*

ments with beam-driven plasma accelerators in order to produce high quality beam parameters compatible with the observation of FEL gain. The EuPRAXIA@SPARC_LAB facility [23] at Frascati is aiming to operate a short wavelength SASE FEL by the end of 2029.

Great progress has been made in recent years in demonstrator experiments for the preservation of beam quality in terms of energy spread and emittance [24–28], and the first experimental evidence of the feasibility of a plasma photocathode has been shown [29]. Very recently, the first demonstration of exponential gain in a SASE FEL at 830 nm driven by a plasma accelerated beam has been also reported from experiments at SPARC_LAB [5].

High Quality Beams: Laser-driven Plasma-Accelerator-based Soft-x-ray FEL in Saturation – Several proof-of-principle experiments for a laser-driven free-electron laser are being pursued in Europe, for example COXINEL at LOA/Soleil and LUX at DESY. In addition, experiments at SIOM in Shanghai, China, are making important progress, demonstrating exponential gain of EUV radiation in an undulator [4]. A new high quality plasma acceleration scheme has been proposed within the EuPRAXIA project [9, 30]. In the US, FEL-oriented R&D with a laser-plasma accelerator is ongoing at LBNL.

A laser-plasma based X-ray FEL in full saturation is expected to be achieved by 2030 at the latest, proving the generation of high quality electron beams at low repetition rate (up to 5 Hz). The EuPRAXIA project has produced a conceptual design of a 5 GeV plasma-based X-ray FEL facility including all required infrastructure. The location of the laser-driven plasma-based FEL will be decided by 2023, to start operation in 2029.

Proton-driven Plasma Wakefield Acceleration – The energy of laser and electron drive beams is typically limited to less than 100 J, which in turn limits the maximum energy gain of electrons accelerated in a single stage. Therefore, in order to accelerate electrons to TeV energies in both laser- and electron-driver beam acceleration experiments, several stages are required. Proton drivers available today carry a large amount of energy of typically 10s to 100s of kJ and can therefore, in principle, accelerate electrons to TeV energies in a single plasma.

The AWAKE Experiment, a world-wide collaboration of 23 institutes, has demonstrated at CERN for the first time that a long proton bunch, too long to drive large amplitude wakefields, self-modulates in a high-density plasma in a phase controlled way due to seeding, and then drives large amplitude fields [31, 32] (see also Figure 4.6). In addition the acceleration of externally injected electrons to multi-GeV energy levels has been demonstrated [3]. Future experiments will address challenges of external injection and stability against the hose instability among issues common to all plasma-based accelerators. The final goal of AWAKE is to bring the proton driven plasma wakefield acceleration technology to a stage, where first particle physics experiments can be proposed.

Dielectric Accelerator Module with High Quality Beam for First Applications – Dielectric laser-driven acceleration (DLA) refers to the use of photonic micro-structures made of dielectric and semiconductor materials and is driven directly by infrared lasers to accelerate charged particles [15]. Structures scaled to terahertz (THz) frequencies offer the possibility to generate significantly higher bunch charges, but the efficient generation of terahertz radiation remains a challenge. Dielectric materials have a damage threshold in the 1 to 10 GV/m range at THz to optical frequencies, and accelerating structures have been shown to support electromagnetic fields of 1.8 GV/m [10].

The bunch charge depends on the structure size, and the width of the accelerating channel is a fraction of the wavelength of the driving laser. Proof-of-principle experiments using near-infrared titanium sapphire lasers as drivers operate with bunches in the fC charge range, while terahertz accelerators operate with pC bunches [33].

Manufacturing of the structures makes use of the technology used in the semiconductor industry, supplemented by emerging free-form manufacturing methods with micrometer precision. Mass production using CMOS and MEMS fabrication methods can be envisioned. Recent advances include the use of inverse design to determine the optimum layout of the structure [34], and the demonstration of transverse and longitudinal focusing of the beams in a dielectric accelerating channel [11]. The community is exploring applications in ultrafast electron diffraction, medical physics and beam instrumentation [33].

4.5.2 Collider Sub-System Development

Elements of collider sub-systems are currently being investigated, and elements of these programs will inform more integrated designs such as proposed for WP 2 in Section 4.7.2.

Staging of Electron Plasma Accelerators Including In- and Out-Coupling – Staging of plasma accelerators is essential to reach high energies together with high efficiency and high repetition rate. A number of considerations make connecting plasma-accelerator stages non-trivial [35]. Major challenges arise from strong focusing in plasma and therefore highly diverging beams outside the plasma, as well as from the need to in- and out-couple the driver without disrupting the accelerated beam. In this context, conventional beam optics typically suffer from large chromaticity (energy-dependent focusing), which results in catastrophic emittance growth. Advanced beam optics including plasma lenses [36] and plasma ramps will therefore be key to staging. Managing sub-fs synchronization and sub-µm misalignment tolerances [37], for example by deploying novel self-stabilization concepts [38] is also essential. Strong focusing elements, such as plasma lenses , will be required to minimise the distance between stages, which also contributes to maintaining a high average accelerating gradient along the staged accelerator.

Experiments at LBNL have demonstrated first acceleration in two independent laser-driven stages, with pioneering use of both plasma lenses and plasma mirrors [39] to ensure a compact setup. These experiments also emphasised the above challenges: the charge coupling efficiency between the two stages was only about 3.5 % due to a significant chromatic emittance growth. Thorough theoretical analysis and simulations were carried out in the EuPRAXIA CDR phase for two stage plasma accelerator systems with chicane-based phase space rotation and minimized energy spread, including transfer lines between two plasma stages, as well as between a plasma stage and an FEL application.

Polarised Electrons – The laser-driven generation of polarised electron beams in compact sources and the preservation of the polarization state in a plasma wakefield is an open challenge for particle physics applications, which—unlike many R&D topics in the field—often benefit little from synergies with applications in other fields such as photon science. In combination with the development of advanced target technologies they are being pursued in the framework of the ATHENA consortium and EuPRAXIA [9]. Novel spin-polarised gas targets will be tested at different laser facilities, e.g., at DESY in the near future. The goal is to demonstrate in experiments the capability of plasma wakefields to maintain beam polarisation during the acceleration process with a measurable fraction. This was as yet only demonstrated in numerical simulations. A complementary approach is followed by the Forschungszentrum Juelich (FZJ), which builds on sources for laser-accelerated polarised hadron beams. These sources will be modified

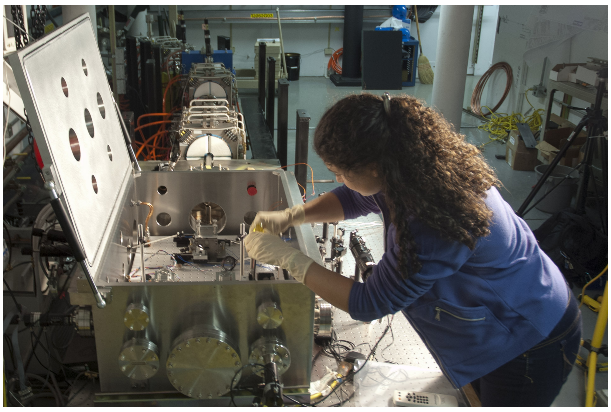


Fig. 4.7: Early laser acceleration experiments at SLAC: installation of the experimental chamber in the Next Linear Collider Test Accelerator. *Image credit: SLAC, R. Ischebeck*

such that they can also serve as sources of polarised electrons [40].

Positron Bunch Acceleration – Results on the acceleration of injected positron bunches in a beam-driven plasma accelerator have been achieved at FACET. An overview and outlook for efficiency and beam quality has been reported [41]. Many techniques have been proposed and some have been studied experimentally that demonstrate individual elements of a plasma accelerator stage for positrons, e.g. multi-GeV/m gradients, but none of these techniques are envisioned to satisfy the requirements needed for a collider. In a DLA or a THz accelerator, conversely, the acceleration of positrons is inherently the same as the acceleration of electrons. Notwithstanding, the generation of positron beams with suitable transverse emittance is still unsolved, unless resorting to conventional damping rings, which in turn have relatively poor longitudinal emittance.

Advanced Plasma Photoguns with Ultra-Low Emittance – Plasma photocathodes promise production of electron beams with ultra-low normalised emittance in both planes. Such beams may obviate the need for damping rings for HEP injectors. They would be compatible with plasma-based collider schemes, and could in the short term be used as test beams. The first plasma photogun was realised in proof-of-concept experiments at SLAC FACET [29], and next experiments, e.g., at SLAC FACET-II aim to demonstrate the potential of the scheme towards normalised emittances of the order of 10 nm.

Hybrid Laser-Beam Driver Schemes: Demonstration and Stability – LWFA-driven PWFAs utilise high peak-current (>6 kA) electron beams from compact laser-driven wakefield accelerators to subsequently drive a PWFA stage. A European 'Hybrid' collaboration has been formed and has achieved major conceptual and experimental milestones in quick succession [42–46]. The hybrid concept aims at demonstrating an overall highly compact platform that combines the LWFA and PWFA schemes and delivers at the same time high quality electron beams.

Plasma Lens R&D – Radially symmetric focusing with a magnetic gradient of the order of kT/m has been demonstrated for electron beams by means of plasma-based lenses. Several results have been obtained with active plasma lenses (APLs), showing the focusing of relativistic electron beams both from laser-plasma and RF accelerators [36, 47–49] and emittance preservation [50, 51].

High Transformer Ratio in PWFA for High Efficiency and Low Energy Spread – Shaping the current profile of the drive bunch (DB) and witness bunch (WB) can control the excitation of wakefields and maximise the energy transfer efficiency from the DB to the WB [52]. A DB longer than the plasma period and with, e.g., a triangular current profile, or a train of bunches with increasing charge can drive wakefields with accelerating fields much larger than decelerating fields. The ratio of these fields, the transformer ratio, as high as $\sim$8 has been demonstrated experimentally [53]. Shaping of the WB further allows for minimization of the final energy spread through precise flattening of the wakefields, i.e. beam

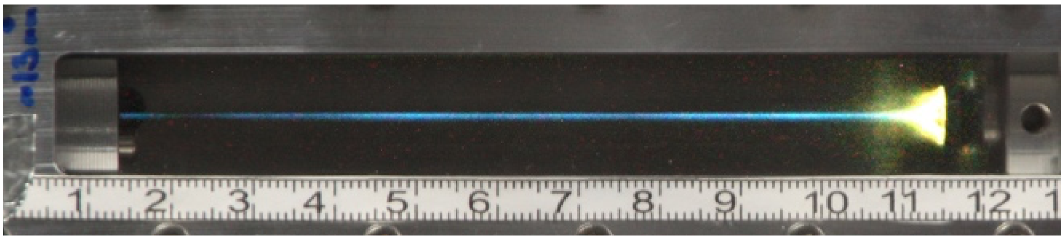


Fig. 4.8: Photograph of the visible plasma emission from a 100 mm long hydrodynamic optically-field-ionised (HOFI) plasma channel. The scale visible at the bottom of the image is in cm. Note that the apparent decrease in plasma brightness near a scale reading of 2.5 cm arises from blackening of the cell window in that region, not from non-uniformity of the plasma channel. *Image credit: Oxford, A. Picksley*

loading. This field flattening has been controlled to the percent level in experiment [26]. Bunch shaping techniques include tailoring of the laser pulse at the electron bunch source, beam masking, and emittance exchange. Conservation of the transverse normalised emittance requires precise matching of the WB to the focusing force of the plasma column.

Development of Plasma Sources for High-Repetition Rate, Multi-GeV Stages – Straw-person designs of future plasma-based colliders [54] indicate that to reach the luminosity, it is required to increase the repetition rate and the average power of the driver by orders of magnitude beyond the state of the art to $\mathcal{O}(10\,\text{kHz})$ and $\mathcal{O}(100\,\text{kW})$, respectively. Modern plasma sources are based on various technologies, e.g. capillary discharges, gas jets, plasma cells and laser-shaped channels. These sources have been robustly characterised and used in low-repetition-rate (Hz to kHz-level) acceleration experiments [26, 55].

In order to push technology towards operation at high repetition rates, it is necessary to explore the fundamental limitations of each source. For example, the repetition rate is limited by the time it takes for the plasma to recover to approximately its initial state after the passage of the beams and the corresponding energy deposition. This recovery time is governed by effects such as dissipation of wakefields, plasma recombination, plasma expansion, replenishing of the background gas inside the plasma vessel and cooling of the plasma source. These physical and technological limits are largely unexplored and open for development.

High Average Power, High Efficiency Laser Drivers and Schemes – Currently Ti:sapphire, pumped with frequency-doubled diode lasers or flash-lamp-pumped Nd:YAG lasers, is the most commonly used laser technology for LWFA, DLA and THz accelerators. Commercial systems for wakefield acceleration operate at high peak power (10 PW at ELI-NP) and useful repetition rates (1 PW @ 1 Hz, BELLA). However, laser drivers for LWFA-based colliders would require much higher *average* power than is currently available. Two options for achieving this performance are being pursued. The development of new lasers and technologies which avoid the intrinsic limitations of Ti:sapphire lasers, and which operate at multi-kHz repetition rates with high wall-plug efficiency. Options for such new laser systems under development with the goal of producing high energy (>10 J), high repetition rate (> kHz) pulses required for an HEP-relevant LWFA collider include: the combination of multiple low energy, high repetition rate Yb-doped fibre lasers, which has demonstrated pulses of tens of mJ and 100 fs, at tens of kHz [56–59]; Thulium-doped lasers operating at 2 μm that have shown to produce GW, $<$ 50 fs pulses [60]; and the Big Aperture Thulium (BAT) project developing Th:YLF lasers. In addition, alternative approaches are being investigated for modulating long (picosecond) laser pulses to drive plasma accelerators [61]. This would broaden the range of possible laser drivers for LWFA to include, for example, thin disk Yb-doped lasers generating joule-level pulses at kHz repetition rates [62, 63]. It is also important to note that research directed towards producing high-average-power lasers for LWFA should include developing new optics, for example, compressor gratings, with novel coatings that can withstand the increased fluence and thermal load of such lasers.

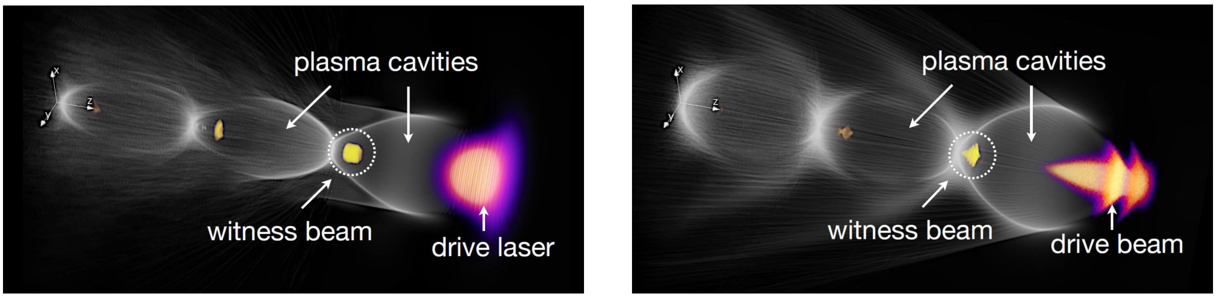


Fig. 4.9: Simulation of a LWFA *(left)* and a PWFA *(right)*, showing the formation of the accelerating cavities in the plasma. The witness beam is located at the point where the accelerating field is highest, just before the end of the first bubble. *Image credit: EuPRAXIA Conceptual Design Report, A. Martinez de la Ossa*

Many LWFA experiments employing low-repetition-rate lasers (typically $f_{\mathrm{rep}} = 1\,\mathrm{Hz}$) have demonstrated the generation of electron bunches with energies of order 1 GeV [64], bunch charge of hundreds of pC [65], divergence of 0.1–1 mrad [66], energy spread $\Delta E/E < 1\%$ [62, 67] and emittance of 1 µm [68]. In recent years there has been a transition from demonstration and physics studies experiments to accelerator research and development. For example, continuous operation for 24 hours of an LWFA at a pulse repetition rate of 1 Hz, with bunch parameters of $E = 368\,\mathrm{MeV} \pm 2.5\%$; $Q = 25\,\mathrm{pC} \pm 11\%$; $\Delta E/E = 15\%$; $\Delta\theta = 1.8\,\mathrm{mrad}$ was reported.

4.5.3 Numerical and Theoretical Tools

Computer simulations and theory have been providing critical support to the development of plasma-based accelerators for decades [69, 70] (Figure 4.9). In order to enable successful progress towards HEP applications, it is now of the highest importance to prepare an open-science model capable of taking full advantage of pre-exascale and exascale computers [71, 72]. Global and sustained effort is needed over the next decades in theory/numerical R&D activities, leading to accurate collider-relevant predictions.

The most used simulation model today is based on the particle-in-cell (PIC) technique. PIC simulation codes are kinetic, electromagnetic and relativistic. In addition, these codes capture the single particle motion of plasma particles self-consistently. PIC simulations are accurate and predictive. For example, generation of electron bunches with quasi-mono-energetic features from plasma [73–75], was first predicted in simulations [76].

PIC simulations are also computationally intensive. To reduce simulation time, PIC codes can rely on relativistic frames [77, 78] in conjunction with reduced physical models. Reduced models include envelope solvers for laser propagation [79], reduced dimensions [80] and quasi-static approximations [81]. In addition, recent research also focuses on the development of advanced field solvers (e.g. [82]) and particle pushers (e.g. [83]) to increase numerical accuracy and stability.

Significant effort has been put into including new models of relevance for HEP applications, of which advanced radiation diagnostics and quantum-electrodynamics models in PIC codes are key examples. PIC codes are now capable of predicting the spatio-spectral features of classical synchrotron emission, model classical and quantum radiation reaction physics [84], pair production [85] and spin physics [83]. PIC codes can be useful to model intermediate applications, such as coherent plasma light sources, contribute to the design of plasma accelerator-based machines for HEP such as e^+e^- and $\gamma\gamma$ colliders, and are being prepared to also model the physics at the interaction point in lepton-collisions.

Having noted above the successful use of PIC codes to model current experiments, we add that the needs for simulating a TeV collider with nm emittance bunches are demanding and require further development in this area.

4.6 R&D Objectives

4.6.1 Challenges to be Addressed

4.6.1.1 Challenges for Plasma Accelerators

The impressive success in the field notwithstanding, there are still many fundamental research issues that have to be solved before high-gradient plasma and laser accelerators can be used for particle physics experiments. The primary challenges associated with using plasma acceleration in a linear collider are listed below:

1. **Efficiency and Small Energy Spread at Nominal Bunch Charges** – A critical issue for linear colliders is achieving beams with high charge and small energy spread (<1%) with high acceleration efficiency to reach the design luminosity. In simulation it is possible to achieve high transfer efficiency from the drive bunch or drive laser pulse to the colliding electron beam with sub-% energy spread. However, few full start-to-end simulations for a plasma stage have been completed. In experiments, high instantaneous transfer efficiency (30 to 50%) has been demonstrated with low (10 to 100 pC) bunch charge [26, 27, 86, 87]. We note that the quoted transfer efficiency has been obtained with a small energy gain and an energy transfer much smaller than that of the driver. In concept, the total efficiency could be improved by lengthening the plasma cells. Future experiments are planned to study these limits and full simulation studies will be made to understand the limitations. In addition, understanding beam losses and energy recovery concepts will be used to improve the total transfer efficiency.

2. **Preservation of Small Beam Emittances** – Linear colliders require the acceleration of beams with normalised final emittances of roughly 0.1 µm. There are many challenges to emittance preservation in plasma accelerators including the matching in and out of the plasma stages and suppression of beam hosing due to the two-stream instability. Several concepts have been suggested, although it is not clear if these are well matched to the changing beam parameters along a linear collider. The demonstrations of lasing in FELs imply transport of beam emittances that are $\sim$2 µm in a short single stage system, a normalised emittance that is still well above that required for a linear collider. Solution to this challenge requires detailed simulation including all the relevant physical processes and including beam parameters representative of different points along the linear accelerator. The studies should include realistic variation in beam and plasma parameters as well as tolerances and correction schemes to ease the tolerances. Experiments should be used to validate the simulations although reproducing the exact linear collider parameters and configurations are likely not necessary. The preservation of the small beam emittances is probably the most challenging issue for the plasma accelerators and must be addressed rigorously.

3. **Staging of Multiple Plasmas** – Accelerating beams to high energy requires multiple plasma stages with each stage accelerating the beam by between a few GeV to a few tens of GeV. The inter-stage sections must couple the drive bunch or laser pulse in and out of the plasma, must match the colliding beam between stages, and must provide all the diagnostics required to tune the beam's 6D phase space. Care will be required to transport and match the beam between stages in a way that avoids significant emittance dilution. As an example of the challenge, a proof-of-principle multistage LWFA experiment was completed at LBNL. It suffered from large chromatic emittance dilution which limited the transmission to a few % of the beam. Mitigation strategies will also be needed for expected sub-micro transverse alignment tolerances and sub-fs timing tolerances. Concepts have been proposed for compact staging solutions, but these require components that have not yet been developed and/or need to be tested for high energy beams. Once a solution is proposed it will need to be verified in simulation to understand the expected performance across the range of parameters in the linear accelerator and then the simulations should be benchmarked with careful experiments.

4. **High Repetition Rate, Stability and Availability** – To achieve the desired luminosity, plasma-based linear colliders will need to operate with repetition rates of tens of kHz. Studies of plasma cooling and plasma stability are needed as there will be large energy deposition (100s kW/m in typical parameters) into the plasma. As multiple timescales exist and simulation can be difficult, experimental demonstration at high rate will be needed. The high repetition rate will also allow for feedback systems to stabilise the plasma accelerators, reducing the pulse-to-pulse variation. Finally, typical RF linear accelerators are designed for high availability and can continue operation even through failure of multiple components. A detailed analysis of failure modes and mitigation methods is required. Demonstration of routine operation of a plasma linac will be required to address concerns.
5. **Positrons** – At this time there is not a complete solution to accelerate a low-emittance bunch of positrons that has been developed conceptually, in simulation, or in experiment. Concepts that are verified by simulation and then experimentally are required. If a solution for accelerating positions could not be developed, a $\gamma\gamma$ collider based on colliding electron beams could be considered instead of an e^+e^- collider. This will require an additional study and a demonstration of the laser-Compton IPs, backgrounds, detector integration, etc.

As noted, an integrated feasibility study is needed to put these concepts together and illustrate to the community that a plasma-based accelerator is a realistic option for a future collider. The study should provide detailed examples of how the main challenges will be addressed. While experimental demonstrations are not needed for all components to support such a study, key demonstrations should be supported to validate detailed simulations of the relevant sub-systems. The feasibility study will include enough detail to make cost estimates. Bottom-up estimates will be needed for the new technology and components that have tight tolerances.

A strong benefit of a plasma-based linear collider is that it takes advantage of 40 years of linear collider development. One of largest obstacles in developing a new large HEP facility is that new concepts usually require demonstration of integrated subsystems as well as development of new technologies. These large subsystem demonstrations can be a large fraction of the facility cost. In a linear collider there are three main subsystems that would require demonstration: beam generation, beam acceleration, focusing and collimation. Fortunately, the construction and operation of the Stanford Linear Collider as well as the many 100's of MCHF that have been invested in linear collider test facilities have verified many of the critical linear collider concepts including the beam generation and transport, beam acceleration, final focus systems, as well as the critical beam-based diagnostics and feedback systems. Most of these demonstrations are directly relevant to a plasma-based collider, simplifying the development path greatly. In the case where plasma is used to replace the linear accelerators, only a relatively compact demonstration of a few plasma stages is required to address the issues described in items 1–5 above. These demonstrations should be sufficient to benchmark detailed simulations and allow low risk extrapolation to the full high-energy linear accelerator and the linear collider.

4.6.1.2 Challenges for DLA / THz Accelerators

At present, beam parameters of particle bunches accelerated by dielectric laser and terahertz accelerators are still far from practical applications in particle physics. In addition, several aspects such as reliability and repeatability have not yet been addressed, and the technical readiness for building an accelerator still remains to be demonstrated in an application. In particular, we note the following challenges on the road towards a linear collider:

1. **Generation of Beams with Suitable Parameters for a Linear Collider** – The acceptance phase space of dielectric laser accelerators is significantly smaller in comparison with radio-frequency linacs. This determines the charge that should be accelerated in a DLA (e.g. the 5 fC from Table 4.1). Terahertz accelerators offer a larger acceptance volume. In particular the generation of

positron beams with sufficiently small emittance is an open issue. Generating beams with suitable parameters (low bunch charge, sub micron normalised emittance, low energy spread, few fs length, at up to 20 MHz pulse repetition rate, multi-bunch acceleration within a pulse — see Table 4.1) is a challenge: present experiments accelerate bunches with $\mathcal{O}$(aC) charge.

2. **Heat Load and Particle Containment** – Linear collider parameters require an unprecedented beam energy to be contained in the accelerating structure that has a much smaller clearance than RF accelerators. In a dielectric-based collider (see Table 4.1) a 15 MW beam should pass through a micrometer size hole, or should be divided into multiple parallel accelerators. In addition, losses of the driver energy in the structure must be dissipated. Assuming losses of 7.5 MW over a 1 km length of the accelerator (1 TeV beam energy with 1 GV/m gradient), then power at the level of 7.5 kW/m would need to be be evacuated without major deformations of the accelerating structure. In addition, possible radiation damage should be considered. This issue will require major R&D for assessing feasibility and scalability to high energy. It should be addressed in the 2025 feasibility report.
3. **Staging** – While the acceleration of electrons in multiple DLA stages has recently been demonstrated, these structures were driven by the same laser system. A high-energy linear collider would require multiple drive lasers, which have to be synchronised to a fraction of the period, i.e. to sub-femtosecond precision.
4. **Energy Efficiency** – The high energy efficiency of solid-state lasers (up to 30%) lays a good basis for the laser-based acceleration schemes. An efficient transfer of this energy in a dielectric structure (e.g. 50% compared to presently less than 0.1%) would require either a significant beam loading, or the re-circulation of the laser energy inside the oscillator. When using terahertz frequencies, the efficiency of conversion of visible light to THz frequencies imposes an additional challenge.
5. **Transverse and Longitudinal Stability** – The phase space evolution of the particle bunches from the source to the final energy needs to be modeled, including tolerances in the manufacturing process. This will give a good understanding of the expected particle losses, which has to be taken into account considering radiation damage, environmental impact, heat load and detector backgrounds.

Dielectric laser accelerators leverage the significant effort that the laser and semiconductor industries have invested into the efficient generation of coherent light, and into manufacturing structures with sub-micrometer accuracy. They promise the possibility to accelerate beams with extremely low emittances to relativistic energies. Generating beams of relativistic electrons that are coherent in a quantum-mechanical sense, this technology has thus the potential for applications in the emergent field of ultrafast electron diffraction.

Matching the capabilities of dielectric laser and terahertz accelerators to the particle physics experiments would certainly entail choosing different beam parameters as compared to radio frequency or plasma wakefield accelerators. A careful optimization of beam parameters will have to be performed, including considerations of beam loading, wakefields and beamstrahlung at the interaction point.

4.6.2 Three Pillars of the Near-Term R&D Roadmap

The panel has discussed and agreed on a roadmap that is based on three pillars that should be pursued in parallel (see also Fig. 4.1). The three pillars of our roadmap are

1. **The First International Feasibility and Pre-CDR Study** for high-gradient plasma and laser accelerators and their particle physics reach. This paper study will lead to a comparative report on various options, a feasibility assessment, performance estimates, physics cases, intermediate HEP applications and a cost-size-benefit analysis for high energy.

2. **A Prioritised List of Technical R&D Topics** that will demonstrate a number of technical feasibility issues of importance for particle physics experiments.
3. **Integration and Outreach Measures** that exploit and ensure the very high synergistic potential with other fields and large projects, like EuPRAXIA. It enables access to distributed R&D facilities under clear rules and supports innovation with closely connected industry. Finally, it connects to the next generation of scientists in close collaboration with other activities in IFAST and the European Network for Novel Accelerators (EuroNNAc).

4.6.3 R&D Objectives of the Feasibility Study and Pre-CDR

The expert panel proposes the first international feasibility and pre-CDR study for high gradient plasma and laser accelerators and their particle physics reach.

4.6.3.1 High-Energy Common Study Case

A high-energy study case will assess the feasibility in the high-energy collider regime. CLIC has already established an optimised set of parameters for radio-frequency technology. We adapt here the CLIC parameters of the final 15 GeV of the CLIC 380 GeV main linacs [88]. A collider based on plasma or dielectric accelerator technology is not expected to reproduce exactly the same parameters as in CLIC to reach the same luminosity goals, but this can serve as the basis for a comparative study as proposed in this report. The parameters will be adapted and modified to take into account the constraints and opportunities presented by plasma and laser technology. The relevant study case is the design of an advanced accelerator module (two or more acceleration stages) accelerating electron or positron beams from 175 GeV to 190 GeV. All required components for in- and outcoupling of the drivers (e.g. laser, electron, or proton pulses that drive the accelerating fields) will be included, see Table 4.2.

We note that this high-energy study case is a required step towards the TeV beam energy regime, which is the final goal for a collider and will be pursued in further studies. We have chosen the 190 GeV energy to reduce difficulty while addressing for the several high-energy feasibility issues, although proposed solutions will have to be shown to work across the energy range of the accelerator. For example, solutions to compensate the two-stream hosing instability with ion motion may not work as the beam energy and thereby the beam size changes along the linac.

4.6.3.2 Low-Energy Common Study Case

The potential for low-energy particle physics applications will be assessed by considering a parameter regime for fixed-target experiments, which could be realised in the nearer future with more relaxed beam parameters compared to colliders at the energy frontier. The relevant study cases are therefore the design of an advanced accelerator (that can include the injector) to accelerate electrons to a final beam energy in the regime of 15 GeV to 50 GeV and to be used for first HEP experiments.
Table 4.3 summarises the parameters we use for an electron beam, generated by a dielectric laser accelerator (inspired by the eSPS specifications [89]) and for electron bunches from a plasma accelerator for an LHeC-like collider [90] and for the LUXE experiment [91]. These experiments are the following:

Single Electron Tagging Experiments – High-quality electron beams in the energy range 15–20 GeV are scarce, but have potential application in HEP. A case for an experiment to search for dark photons has been made based on electrons in the SPS (eSPS). In order to tag each incoming electron, single electrons enter the experiment, with a suitable time structure so that a large number of electrons on target are collected, $10^{14} - 10^{16}$. Such a scheme allows for the full reconstruction of the event and hence the possible decay of dark photons to ‘invisible’ dark matter candidates as well as, e.g., e^+e^- pairs. For a possible list of parameters, see also Table 4.3.

A DLA could provide the required electron energy over the same same foot-print as a 3.5 GeV X-band electron linac, and avoid the need for a storage ring such as the SPS as a booster accelerator. It

Table 4.2: Specification for an advanced high energy accelerator module, compatible with CLIC [88]. Additional CLIC design values are listed for reference in the second part of the table.

Parameter	**Unit**	**Specification**
Beam energy (entry into module)	GeV	**175**
Beam energy (exit from module)	GeV	**190**
Number of accelerating structures in module	-	≥2
Efficiency wall-plug to beam (includes drivers)	%	≥10
Bunch charge	pC	833
Relative energy spread (entry/exit)	%	≤0.35
Bunch length (entry/exit)	µm	≤70
Convoluted normalised emittance ($\gamma\sqrt{\epsilon_h\epsilon_v}$)	nm	≤135
Emittance growth budget	nm	**≤3.5**
Polarization	%	80 (for e^-)
Normalised emittance h/v (exit)	nm	900/20
Bunch separation	ns	0.5
Number of bunches per train	-	352
Repetition rate of train	Hz	50
Beamline length (175 to 190 GeV)	m	**250**
Efficiency: wall-plug to drive beam	%	58
Efficiency: drive beam to main beam	%	22
Luminosity	$10^{34}\text{cm}^{-2}\text{s}^{-1}$	1.5

would thus completely decouple the project from the SPS. In addition, since the DLA naturally provides low charge (fC) bunches at very high repetition rate (MHz), it could provide electrons 24/7 as a dedicated source. However, the proposed particle energy is several orders of magnitude beyond present capabilities of dielectric laser accelerators.

Electron Bunch Experiments – In a bunched scheme, the individual incoming electrons cannot be tagged and thus signatures like the decay of dark photons to $e^+ - e^-$ pairs in beam-dump mode are searched for. The AWAKE experiment has done a study of using such bunched electron beams with energies of 50 GeV and above [92–94]. Note that at the lower energy of about 20 GeV, the sensitivity to higher masses of the dark photon is reduced, but the possibility to investigate an as yet unexplored region remains. However, in the AWAKE scheme, in which scalable plasma technologies are being pursued, reaching 50 GeV and beyond should be achievable. Other novel accelerator technologies should also study the possibility of providing such high energy bunched electron beams.

The use of bunched electrons in the 15 to 20 GeV range is also proposed by the LUXE experiment using the European XFEL electrons [91]. This experiment will investigate non-linear QED by colliding the electron bunches with a high-power laser. This is then a natural application for plasma wakefield acceleration and dielectric laser accelerators which could achieve similar parameters.

The AWAKE study [92–94] also considered an electron-proton collider based on bunches of electrons at $\sim$50 GeV (PEPIC) or 3 TeV (VHEeP [95]). Using $\sim$50 GeV electrons is akin to the proposed LHeC project. Typical parameters are shown in Table 4.3 Although a significantly shorter electron accelerator is expected, much lower luminosity is also expected in the AWAKE scheme. Aspects that should be further considered are:

- Further study and optimisation of the AWAKE scheme, in particular to increase the luminosity.
- Other novel accelerator schemes should consider application to the LHeC.

Table 4.3: Specification for an electron beam for fixed-target (FT) experiments, generated by a dielectric laser accelerator (inspired by the eSPS specifications [89]) as well as for electron bunches from plasma accelerators for PEPIC [92–94], a low-luminosity LHeC-like collider [90] and for the LUXE experiment [91]. Such bunches (for PEPIC and LUXE) can also be used for a beam-dump experiment to search for dark photons. Note that the number of bunches per train in the European XFEL is 2700, but for LUXE only one is used.

Parameter	**Unit**	**single e FT**	**PEPIC**	**LUXE**
Bunch charge	pC	few e	800	250
Final energy	GeV	20	70	16.5
Relative energy spread	%	<1	$2-3$	0.1
Bunch length	µm	-	30	$30-50$
Normalised emittance	µm	100	10	1.4
Number of bunches per train	-	1	320	1
Repetition rate	-	1 GHz	0.025 Hz	10 Hz
Luminosity	$10^{27}\,\mathrm{cm}^{-2}\,\mathrm{s}^{-1}$	-	1.5	-

- Other electron beam energies could be considered and discussed with HEP as to their interest.

Another compelling application yet to be considered by any novel accelerator scheme is a $\gamma\gamma$ collider, with a centre-of-mass energy of 12 GeV [96]. The current design is based on the use of the European XFEL electron beam but would require modifications/additions to the complex to run a collider. A LWFA accelerator based on a few stages facing each other in a collider-like arrangement would decouple the project from the over-subscribed FEL beam and provide an ideal test-bed for the development of a mini collider towards a larger scale scale collider.

4.6.3.3 Theory and Simulation

The proposed feasibility study will include a strong effort on theory and simulation, both for plasma-based accelerators, and for DLA/THz structures. A beam physics and simulation framework will be set up that addresses all system aspects of a high-energy physics machine. The work will include the preparation of numerical and simulation tools, as required for simulating multi-stage setups at high and low energy for the various options, both for electrons and positrons. For typical densities, bunches with transverse sizes as low as a few tens of nm, may be required. The disparity between the transverse bunch size and the plasma or laser wavelength are numerically and theoretically challenging and make collider-relevant numerical models very computationally intensive. Sustained development and use of reduced physics/lower dimensions numerical models, combined with artificial intelligence/machine learning (AI/ML), and possibly under simplifying configurations, are priorities for collider modeling.

Research milestones thus include setting up of simulation tools for electron and positron case studies ($\geq$ 2 stages) with certain approximations. Strong emphasis should be given to the accuracy, stability and efficiency of the numerical models. This will allow start-to-end simulations of many acceleration stages. More specifically, these tools will make it possible to study emittance and energy spread preservation for electron and positron bunches with collider-relevant parameters. Spin preservation and beam-disruption mitigation strategies also need to be developed.

The following provides a summary with key research and development priorities for high-gradient plasma and laser collider simulations.

1. **Sustained Simulation Development** – The nm-scale transverse witness bunch dimensions is a bottle-neck for the modeling of a plasma accelerator based collider. The development of accu-

rate, stable and computationally efficient electromagnetic field solvers and particle pushers for particle-in-cell codes are key goals. Codes need to be prepared to take advantage of recent computer architectures at the (pre-)exascale. The codes need to be able to include physics beyond the beam-plasma electromagnetic interaction such as incoherent synchrotron radiation, ionization processes and other scattering effects. The field would strongly benefit from sustained efforts over the coming years and decades and from links with supercomputing (excellence) centers. Developing tools based on reduced physical and/or numerical models (e.g. based on the quasi-static approximation [97], boosted frames [77], envelope models, educed beam propagation models etc.), potentially combined with AI/ML will be important to provide a suite of approximate but fast models ready to perform systematic parameter scans.

2. **Positron and Electron Acceleration** – Recent experiments demonstrated lasing in a free-electron-laser powered by sub-percent energy spread GeV-class electron bunches from plasma-based accelerators. Such an energy spread is compatible with requirements for collider applications. Scaling these results to 10-100 GeV is a main research goal. Intense effort is also needed to develop positron acceleration in plasma. Several positron acceleration concepts recently emerged (e.g. relying on drivers with advanced spatiotemporal profiles [98], hollow channels [99], in linear or nonlinear regimes [41]). Expanding such concepts, and even developing new concepts towards collider-relevant conditions, is a requirement for plasma-based linear collider design.

3. **Emittance Preservation** – Collider physics requires bunches with normalised emittance as small as $\simeq 10\mathrm{nm}$ for plasma accelerators, and sub-nanometer for DLAs. A conceptual demonstration of high-efficiency acceleration and emittance preservation within these tolerances is vital. Research needs to focus on emittance preservation during the acceleration and plasma-vacuum transitions, considering collider relevant parameters, for both electrons and positrons. Emittance preservation in plasma-vacuum transitions at the nm level was demonstrated in theory/simulations in a single stage and considering 100 MeV electron bunches [100,101]. It is important to build on such studies to scale results to 10-100 GeV energies, and prove their validity for positron bunches. We note that these studies will also benefit intermediate applications such as coherent radiation emission in plasma [102].

4. **Efficiency and Stability** – To maximise efficiency in a plasma accelerator, accelerated beams may be several orders of magnitude denser than the background plasma [103]. Despite recent work on hosing suppression in plasma-based accelerators [97, 104–107], demonstrating suppression of the hosing instability under such large witness to plasma density ratios remains a key research goal. Driver/witness bunches with advanced spatiotemporal/phase-space structures also promise to circumvent some limits of plasma accelerators, such as depletion and dephasing [108–110]. Research demonstrating their effectiveness for collider-relevant scenarios is, however, still required.
   Efficiency of a DLA hinges on strong beam loading, or on the recovery of the laser pulse energy by including the accelerating structure in the laser cavity [111]. A stable accelerating bucket can be achieved with alternating phase focusing [112].

5. **Physics at the Interaction Point** – The electron and positron bunches undergo an intense interaction just before the collision of the particles: the pinch originating in the electromagnetic interaction between the bunches results in a significant increase in luminosity. At the same time, synchrotron radiation generated by this interaction results in beamstrahlung, which leads to a noticeable increase in energy spread. These effects depend strongly on beam parameters such as the normalized emittance, charge and bunch length, and generally become more pronounced at higher energy. For DLA, the optimisation of the parameters favours the interaction of bunches with very low charge; the luminosity is maintained through the high repetition rate, and through the interaction of bunch trains [113].
   Spin preservation in plasma accelerators has been demonstrated conceptually. Previous studies [114], however, did not consider in full the extreme conditions that are required for collider

physics. A spin-preservation acceleration regime in more realistic plasma collider settings is thus an important research goal. Furthermore, recent developments [84,115,116] enable radiation reaction, synchrotron emission (beamstrahlung) and disruption studies during acceleration in plasma. Applying existing and developing new simulation tools to capture spin-physics, beam disruption, radiation reaction and pair production to model collider-relevant bunches is an additional and important key goal. These advances will also be important in designing other plasma-based collider concepts, such as a $\gamma\gamma$ collider [14].

4.6.4 Technical R&D Objectives in the Minimal Plan

The feasibility study is complemented by a prioritised list of technical common R&D topics that will demonstrate a number of technical feasibility issues of importance for particle physics experiments. Here we present a limited number of objectives that have been defined as highly important, common objectives. All those topics shall have deliverables ready by the end of 2025, in time for the next update of the European Strategy for Particle Physics.

4.6.4.1 High-Repetition Rate Plasma Accelerator Module

PWFA or LWFA stages suitable for collider applications would need to operate at multi-kHz pulse repetition rates for considerable periods of time without the need for replacement or servicing. This is a challenging requirement given the high average power deposited in forming the plasma and/or by the drive particle or laser beams. For example, from Table 4.1 a 5 GeV LWFA stage operating at on-average 15 kHz, and with 40% wake-to-bunch efficiency would need to handle ~50 kW power remaining in the plasma after particle acceleration.

The development of long-lived, high-rep-rate plasma accelerator modules is therefore a key requirement. To drive this development we have defined a milestone for end 2025 of the demonstration of a plasma module capable of > 1 kHz operation for at least a billion shots. For this initial demonstration high-repetition-rate particle acceleration will not be attempted in the modules.

Two approaches will be explored: (i) all-optical plasma channels based on hydrodynamic optical-field-ionization (HOFI) [117]; (ii) high-voltage-discharge ignited plasma channels. For the latter, a focus will be placed on the development of the necessary high-repetition-rate, high-voltage electronics, plasma-capillary designs capable of fast refilling times or, alternatively, mitigation of expulsion into vacuum, and plasma sources durable enough to survive billions of plasma-generation events at high-repetition operation.

4.6.4.2 High-Efficiency, Electron-Driven Plasma Accelerator Module

The efficient transfer of energy from the driving to the trailing beam in plasma-wakefield schemes is essential in order to build a sustainable PWFA-driven linear collider. The maximisation of efficiency will require a careful interplay with other optimisations inherent to the PWFA process such as beam-quality preservation and transformer ratio optimization. The grand goal of a highly efficient beam-driven plasma-accelerator stage is explored by several facilities, e.g. at INFN, SLAC and DESY, and in association with university groups.

Recently, a focus has been placed on maximising the transfer of energy from the wake to the trailing beam through careful longitudinal bunch shaping (facilitated by the third harmonic cavity and compression chicanes in the FLASH linac). Through this, the plasma wake was flattened with unprecedented accuracy in the region of the trailing bunch such that the in-going energy spread was preserved at the 0.1% level and the trailing beam extracted 42% of the energy in the wake. In the near future, the aim is to expand the pre-existing infrastructure of FLASHForward to include longer plasma capillaries for larger energy gain of the trailing beam and energy loss of the driving beam. This endeavour will have to go along with increased control of beam and plasma parameters to eliminate a detrimental impact of

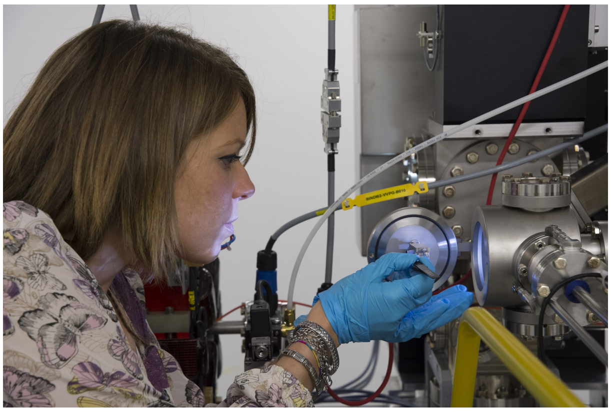


Fig. 4.10: Test of instrumentation for dielectric laser accelerators in SwissFEL at PSI. *Image credit: PSI, R. Ischebeck*

beam-plasma instabilities such as hosing. By optimising the involved processes, a landmark goal of 40% overall efficiency may be achieved by the end of 2025, if sufficient funding is available to catalyze the required research.

At SPARC_LAB a multi bunch scheme is being explored for maximizing energy transfer and efficiency by means of the so called ramped bunch train scheme. This method consists of using a train of equidistant (e.g. 1 ps) drive bunches, wherein the charge increases along the train (e.g. 50-150-250 pC) producing an accelerating field with higher transformer ratio (> 2) while keeping high quality witness beam. For this application it is essential to create trains of high-brightness tens of fs long micro-bunches with stable and adjustable length, charge and spacing. Preliminary tests have been already done at SPARC_LAB, but limited by the time jitters along the train. Better performances are expected with an upgraded synchronization system between the photo-cathode laser and the RF system able to reach fs range stability, which requires dedicated funding.

4.6.4.3 Scaling of DLA/THz Accelerators

The primary focus of HEP-directed research in dielectric laser and terahertz accelerators lies in the increase of structure length, both through confinement and active focusing in longer acceleration channels, and in the staging of multiple structures. As a first goal, we aim thus for an energy gain of 10 MeV in a staged setup. In this setup, the participating research groups will have to demonstrate that they can keep the particle bunches focused for hundreds or thousands of accelerator periods. This task requires stability in the longitudinal phase space.

While particle focusing and longitudinal stability will become easier at highly relativistic energies, the wakefields generated by the ultra-short bunches require special attention. Ultimately, the energy lost in wakefields will limit the bunch charge in DLA/THz accelerators, thus a detailed understanding of the fields is central to the accelerator design. Another aspect that will become important for longer accelerators is instrumentation, such as beam position and profile monitors [118, 119] (see also Figure 4.10), and feedbacks acting on these. They will have to be integrated into the structures, read out and processed by edge computing.

4.6.4.4 Spin-Polarised Beams in Plasma

While impressive progress has been made in improving beam quality over the last decades, the topic of spin-polarization of plasma-accelerated electron beams has not yet been addressed experimentally. For serious consideration as injectors or accelerator modules in linear colliders, the demonstration of the generation of spin-polarised beams from plasma and also the conservation of polarization in plasma accelerators is urgently required.

To date, only theoretical work has been performed, with simulations demonstrating that the generation and subsequent acceleration of polarised beams in a laser plasma accelerator are feasible. The proposed scheme involves the realization of a pre-polarised plasma source, where some background electrons have their spins aligned co-linearly with the propagation direction of the incoming laser pulse. Creating a polarised plasma relies on photo-dissociation of the pre-aligned diatomic molecules by laser pulses in the deep UV. The degree of polarization of the plasma source depends on the ion species, where nearly 100% polarization can be achieved in hydrogen.

Since the pre-alignement of hydrogen ions is technically challenging, the first observation of plasma-based polarised beams could be performed with hydrogen halides to experimentally demonstrate polarization fractions between 10% and 20%. First work in this direction is currently underway at DESY in the LEAP project. With additional resources it is feasible to demonstrate by the end of 2025 the polarization in hydrogen halides and acceleration in plasma. A concept can be developed to extend the pre-polarised plasma source technology to enable >80% overall beam polarization, with a later experimental demonstration of the high polarization fractions.

4.6.5 Technical R&D Objectives in the Aspirational Plan

4.6.5.1 Scalable Plasma Source

For high energy physics applications, where electrons are accelerated up to the TeV energy level, the energy of the wakefield driver must be in the range of kJ. As the energy of laser and electron drive beams is limited to $\approx$100 J, multiple plasma stages are required to accelerate electrons to the required energy. However, current proton beams provide the required driver energy (10s of kJ) and therefore electrons can be accelerated, in principle, in a single plasma stage. It is therefore of great importance to develop plasma source technologies that are scalable from tens to hundreds of meters paving the way for first high-energy physics applications in the intermediate time scale.

In the AWAKE experiment the longest plasma source has been used so far, a 10 m long rubidium vapour source, and provides the required density and uniformity. However, the length of these laser-ionised, alkali metal vapour sources is limited by depletion of the laser pulse energy, to a few tens of meters.

Helicon plasma sources (Figure 4.11) as well as discharge plasma sources are based on a modular scheme and can be tailored for reaching the desired length. It was shown that the plasma density range suitable for AWAKE can be reached in meter-long prototypes. However, both source types still have to demonstrate sufficient density uniformity. A strong plasma source development program has been setup in collaboration with plasma physics institutes and CERN: IPP, Greifswald, CERN, University of Wisconsin, Madison (USA) and EPFL-SPC, Lausanne (Switzerland) jointly working on a design proposal for a several meter long helicon plasma cell with the required density and uniformity parameters. The discharge sources are developed by IST, Lisbon and Imperial College (IC), London and are also included in a CERN laboratory test-stand. In a scaled-up version of the AWAKE experiment these scalable sources can then be used as a first application for fixed-target experiments.

4.6.5.2 High-Charge, High-Quality Plasma Injector/Accelerator Module Driven by Laser Pulses

In the high energy linear accelerator a laser-driven plasma accelerator module will need to take an incoming electron bunch of high charge (1 nC) and low transverse emittance (100 nm) for efficient acceleration to higher beam energy, while preserving the charge and beam quality. At this time relevant experiments are performed on modules that include the electron source, injection and acceleration. Those experiments either focus on high charge or small emittance. They provide important insights towards future experiments on a pure accelerator module and define the state of the art. At some point experiments on a high charge, plasma accelerator-only module will be required. This R&D objective focuses on the high

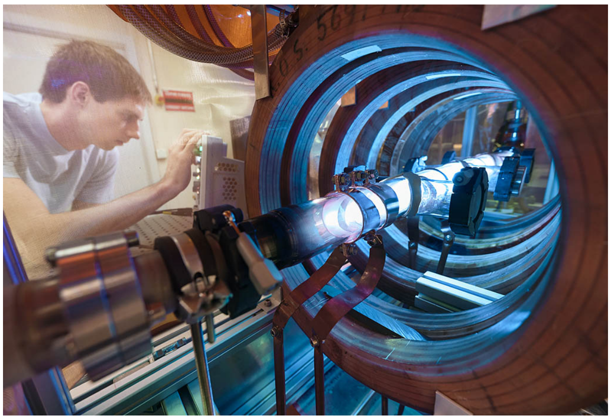


Fig. 4.11: 1 m prototype of a scalable Helicon plasma source. *Image credit: CERN*

charge, high quality aspect while it accepts lower priority on emittance.

Single stage LWFA injection and acceleration of electrons deliver sub-nC class charge bunches with peak currents exceeding 10 kA in the sub GeV energy range, benefiting from the availability of >3 J energy laser pulses with pulse duration <30 fs on target. Various electron injection schemes are known to influence beam quality (6D phase space density) and charge. The state-of-the-art is the generation of bunches with 5 pC/MeV/mrad optimised for driving light sources or hybrid acceleration plasma stages. Still lacking is a systematic, multi-center based investigation of the coupling of parameters and injection techniques – and their respective physics-based limits. The investigations have to be closely accompanied by numerical studies and novel machine learning based concepts for optimization.

Additionally, still based on a compact cm-scale setup, the recently established hybrid plasma acceleration scheme, where a high current LWFA drive beam drives an independent yet spatially close PWFA stage, offers independent optimization options. As both stages operate with independent plasma densities that can be individually optimised for current and quality a multitude of cold injection schemes can be realised in the PWFA stage, this scheme also promises improved emittance after the PWFA stage. The hybrid schemes are currently investigated under cross-center defined conditions in the Hybrid collaboration (HZDR-LMU-LOA-Strathclyde-DESY) based on internal funding of the partners. This collaboration thus offers an optimal ground for the systematic study required to investigate the fundamental limits of beam quality in single stage plasma accelerators optimised for high bunch charge. This study will require additional resources listed in the aspirational plan.

Various injection concepts in LWFA or hybrid LWFA-PWFA aiming at generating high charge will be studied numerically first, followed by experimental demonstrations carried out at several LWFA laser labs (HZDR, LMU, Strathclyde, DESY, CNRS, CEA, Oxford University, Lund, etc.). The goal of theoretical studies will be to identify mechanisms and parameter range to achieve nC-class charge (>0.5 nC) and sub-micrometer normalised emittance (<1 µm); experimental demonstrations of feasibility will subsequently be carried out with existing facilities, e.g. as listed above.

4.6.5.3 Stable Low-Emittance Electron Source

We will need to address the challenge of generating an appropriate electron bunch for the collider, that simultaneously delivers nC charge, 100 nm normalised emittance, few permille energy spread, few fs length electron bunches at 15 kHz. While charge has been prioritized in the previous deliverable, this deliverable aims at first demonstrating 100 nm scale transverse normalized emittance with ultra-short bunch length. The low emittance electron beam for an advanced collider could be provided either from conventional electron sources or plasma sources. As a conventional source of this type does not exist today (and will probably involve multi-stage bunch compression and damping schemes), a plasma R&D

path is included in our aspirational plan. The first intermediate steps for a low-emittance electron source are to reach a normalised slice emittance below 100 nm at a charge in the 10–100 pC range. The work shall demonstrate the advantage in compactness compared to conventional setups (including damping rings and compressors), as well as scalability of this source to the required high repetition frequency. Also, the stability of the injector shall be qualified and compared to tolerances in a collider setup. Experimental priorities differ from the high charge goal as addressed in the previous topic. It is felt important that both priorities are pursued in parallel.

4.6.6 R&D Objectives in Ongoing Projects of High Relevance for Particle Physics

The field of plasma and laser accelerators in Europe has received significant funding from other science fields in which first applications are expected. Those applications are mainly targeted at lower energy or other parameter regimes. However, those ongoing developments are drivers of progress and will demonstrate important features of advanced accelerators. Conversely, major experiments are ongoing in the US, funded mainly by particle physics and planning for several ground-breaking deliverables in the next decade.

4.6.7 Sustainability

The energy efficiency of particle accelerators is a key aspect of research in high-gradient plasma and laser accelerators. Solid state lasers reach excellent energy efficiencies. The efficient transfer of the energy from the plasma wake to the particle beam is at the core of the studies outlined in Section 4.6.4.2, and the results also apply to laser-driven schemes.

Particle accelerators are ubiquitous tools in many parts of research, industry and medicine. Developing compact accelerators producing particle bunches and radiation bursts from the terahertz to the X-Ray regime with unique properties (ultra-short, ultra-bright) could enable a wealth of new scientific results and applications. This includes cancer therapy (e^- and p^+ flash therapy), phase contrast X-Ray imaging for medical diagnostics, MeV photons for nuclear fuel detection and heritage studies, ultra-short e^- bunches for ultra-fast chemistry, synchronised Thz–laser–X-ray pulses for material science etc. Also these compact accelerators could become accessible to university groups with modest space and financial resources.

A central aspect of our R&D objectives is bringing novel accelerator technologies to first real-world applications. This focus on applications calls for the optimization of more than one beam parameter, and ensures that the accelerator research is made available to scientists in other disciplines.

4.7 Delivery Plan

4.7.1 Summary Delivery Plan and Resources

The proposed work on plasma and laser accelerators shall be implemented and delivered in a three pillar approach, as visualised in Figure 4.1. A feasibility and pre-CDR study will investigate the potential of plasma and laser accelerators for particle physics. A second pillar relies on technical demonstrations in experiments aimed at particle physics. A third pillar connects to the work on novel accelerators in other science fields and for other applications.

The delivery plan defines a minimal plan that executes work in seven work packages and will provide nine deliverables by end of 2025. This plan equires additional financial resources for 147 FTE-years and 3.15 MCHF of investment. Additional in-kind contributions will be provided and are specified. The minimal plan connects to work and particle physics relevant milestones in 12 ongoing projects and facilities. Beyond the minimal plan, the expert panel has bundled four additional high priority R&D activities into an aspirational plan. The aspirational plan would require additional resources for 147 FTE-years and 35.5 MCHF of investment, beyond the minimal plan. We provide suggestions on organizational aspects in this report. Work package leaders and institutional participation shall be determined in a project setup phase. We note, that adequate facilities, sufficient critical mass and expertise has been considered and are available for the proposed work topics.

4.7.2 Minimal Plan

Given the status of the field, a coordinated feasiblity and pre-CDR study is defined as the highest priority. The proposed study will investigate the detailed case studies defined in Section 4.6.3 in a mostly theoretical and simulation-based setup. The proposed advanced accelerator methods (LWFA, PWFA and DLA/THz) will be simulated for the same case studies. In addition, several ideas at an early stage, e.g. for positron acceleration and staging of many accelerators, will be developed in design and simulation work to provide reliable predictions of the achievable system performance.

The minimal plan includes four experimental milestones, explained in technical detail in Section 4.6.4, and aim to present technical progress by the next European strategy update in 2025, and to foster collaboration with the researchers in the field. These four highest priority milestones have been selected by the expert panel out of 56 technical milestones, proposed by the community through townhall meetings.

4.7.2.1 Work Packages and Tasks in the Minimal Plan

The work shall be organised in seven work packages, as listed in Table 4.4.

4.7.2.2 Deliverables in the Minimal Plan

The work packages shall provide deliverables, as listed in Table 4.5. The experimental milestones were selected due to their immediate relevance for high energy physics. In particular, we note that we lack sufficient scientific studies and data to exclude the applicability of any of the novel accelerating technologies for high energy physics at this point in time.

4.7.2.3 Resources for the Minimal Plan

Particle physics focused R&D on plasma and laser accelerators will require significant funding. It will profit strongly from facilities and groups that have been set up over the recent years in Europe, many funded from other science fields. However, the existing groups have fixed deliverables and cannot absorb the additional work load arising from particle physics focused R&D. The required additional resources are summarised in Table 4.6 and Figure 4.12, also listing in-kind support.

In-kind contributions should ensure coordination of WP COOR (coordination of plasma and laser accelerators for particle physics) and WP LIAI (liaison to other science fields). The host lab for the feasibility and pre-CDR study should provide resources for overall coordination (WP FEAS.1) of this important theoretical and simulation effort.

We note that within the minimal plan a feasibility and pre-CDR study (WP FEAS) is of highest priority and should be fully implemented under any funding scenario.

Table 4.4: Work packages and tasks in the minimal plan.

WP	Task	Short Description	Invest Personnel
COOR		Coordination Plasma and Laser Accelerators for Particle Physics	—
FEAS		Feasibility and pre-CDR Study on Plasma and Laser Accelerators for Particle Physics	300 kCHF 75 FTEy
	FEAS.1	Coordination	
	FEAS.2	Plasma Theory and Numerical Tools	
	FEAS.3	Accelerator Design, Layout and Costing	
	FEAS.4	Electron Beam Performance Reach of Advanced Technologies (Simulation Results - Comparisons)	
	FEAS.5	Positron Beam Performance Reach of Advanced Technologies (Simulation Results - Comparisons)	
	FEAS.6	Spin Polarization Reach with Advanced Accelerators	
	FEAS.7	Collider Interaction Point Issues and Opportunities with Advanced Accelerators	
	FEAS.8	Reach in Yearly Integrated Luminosity with Advanced Accelerators	
	FEAS.9	Intermediate steps, early particle physics experiments and test facilities	
	FEAS.10	Study WG: Particle Physics with Advanced Accelerators	
HRRP		Experimental demonstration: High-Repetition Rate Plasma Accelerator Module	1200 kCHF 30 FTEy
HEFP		Experimental demonstration: High-Efficiency, Electron-Driven Plasma Accelerator Module with High beam Quality	800 kCHF 10 FTEy
DLTA		Experimental demonstration: Scaling of DLA/THz Accelerators	500 kCHF 16 FTEy
SPIN		Experimental demonstration: Spin-Polarised Beams in Plasma Accelerators	350 kCHF 16 FTEy
LIAI		Liaison to Ongoing Advanced Accelerator Projects, Facilities, Other Science Fields	—

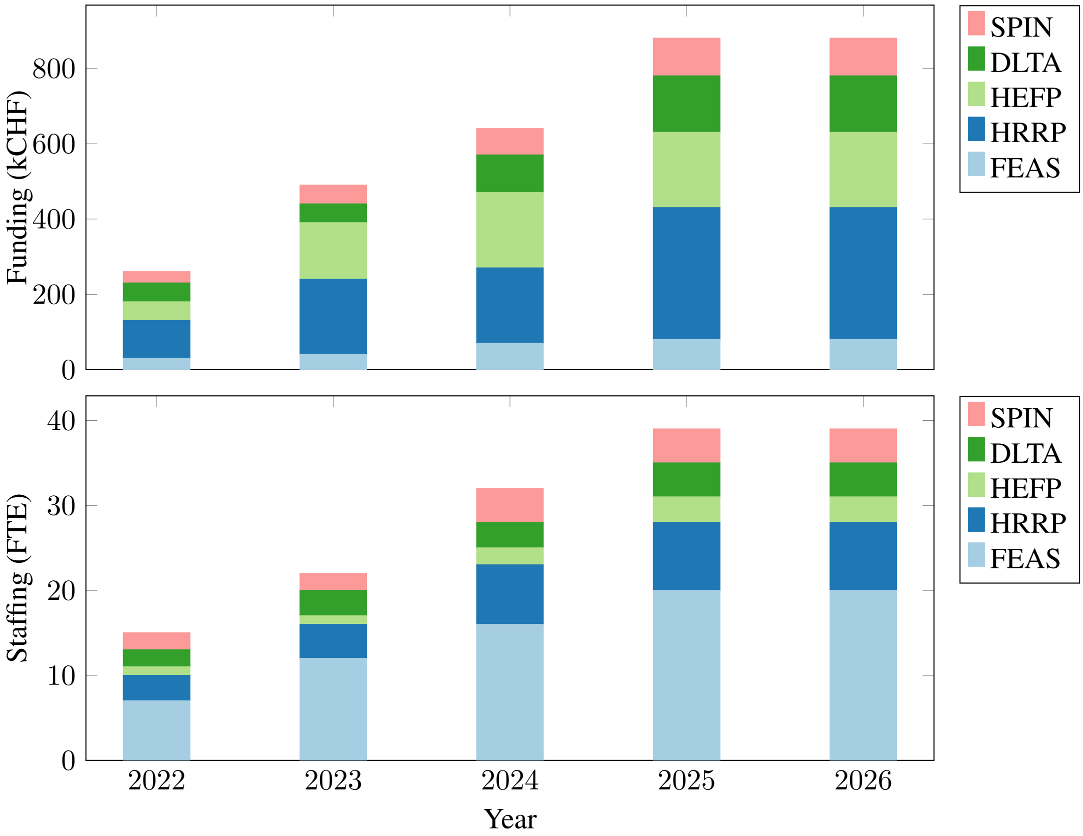


Fig. 4.12: Resource-loaded schedule

Table 4.5: Deliverables in the minimal plan.

	Due	Title	Description
DEL2.1	6/24	Report Electron High Energy Case Study	Plasma accelerator from 175 GeV to 190 GeV, including full lattice, in/out-coupling, all magnetic elements, correctors, diagnostics, collective effects, synchrotron radiation, estimate of realistic performance, estimate of realistic footprint, estimate of realistic benefits in cost and size, understanding of scaling with beam energy for different technologies (laser-driven, electron-driven, proton-driven, DLA/THz).
DEL2.2	6/24	Physics Case of an Advanced Collider	Report from common study group with particle physicists on physics cases of interest at the energy frontier ($e^+ - e^-$ collider, $\gamma\gamma$) and at lower beam energies ($e^- p$ collider, dark matter search, ...).
DEL2.3	6/25	Report Positron High Energy Case Study	Equivalent to 2024 report on electron accelerator (see above).
DEL2.4	6/25	Report Low Energy Study Cases for Electrons and Positrons	Assessing the low energy regime around 15-50 GeV, achievable performance, foot print and cost, schemes and designs for first particle physics experiments with novel accelerators, needed R&D demonstration topics for low energy design and needed test facilities. Includes studies on a low energy, high charge plasma injector.
DEL2.5	12/25	Pre-CDR and Collider Feasibility Report	Input for decision point of European strategy, brings together work/reports achieved (see earlier). Complemented by report on Technical Readiness Levels (TRL report) for collider components and systems. Comparison of performance and readiness for different technologies (laser, electron, proton driven plasma, DLA/THz) for a possible focus on the most promising path for particle physics. Design of a staging experiment. Report on intermediate steps and need for a dedicated facility. Project plan for a CDR of an advanced collider.
DEL3.1	12/25	High-Repetition Rate Plasma Accelerator Module	At least 1 kHz characterised, robust lifetime ($> 10^9$ shots), only the plasma cell, without full repetition rate beam test, include cooling and power handling assessment. Long-term goal: 15 kHz repetition rate.
DEL4.1	12/25	High-Efficiency, Electron-Driven Plasma Accelerator Module with High beam Quality	Beam demonstration of high efficiency PWFA module. 40% transfer efficiency from stored energy beam driver to stored energy beam witness
DEL5.1	12/25	Scaling of DLA/THz Accelerators	Staged dielectric laser/THz accelerator with 10 MeV energy gain, with transverse and longitudinal focusing with at least two stages. Long-term goal: Massively scale-able design printed on a chip.
DEL6.1	12/25	Spin-Polarised Beams in Plasma Accelerators	Demonstration of polarised electron beams from plasma with 10...20% polarization fraction. Long-term goal: Polarization 85%.

Table 4.6: Integrated resources for the minimal plan.

WP	Task integrated resources			In-kind contributions	
	FTEy	MCHF	G-core-h	FTEy	MCHF
COOR	0	0	0	2.5	0
FEAS	75	0.3	1.6	75	0
HRRP	30	1.2	0	3	0
HEFP	10	0.8	0	1	0
DLTA	16	0.5	0	2	0
SPIN	16	0.35	0	2	0
LIAI	0	0	0	2.5	0
Sum	*147*	*3.15*	*1.6*	*88*	*0*

4.7.2.4 Facilities with Adequate Infrastructure for Work Packages HRRP, HEFP, DLTA and SPIN

The work packages HRRP, HEFP, DLTA and SPIN address important technical deliverables as part of the minimal plan. As written before, the feasibility of those deliverables has been assessed by checking that adequate facilities (see Table 4.7), critical mass of groups and expertise are available to deliver on time and on budget. This shall not preempt a proper project setup phase that invites additional groups and facilities to join the required work.

4.7.2.5 Notes on Simulation Requirements

The proposed study will be largely based on theoretical and numerical explorations. Emittance preservation in a plasma accelerator is possible by matching the witness bunch transverse size to its emittance in the plasma focusing force. The main bottle-neck for these simulations comes, precisely, from the need to accurately resolve the witness transverse profile. Hence, fully self-consistent three-dimensional simulations of a single 15 GeV stage of 10 nm emittance witness beams are probably not possible today in practice. It then becomes important to focus on reduced models (e.g. quasi-static, boosted frames), reduced dimensions (e.g. 2D) and other approximations, e.g. reduced beam propagation models [120] to perform those simulations. Modeling a single plasma stage up to 15 GeV, considering a witness bunch with 10 nm normalised emittance, and in 2D, requires ~ 5 million core-hours. These requirements can be substantially relaxed by considering a 100 nm normalised emittance witness bunch. In that case, simulations would take less than a thousand core hours, which potentially enables modeling of several consecutive stages, for example.

Key physics aspects can also be investigated by focusing on specific sections of the plasma to reduce computational costs. Consider emittance growth in plasma-vacuum transitions, for instance. Here, simulations could be setup to focus on the plasma-vacuum transition only. Other approximations could rely on modeling dynamics under prescribed fields. In summary, modeling specific sections of a single

Table 4.7: Facilities for work packages HRRP, HEFP, DLTA and SPIN. Non-European facilities are listed in *italics.*

Work Package	Facilities
HRRP	DESY, Oxford, INFN-LNF, CERN, *LBNL,* ...
HEFP	INFN-LNF, DESY, *SLAC,* ...
DLTA	PSI, FAU Erlangen, University Hamburg, DESY, *Stanford, UCLA,* ... (ACHIP Laboratories), Cockcroft, ...
SPIN	DESY, FZJ, ...

Table 4.8: Technical challenges addressed in ongoing projects and facilities.

Technical Challenge	Facility with Relevant Milestones
Efficiency and small energy spread at increased bunch charges	*FACET-II,* FLASHForward, SPARC-Lab, ACHIP Laboratories, BELLA, HZDR, CALA, APOLLON, PALLAS
Preservation of small beam emittances	AWAKE, SPARC-Lab, FACET-II, BELLA, ACHIP Laboratories, FLASHForward, SCAPA, CLARA
Staging of multiple advanced accelerator modules	*BELLA,* CLARA, AWAKE, PETRA-IV Injector, EuPRAXIA
High repetition rate, heat load, stability and availability	ACHIP Laboratories, KALDERA, EuPRAXIA, *BELLA,* FLASHForward, PETRA-IV Injector
Positrons	*FACET-II,* Queens University

collider stage, and even coupling between two full collider stages appear possible, at least under certain approximations.

The simulation of DLA and THz accelerators appear feasible as well, because the accelerating structures are stationary. Certain aspects, however, merit special attention: the simulation of many million cells, the sub-nanometer emittance growth budget and the effect of surface roughness and fabrication tolerances.

4.7.2.6 Organizational Aspects

We envisage that the minimal plan and its work packages will be organised similar to an EU project with a steering committee, a governing board and regular reporting of scientific progress and funding. The deliverables and work packages defined above are supported by a large number of facilities and groups, that provide the necessary infrastructure, critical mass and expertise for executing the work within the foreseen resource envelope and timeline. Work package leaders and institutional involvements are not detailed here in order to not preempt a proper project setup phase with open calls for participation and a negotiation phase. The most suited and interested groups and facilities shall be selected in the process, also taking into account the level of in-kind contributions. Last not least, the project shall be coordinated and integrated with US and Asian effort, to the maximum possible extent.

The feasibility and pre-CDR study (Work Package FEAS) will need a host lab from particle physics that acts as project coordinator and as central hub. As indicated in the work package and task list, the minimal plan requires a physics case study group and support from particle physicists.

4.7.2.7 Integration and Outreach: Milestones at Existing Facilities and Ongoing Projects

The field of high-gradient plasma and laser accelerators consists of multiple groups at universities and research laboratories, which perform research with different applications in mind, funded by various funding sources. The minimal plan connects to those activities through its Work Package LIAI, addressing the goals of integration and outreach. Below we list some of the major technical challenges identified in Section 4.6 and ongoing projects and facilities with relevant milestones in this R&D area.

In the following, we list major milestones (only if they are relevant for particle physics developments) for several existing projects and facilities in some more detail. They connect to Work Package LIAI of the minimal plan. It is noted that those projects and facilities are funded from other fields and sources. The US efforts are funded mainly by particle physics inside DOE. We note the importance of those milestones for the progress of the field and for demonstrating several feasibility issues for particle physics usages. The expert panel therefore recommends full funding of those projects and facilities.

Table 4.9: International programmes and facilities. Funding line states the present funding situation and is not a funding request included in the minimal plan.

<table>
<tr><th colspan="2">AWAKE (CERN)</th></tr>
<tr><td>External funding</td><td>26 MCHF (CERN) + 11.4 MCHF (in-kind collab.) Cost and schedule review end of 2021</td></tr>
<tr><td>Milestones for 2025</td><td>Demonstrate the seeding of the proton bunch self-modulation process with an electron bunch. Optimise the process of generation of wakefields using a plasma density step to maintain large wakefields at the GV/m level and accelerate electrons to multi-GeV energies.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Milestones envisioned beyond 2025</td><td>Demonstrate the acceleration of an electron witness bunch to 10 GeV in 10 m with control of the incoming normalised emittance at the 10 μm level and percent energy spread. Develop scalable plasma sources 50–100 m long, and demonstrate acceleration in a scalable plasma source (helicon or discharge) to 50–100 GeV energies.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Access modalities</td><td>Collaboration-based access. In operation.</td></tr>
<tr><th colspan="2">EuPRAXIA (European ESFRI project)</th></tr>
<tr><td>External funding</td><td>569 M€ (110 M€ secured)</td></tr>
<tr><td>Milestones for 2025</td><td>Status report TDR for plasma electron accelerator, FEL and positron user facility. Interim report from EU funded preparatory phase project (laser-based site, legal model, financial model, access rules, innovation model).</td></tr>
<tr><td>Milestones envisioned beyond 2025</td><td>2029: Electron beam-driven EuPRAXIA FEL at Frascati in operation with users. 2030: EuPRAXIA laser-driven facility operates at several GeV with users. EuPRAXIA laser at 800nm wavelength (few kW) [3]: pulse energy 50-100J, repetition rate 20-100Hz, pulse duration 50-60fs, energy stability (RMS) 0.6–1%, pointing stability (RMS) 0.1 μrad. Two stage, 5 GeV HQ e- bunch, FEL operation.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Access modalities</td><td>Proposal driven and excellence based access to the EuPRAXIA user facility under European rules and standards. In construction at Frascati site.</td></tr>
<tr><th colspan="2">International ACHIP Programme:
ARIES (DESY), FAU Erlangen, Pegasus (UCLA), Stanford, SwissFEL (PSI)</th></tr>
<tr><td>External funding</td><td>ACHIP funding (4 M$/year) from the Gordon and Betty Moore Foundation will end in 2022. Additional funding has been granted to individual university groups.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Milestones for 2025</td><td>Control of transverse & longitudinal phase space in dielectric laser accelerators; Staging of multiple DLA/THz structures, preserving normalised emittance; Acceleration high-reprate (>100GHz) bunch trains [10 bunches at 10ps spacing, 10pC/bunch]. 10-MW 100GHz gryotron source at >50% efficiency; 100-MW 400GHz laser-THz source. Inverse design of dielectric structure on a chip with efficient laser coupling.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Milestones envisioned beyond 2025</td><td>100 MeV energy gain in stageable structures; mm-wave structures manufactured for 1 metre of (staged) acceleration</td></tr>
<tr><td>Access modalities</td><td>National labs are typically very open to international collaborations. Some of the facilities are part of the ARIES trans-national access programme. Access to university groups is typically decided on a case-to-case basis. In operation.</td></tr>
</table>

Table 4.10: National programmes and facilities in Europe. Funding line states the present funding situation and is not a funding request included in the minimal plan.

APOLLON (France)	
External funding	60 . . . 100 M€
Milestones for 2025	Feasibility study of LWFA electron source at 100pC level, tunable energy range up to GeV, physics study of positron source from LWFA electrons
Milestones envisioned beyond 2025	none scheduled [potential for demonstration of 10 GeV LWF acceleration module, and 2 stage multi-GeV experiment, effective implementation is limited by insufficient laser beam availability for this type of program]
Access modalities	Proposal-driven access. In operation.
CLARA (UK)	
External funding	£33.4 M (£27.9 M secured)
Milestones for 2025	2023: CLARA Phase 2 + FEBE beamline construction completed. 2024: Beam commissioning and first user access period completed. 2024-2027: user-led science programme with programmatic access: 1) plasma acceleration (beam-driven wakefield, external injection laser-driven wakefield) and structure wakefield acceleration; 2) post-acceleration beam capture and 6D phase-space characterisation; 3) tailored multi-bunch delivery to FEBE for beam-driven acceleration; 4) beam-driven acceleration at 400 Hz.
Milestones envisioned beyond 2025	2027+: Demonstration of plasma-driven FEL on FEBE beamline.
Access modalities	Access by competitive application judged by a beam access panel. Transnational access will be supported. In construction.
FLASHForward (DESY, Germany)	
Milestones for 2025	Single, beam-driven plasma-booster stage with beam-quaity preservation at 0.1% energy spread, 2 µm norm. emittance, 40% overall efficiency at the 1 to 2 GeV energy level and 100 pC witness charge (FEL quality); exploration of plasma physics for the kHz to GHz repetition rate regime; development of high-average power plasma sources; active feedback / feedforward stabilization (including machine learning techniques)
Milestones envisioned beyond 2025	Booster stage average power extended to 10 kW level drive beam in ILC-like bunch pattern; application as FEL booster module for FLASH to extend photon science reach
Access modalities	Access to FLASHForward may be available through collaboration agreements. In operation.
KALDERA (DESY, Germany)	
Milestones for 2025	kW-average power drive laser for LPA; application-ready FEL-quality LPA injector: GeV-scale electron beam energy, sub-percent energy spread; active feedback/feedforward stabilization (including machine learning techniques)
Access modalities	Access to KALDERA may be available through collaboration agreements. In construction.

Table 4.11: National programmes and facilities in Europe (continued). Funding line states the present funding situation and is not a funding request included in the minimal plan.

	PALLAS (France)
External funding	5.5 M€ (3.12 M€ secured) for phase 1
Milestones for 2025	high quality laser-plasma electron injector for staging, 10 Hz, 10-50 pC, 150-250 MeV, $\leq 1\,\mu$m emittance, including advanced laser control, laser driver pointing stabilization to $< 1\,\mu$rad on $0-380$ Hz BW, and percent control of critical laser parameters; long operation test; high charge optimization test; beam active feeback and optimization (including machine learning techniques), conceptual design study for laser driven plasma acceleration stage > 1 GeV.
Milestones envisioned beyond 2025	GeV-level laser driven plasma stage module injection at 1-10 Hz (depending on budget possibilities). To be noticed: depends on large investment (building extension laser driver and plasma acceleration stage module)
Access modalities	The beam time availability should be about 20 weeks per year of beam time, if university and institute support on operation cost is maintained. Open to collaborative participation with memorandum of understanding. In construction.
	Plasma Injector for PETRA IV (DESY, Germany)
Milestones envisioned beyond 2025	6 GeV LPA PETRA-IV injector with sub-per-mille energy bandwidth-jitter-envelope, 24/7 operation, and up to 3.2 nC / s charge delivery
Access modalities	Access to the Plasma Injector for PETRA IV may be available through collaboration agreements. In design.
	SPARC-LAB (Italy)
External funding	7 M€ (6 M€ secured)
Milestones for 2025	High efficiency, electron-driven plasma accelerator module, (driven by a train of 4 drivers, with ramped bunch charge, total charge up to 300 pC, GV/m accelerating gradient, fs scale synchronization) High repetition rate plasma accelerator module (off-line capillary discharge/vacuum system characterisation at kHz repetition rate) High charge, high quality plasma accelerator module, driven by laser pulses (LWFA module with external electron bunch injection suitable to test also staging configuration with fs scale synchronization)
Milestones envisioned beyond 2025	To be defined in the framework of EuPRAXIA@SPARC-LAB collaboration
Access modalities	Collaboration-based access. In operation.

Table 4.12: National facilities in the US. Funding line states the present funding situation and is not a funding request included in the minimal plan.

BELLA (LBNL, United States)	
Milestones for 2025	Multi-GeV electron staging of two LPA modules with high coupling efficiency and emittance preservation; 10 GeV high-quality electron beams from a single stage; high brightness electron beams from laser-triggered injection; active feedback stabilization of LPA with machine learning/AI techniques; high efficiency multi-kHz lasers to the few hundred mJ level; studies of positron capture and acceleration in plasmas; demonstration of LPA-driven light sources (XUV FEL, gamma-ray Thomson source); conceptual design studies of a plasma-based colliders.
Milestones envisioned beyond 2025	High efficiency multi-kHz lasers at the J level and beyond; operation of a user facility based on multi-kHz LPA; R&D to further improve electron beam quality and stability from LPAs; positron acceleration and staging in plasmas; science experiments using LPA-driven sources of particles and photons; integrated design studies of plasma collider.
Access modalities	Access to BELLA facilities is available either through collaborative use arrangements, or via the LaserNetUS facility network. In operation.
FACET-II (SLAC, United States)	
Milestones for 2025	Single plasma stage with combined parameters: 10 GeV energy gain of witness bunch in one meter plasma, charge > 100 pC, normalised emittance preservation at few micron-rad level, percent level energy spread and more than 30% overall energy transfer from drive to witness bunch; Development of ultra-high brightness plasma-based injector with 10s nm emittance as proxy for collider level emittance beams; characterise mechanisms for emittance growth in PWFA and demonstrate mitigations; measurement of plasma target recovery time to inform maximum repetition rate in collider designs; development of single shot ML/AI virtual diagnostics for extreme beams; construction of facility upgrade to deliver 10 GeV positrons and electrons to experimental area.
Milestones envisioned beyond 2025	Commissioning of facility upgrades that deliver 10 GeV electrons and positrons to the experimental area within one plasma period for studies of electron-driven plasma acceleration of positrons.
Access modalities	National User Facility with proposal driven experimental programs and external peer review by FACET-II Program Advisory Committee. In commissioning.

4.7.3 Aspirational Plan

Particle physics requirements on luminosity impose very stringent challenges for high energy, repetition rate, bunch charge and power efficiency. While some issues are addressed already in the minimal plan and at ongoing projects and facilities, in particular in the US, additional projects would ensure the required particle physics focus and fast progress towards demonstrating collider feasibility in experiments. The aspirational plan lists four strongly recommended and highly important R&D tasks in addition to the minimal plan. Those additional projects, which are described in details in Section 4.6.5, have been selected out of the 56 proposed activities. The scalable plasma source offers a path to longer acceleration lengths, longer stages, higher beam energy and first particle physics experiments. The high charge and high quality project establishes a focused work effort on understanding the highest possible bunch charge at required low emittance, a crucial input to the achievable instantaneous luminosity. The stable electron source investigates a possible path to 15 kHz injectors, while the laser work package in the aspirational plan develops laser technology for high repetition rate and acceptable durability and lifetime.

Executing the aspirational plan in addition to the minimal plan would ensure that additional collider-relevant aspects of the research are covered and would allow a maximum rate of progress.

It is noted that the expert panel considers those activities of very high priority and endorses them fully. Required additional resources for the aspirational plan amount to a total of 35.5 MCHF and 147 FTE-years. The components of the aspirational plan are listed in Table 4.13. It is noted that depending on where the work is done, significant resources might already be available for the laser development. Further analysis is required to identify the needed add-on budget from particle physics to address collider needs (e.g. the 15 kHz repetition rate with sufficient laser component lifetime and power efficiency).

4.8 Facilities, Demonstrators and Infrastructures

4.8.1 Accelerator R&D Facilities

The ongoing R&D for advanced, high-gradient accelerators is being performed at accelerator or laser facilities that are located at research centers and universities. Access possibilities range from limited access, through collaboration-based access models to user facility operation with excellence-based access after committee review. We provide a selected list, aimed at facilities or projects with particular importance for high energy physics related research:

4.8.1.1 AWAKE (CERN, Europe)

The Advanced WAKEfield Experiment, AWAKE, at CERN is the only facility in the world using proton beams to drive plasma wakefields for electron acceleration. AWAKE is an international collaboration, with 23 member institutes world-wide and aims to bring the R&D development of proton driven plasma wakefield acceleration to a point where particle physics applications can be proposed and realised. AWAKE at CERN profits from the opportunity of being embedded in the high-energy physics laboratory,that links together the expertise from CERN's high energy physics and accelerator fields with the plasma wakefield acceleration field.

During its first run period (2016 – 2018) AWAKE demonstrated for the first time ever strong wakefields generated by a 400 GeV/c SPS proton bunch in a 10 m long Rb plasma as well as the acceleration of externally injected electrons to multi-GeV energy levels in the proton driven plasma wakefields.

AWAKE Run 2 has started in 2021 and runs for several years, staged in four phases, with the goal of demonstrating the acceleration of electrons to several GeVs while preserving the beam quality as well as the scalability of the experiment.

Table 4.13: Aspirational plan.

WP	Topic	Needed funding	Needed workforce	Milestones to be achieved by 2025	Far term goal
SCPS	Scalable plasma source	3 MCHF	17 FTEy	Several metres long prototype with required plasma density and stability	10s to 100s metres of plasma source
HCPL	High-charge, high-quality plasma accelerator module driven by laser pulses	6.5 MCHF	30 FTEy	Detailed specification of the parameters for a self-consistent demo remain to be finalised	Accelerator module with 1 nC high quality beam (outcome feasibility study)
SESP	Stable low-emittance electron source	4 MCHF	20 FTEy	Electron beam extracted with 50-250 MeV, 10-100 Hz, sub-micron emittance, 30-100 pC	15 kHz, >500 pC, <100nm emittance, fs bunch length, sub % energy spread
HRLA	High-rep rate, high peak power laser	22 MCHF	80 FTEy	Demonstration of kW average power (e.g. 100Hz, 10J, <100fs or 1kHz, 1J , <100fs or another combination/scheme) Ti:sapp laser pulse	15 kHz rep rate, >100 Tera-Watt, 30% wall plug efficiency
Sum		35.5 MCHF	147 FTEy		

4.8.1.2 *EuPRAXIA – European Plasma Research Accelerator with Excellence in Applications (European ESFRI project)*

The EuPRAXIA consortium has formed in 2015 to design and construct a distributed European Plasma Accelerator facility with excellence in applications. A conceptual design report was completed at end of 2019 [9] and the project was placed on ESFRI roadmap in 2021 after a vigorous application and selection process [121], involving support of several European governments. Presently the consortium includes 50 organisations from fifteen countries as Members and Observers. EuPRAXIA with its large-scale consortium will advance critical accelerator R&D on plasma accelerators in a coordinated, European approach. It will continue bringing together existing European infrastructures in this domain, it will establish first pilot applications for plasma accelerators, it will strengthen the links to the important European laser industry, and it will build two scientific flagship projects for start of operation by the end of the 2020s. One construction site will be in the metropolitan area of Rome in Italy and will deliver critical and much needed photon science capabilities for research into materials, bacteria, viruses and health for this area. The laser-driven plasma accelerator site of EuPRAXIA will be decided in 2023 among various candidates. The high-tech EuPRAXIA innovation project can thus drive scientific advance in Europe with medium electron beam energies and can contribute to a sustainable economical development with highly qualified jobs and possible spin-off companies, while being a critical technological stepping stone to future particle physics colliders based on plasma acceleration.

4.8.1.3 SPARC-LAB (Italy)

SPARC-LAB (Sources for Plasma Accelerators and Radiation Compton with Lasers and Beams) is a test and training facility devoted to Advanced Accelerator Research and Development. It was born from the integration of a high brightness photo-injector, able to produce high quality electron beams up to 170 MeV energy with high peak current (> 1 kA) and low emittance (<2 µm), and of a high power laser (> 200 TW), able to deliver ultra-short laser pulses (<30 fs). A plasma interaction chamber for PWFA experiments, placed at the end of the linac, is fully equipped with diagnostics, both transverse and longitudinal, based on Electro-Optical sampling and THz radiation, with a H2 plasma discharge capillary and permanent quadrupole magnets for beam matching in and out from the plasma. At the end of the linac a diagnostics and matching section allows to characterise the 6D electron beam phase space and to match the beam to the downstream undulator chain for FEL experiments. During summer 2021 the first demonstration of SASE and Seeded lasing of an FEL driven by a PWFA module has been achieved. A second beam line for plasma acceleration experiments in the LWFA configuration with external injection of high quality electron beams will be ready by the end of 2022. The SPARC-LAB test facility is expected to enable LNF in the next five years to establish a solid background in plasma accelerator physics and to train a young generation of scientists to meet all the challenges addressed by the EuPRAXIA@SPARC-LAB project.

4.8.1.4 CLARA (United Kingdom)

The Compact Linear Accelerator for Research and Applications (CLARA) is an ultra-bright electron beam test facility being developed at STFC Daresbury Laboratory. CLARA is a unique facility for user-led experiments across a wide range of disciplines, including advanced and novel accelerator concepts. A dedicated full-energy beam exploitation (FEBE) beamline has been designed and incorporated into the facility allowing user access while the accelerator is running. FEBE incorporates two consecutive large-scale vacuum chambers, beam diagnostics, and functionality for 100 TW laser-electron beam interactions (laser funding being sought). First beam for commissioning on FEBE is expected in 2023.

4.8.1.5 PALLAS (France)

The PALLAS project is aiming to develop 10 Hz, 150–250 MeV, $\geq$ 30 pC, 1 µm, high quality compact laser-plasma injector prototype for staging with stability, control and reliability comparable to RF conventional accelerator. The laser plasma injector is designed as a test facility for laser-plasma based technology. The project focuses on the study and implementation of technological solutions to increase the performance of laser-plasma injectors, particularly in terms of repetition rate and stability at an intermediate average power and repetition rate allowing immediate testing with state of the art available laser driver.

4.8.1.6 KALDERA (DESY, Germany)

KALDERA is DESY's flagship project to develop a laser-plasma accelerator driven by a 100 TW laser at 1 kHz repetition rate. This repetition rate will enable active stabilization and feedback of key laser parameters, providing a clear path to competitive FEL-quality electron beams of sub-percent energy spread energy stability. Since established modern technologies, such as room-temperature or super-conducting RF acceleration, operate at repetition rates well above the 100 Hz level, increasing the high repetition of laser-plasma accelerators is necessary to transform laser-plasma acceleration into a competitive technology. Particle physics applications will benefit in several ways from KALDERA. Although the domain of KALDERA is primarily in photon science, it will demonstrate that plasma acceleration can act as a reliable driver for applications. Furthermore, KALDERA will require developments such as kW-capable targetry, kHz-ready novel beam optics, e.g. active plasma lenses and novel diagnostic tools.

4.8.1.7 FLASHForward (DESY, Germany)

FLASHForward is an electron-beam driven plasma wakefield accelerator, which makes use of the beam from the FLASH soft X-Ray FEL facility. The goal for the next five years is to develop a single, beam-driven plasma-booster stage with longitudinal- and transverse-beam-quality preservation at the level of 0.1% energy spread and 2 µm normalised emittance, respectively. These beams will be accelerated to the 1-2 GeV energy range, and are expected to be of sufficient quality to drive a free-electron laser. Furthermore, a goal of 40% overall energy-transfer efficiency is set. Beyond the timeline of the next European strategy update, the milestones of FLASHForward will be centred around maximising brightness and luminosity. Specifically, the advances in plasma-source technology for operation at high repetition rate, as well as the physical limits characterised through experimentation, will be leveraged to demonstrate a plasma-booster stage with $\mathcal{O}(10\,\text{kW})$ drive beam average power accelerated with a bunch pattern suitable for utilisation at a future particle collider.

4.8.1.8 Plasma Injector for PETRA IV (DESY, Germany)

The Plasma Injector for PETRA IV (PIP4) project explores the possibility of realising a compact and cost-effective injector system for the PETRA IV storage ring, based on a LPWA. The challenge for a plasma-based injector to feed the storage ring at its nominal energy of 6 GeV, at a maximum charge injection rate of 3.2 nC/s during the initial filling. It is anticipated that an LPA injector reaching 6 GeV and sufficient charge rate within the required energy bandwidth will require a sub-PW-class laser system at > 5 Hz repetition rate, operating over 20 cm long plasma targets with enhanced control over the witness beam injection event and laser-guiding capabilities.

4.8.1.9 ACHIP Laboratories (International programme)

Research on dielectric laser and terahertz acceleration is performed by many relatively small groups at universities and research laboratories, as a relatively small initial investment is necessary for fundamental research on this topic. Many of the groups working on DLA are united in the *Accelerator-on-a-Chip International Program* (ACHIP), funded by the Gordon and Betty Moore Foundation. Additional grants from universities and national governments fund research on THz acceleration, and they will extend research on DLA beyond the ACHIP funding.

4.8.1.10 BELLA (LBNL, United States)

The BELLA (Berkeley Lab Laser Accelerator) Center focuses on the development and application of laser-plasma accelerators (LPAs) for future plasma based colliders as well as for light sources and other applications. It houses three state of the art laser systems. Commissioned in 2013, the 1 Hz BELLA PW laser recently set an 8 GeV acceleration record in just 20 cm. A second beamline will enable experiments on multi-GeV staging as well as other techniques such as laser formed waveguides and positron acceleration. In 2018, two 100 TW class laser systems were commissioned. The first focuses on a compact gamma ray source via Thomson scattering, with other experiments through LaserNetUS. The second powers a beamline towards an EUV free electron laser. Both support synergistic experiments important to future colliders including advanced injectors, phase space manipulation and beam characterization. Short pulse fiber laser combining is being developed to provide the average power, repetition rate, and pulse durations required for future drivers of LPWAs.

4.8.1.11 FACET-II (SLAC, United States)

FACET-II is a National User Facility at SLAC National Accelerator Laboratory providing 10 GeV electron beams with µm-rad normalised emittance and peak currents exceeding 100 kA . FACET-II operates as a National User Facility while engaging a broad User community to develop and execute experimental proposals that advance the development of plasma wakefield acceleration aligned with the goals of the

2016 US DOE Advanced Accelerator Development Strategy Report. Phased upgrades to FACET-II are expected to provide high-intensity positron bunches around 2025, a capability unique in the world, to experimentally investigate the optimal technique for high-gradient positron acceleration in plasma.

4.8.1.12 Other Facilities

We note that other groups or facilities not mentioned here also contribute to the development of original ideas and closely collaborate with various of the described facilities and projects. Several of them are mentioned and listed under the relevant work topics and deliverables.

4.8.2 Possible Advanced Accelerator Test Facility for HEP-Specific Aspects

At present time the expert panel believes that the immediate focus must be put on a common, coordinated pre-CDR study for high energy physics applications of high-gradient plasma and laser accelerators, as well as R&D on selected technical milestones. For the coming years we will rely on the existing national, European and international facilities for performing the proposed R&D work.

The study will be the theoretical and simulation-based demonstrator of feasibility for an advanced e^+e^- collider with an relevant particle physics case. In its deliverable report, the study will also specify possible new facilities or demonstrator projects needed to make progress towards a collider.

4.9 Collaboration and Organization

4.9.1 Collaborative Activities

The field is driven by a rapidly growing, diverse and young community with strong links to universities, research centers and industry. There are growing links to users in the fields of Free Electron Lasers, ultrafast electron diffraction, health and lower energy particle physics experiments. The community has grown together in the EU-funded EuroNNAc network [6], in the ALEGRO activity [7], the AWAKE collaboration [8] and in the EuPRAXIA conceptual design study for a European plasma accelerator facility [9].

It is important to grow links to the users in HEP in parallel. Only with support from HEP can the promise of a more compact and more cost-effective collider be realised on the 30-year time scale, opening timely new energy-frontier reach for particle physics.

4.9.2 Connections to Other Fields

There are a large number of connections between research in high-gradient plasma and laser accelerators and other fields of research and industry. These connections are resulting in fruitful collaborative activities:

Free Electron Lasers and X-Ray Science – Free electron lasers and other sources of coherent X-Rays demand very high-brightness beams. As such, scientists have long sought to use electrons from plasma wakefield accelerators for this application. In particular, the short pulse length offers possibilities in time-resolved X-ray studies.

Beam Instrumentation and Diagnostics – Novel accelerators will require novel diagnostics concepts. A close collaboration with scientists working on instrumentation for free electron lasers is resulting in the development of diagnostics for ultra-short and ultra-small electron beams.

Laser Development – Work on laser development for wakefield accelerators should be organised with the following priorities: 1) Delivered by commercial partnership with national laboratories, probably Ti:sapp based laser technology. 2) Parallel research across possible laser media and technologies carried out at university and national labs for $>$ 5yrs, with a selection of one or two options to develop to the 10J, 1kHz level taken forward at international collaboration level involving industry. 3) Selection of technology choice for HEP laser driver, developed by international collaboration between industry and

national labs.
High Performance Computing – Simulation and theory activities, already well developed in plasma-based acceleration physics, should be organised as a beam physics team, with the target to master the design, the commissioning and the operation of a plasma-based accelerator intended for HEP applications. Three aspects should be targeted: a) Beam physics should be managed by a single team with double expertise in plasma acceleration and transport line, to be able to perfectly master the particle beam from injection to IP; b) Strong collaboration between simulators and experimenters should be set up to check consistency between simulations and measured results, not on one operating point but on several ones and also around them; c) Simulation codes should be able to support all the phases of an accelerator development, especially by offering a quick mode (envelope approximation) intended for massive optimizations in the design phase, a detailed mode for describing the most realistic possible the acceleration physics during the operation phase, and an intermediate mode allowing to compute quickly small deviations to ideal configurations. Ultimately, the beam physics team should set up a numerical model (avatar) of the accelerator with which the latter will be operated.
Electron Imaging and Diffraction – The development of structures that couple a laser field directly to an electron beam is opening new possibilities in electron imaging and ultrafast electron diffraction experiments at attosecond time scales.
Advanced Manufacturing – The manufacturing of dielectric laser accelerators is closely linked to the methods used in the semiconductor industry, ranging from electron beam lithography for first prototypes to photolithography in standard MEMS and CMOS processes that are already explored. In addition, there are important applications of free-form manufacturing techniques to building prototypes of plasma cells and terahertz accelerators.
X Band High Gradient RF Structures – A strong link exists in the usage of compact and highly accurate RF structures. For example, X band accelerating structures are used for building compact electron beam drivers, for example in EuPRAXIA and in AWAKE.
Machine Learning / Artificial Intelligence – The field of plasma and laser accelerators is exploring the use of machine learning (ML) and other methods in artificial intelligence (AI). To name only a few, inverse design algorithms are used to design couplers and dielectric structures for acceleration [34] and radiation generation [122]; genetic algorithms are used to apply adaptive feedback [123], and bayesian optimization is used to optimize a LWFA [124].

4.9.3 Conferences and Workshops

The field communicates through the biannual EAAC conference with up to 250 participants. EAAC is a European and EU funded effort of the advanced accelerator community and is one of the world-leading discussion fora. The community presents and discusses results also at accelerator conferences like IPAC, FLS and AAC, as well as at laser conferences.

4.9.4 Training and Human Resources

Training – To train the next generation of accelerator scientists, the advanced accelerator community has established a close collaboration with universities. Students perform Bachelor's, Master's and PhD theses in accelerator physics, both at their universities, as well as at the laser and accelerator laboratories. Summer student internships give students an additional opportunity to gain some first experience in the field. Education in novel accelerator concepts is taught in courses at universities, as well as in specialised schools. In many cases, the students can use the ECTS credits they earn in these classes for their degree.

Collaboration with Industry – A strong connection between the European laser industry and the groups performing research on novel accelerators is driving innovations in pulse length and longitudinal pulse shaping, energy efficiency, the synchronization of the laser pulses and the generation of terahertz frequencies. The companies are directly involved in the research, they send their scientists into the research groups and they accept internships by the students. This close collaboration benefits both sides, and it gives students an opportunity for employment after they finish their degrees. The universities and research laboratories hold a number of patents relevant to particle acceleration and beam manipulation, which can be licensed if there is an interest. Structure-based dielectric laser and terahertz accelerators have an additional collaboration with manufacturing companies, both in lithography and in three-dimensional free-form manufacturing on the micrometer scale [125].

Communication and Outreach – The primary method of communication of our research is in peer-reviewed scientific journals. Additionally, we are supported by the outreach and media groups at the universities and research laboratories in bringing novel accelerator research to the public.

Open Access – The scientific results of the proposed work will be published with an open access license, to allow a broad availability of the research. Software developed for the modeling of the beam dynamics will be published as Open Source Software (OSS), and hardware developed in the framework of this program will be put under an Open Hardware license.

Facility Access Facility access is an important aspect of collaboration, especially between research centers and university groups. The access rules are strongly developing towards facilitated access modes and have been included in facility descriptions in Section 4.7.2.7.

Diversity – Diverse teams have shown to perform better in innovative tasks, thus we are aiming at maximising the diversity in our teams. While hiring for the proposed projects will be done by the universities and research laboratories, we will make sure that people responsible for hiring students and research associates are aware of this topic, and we will communicate best-practice examples within our community. The field attracts young and brilliant students from all over Europe and the world. We note that the field has several women in leadership positions.

4.10 Conclusion

The field of high-gradient plasma and laser accelerators offer a perspective towards facilities with potentially significantly reduced size and cost and defines an alternative path to large scale colliders. Though presently at an earlier development stage than the other fields, first facilities in photon and material science become feasible and are in preparation. This also opens the possibility of near term, compact and cost-effective particle physics experiments that open new physics reach and support precision studies, and the search for new particles.

The expert panel has defined a long term R&D roadmap towards a compact collider (earliest at the end of the 2040s) with attractive intermediate experiments and studies. A delivery plan for this R&D has been developed and includes work packages, deliverables, a minimal plan, connections to ongoing projects and an aspirational plan. The panel recommend strongly that particle physics supports this work with increased resources in order to prepare the long term future and sustainability of this field.

Acknowledgments

We express our thanks and sincere appreciation to the 48 scientists who presented their input in talks at our townhall meetings, as well as the 231 scientists who participated to the consultation and roadmap process. Also, the written inputs provided to the expert panel are greatly acknowledged. The list of speakers and talks are available at the INDICO websites of the 4 townhall meetings [16–19].

References

[1] A. J. Gonsalves et al. Petawatt laser guiding and electron beam acceleration to 8 gev in a laser-heated capillary discharge waveguide. *Phys. Rev. Lett.*, 122:084801, Feb 2019.

[2] I Blumenfeld et al. Energy doubling of 42 GeV electrons in a metre-scale plasma wakefield accelerator. *Nature*, 445:741–744, 2007.

[3] E. Adli et al. Acceleration of electrons in the plasma wakefield of a proton bunch. *Nature*, 561(7723):363–367, 2018.

[4] Wentao Wang et al. Free-electron lasing at 27 nanometres based on a laser wakefield accelerator. *Nature*, 595(7868):516–520, 2021.

[5] R. Pompili et al. First lasing of a free-electron laser with a compact beam-driven plasma accelerator. *submitted to Nature*, 2021.

[6] R. W. Assmann et al. Final report european network for novel accelerators euronnac and eaac. *Web Site ARIES EU Project CERN, D5.2*, Apr 2021.

[7] B. Cros and P. Muggli. Alegro input for the 2020 update of the european strategy. 2019.

[8] E. Gschwendtner et al. AWAKE, The Advanced Proton Driven Plasma Wakefield Acceleration Experiment at CERN. *Nucl. Instrum. Meth. A*, 829:76–82, 2016.

[9] R. W. Assmann, M. K. Weikum, et al. Eupraxia conceptual design report. *The European Physical Journal Special Topics*, 229(24):3675–4284, 2020.

[10] D. Cesar, S. Custodio, J. Maxson, P. Musumeci, K. Shen, E. Threlkeld, R.J. England, A. Hanuka, I.V. Makasyuk, E.A. Peralta, K.P. Wootton, and Z. Wu. High-field nonlinear optical response and phase control in a dielectric laser accelerator. *Communications Physics*, 1:46, 2018.

[11] R. Shiloh, J Illmer, T. Chlouba, P. Yousefi1, N. Schönenberger, U. Niedermayer, A. Mittelbach, and P. Hommelhoff. Electron phase-space control in photonic chip-based particle acceleration. *Nature*, 597:498, 2021.

[12] A. Edelen, N. Neveu, M. Frey, Y. Huber, C. Mayes, and A. Adelmann. Machine learning for orders of magnitude speedup in multiobjective optimization of particle accelerator systems. *Phys. Rev. Acc. Beams*, 23:044601, 2020.

[13] E. Adli et al. A Beam Driven Plasma-Wakefield Linear Collider:From Higgs Factory to Multi-TeV. *SLAC-PUB-15426*, 2013.

[14] C. B. Schroeder et al. Physics considerations for laser-plasma linear colliders. *Phys. Rev. ST Accel. Beams*, 13:101301, Oct 2010.

[15] R. J. England et al. Dielectric laser accelerators. *Rev. Mod. Phys.*, 86:1337–1389, Dec 2014.

[16] 1st townhall meeting: CERN indico. `https://indico.cern.ch/event/1017117/`, 2021.

[17] 2nd townhall meeting: CERN indico. `https://indico.cern.ch/event/1040116/`, 2021.

[18] 3rd townhall meeting: CERN indico. `https://indico.cern.ch/event/1040116/`, 2021.

[19] 5th european advanced accelerator concepts workshop. `https://agenda.infn.it/event/24374/`, 2021.

[20] R. D'Arcy et al. Flashforward: plasma wakefield accelerator science for high-average-power applications. *Phil. Trans. R. Soc. A. 2018039220180392.*, 377, June 2019.

[21] M. Ferrario et al. Sparc lab present and future. *Nuclear Instruments and Methods in Physics Research Section B: Beam Interactions with Materials and Atoms*, 309:183–188, 2013.

[22] B. Hidding et al. Stfc pwfa-fel: Exploratory study of pwfa-driven fel at clara.

[23] M. Ferrario et al. Eupraxia at sparc lab design study towards a compact fel facility at lnf. *Nuclear Instruments and Methods in Physics Research Section A: Accelerators, Spectrometers, Detectors and Associated Equipment*, 909:134–138, 2018.

[24] D'Arcy et al. Tunable plasma-based energy dechirper. *Phys. Rev. Lett.*, 122:034801, Jan 2019.

[25] Schroder et al. High-resolution sampling of beam-driven plasma wakefields. *Nat. Commun.*, July 2020.

[26] C. A. Lindstrøm et al. Energy-spread preservation and high efficiency in a plasma-wakefield accelerator. *Phys. Rev. Lett.*, 126:014801, Jan 2021.

[27] R. Pompili et al. Energy spread minimization in a beam-driven plasma wakefield accelerator. *Nat. Phys.*, Jan 2021.

[28] V. Shpakov et al. First emittance measurement of the beam-driven plasma wakefield accelerated electron beam. *Phys. Rev. Accel. Beams*, 24:051301, May 2021.

[29] A. Deng et al. Generation and acceleration of electron bunches from a plasma photocathode. *Nature Physics*, 15(11):1156–1160, August 2019.

[30] A. Ferran Pousa et al. Compact multistage plasma-based accelerator design for correlated energy spread compensation. *Phys. Rev. Lett.*, 123:054801, Jul 2019.

[31] E. Adli et al. Experimental observation of proton bunch modulation in a plasma, at varying plasma densities. *Phys. Rev. Lett.*, 122(5):054802, 2019.

[32] M. Turner et al. Experimental observation of plasma wakefield growth driven by the seeded self-modulation of a proton bunch. *Phys. Rev. Lett.*, 122(5):054801, 2019.

[33] D. Zhang, A. Fallahi, M. Hemmer, X Wu, M Fakhari, Y Hua, H. Cankaya, A.-L. Calendron, L.E. Zapata, N.H. Matlis, and F.X. Kärtner. Segmented terahertz electron accelerator and manipulator (STEAM). *Nature Photonics*, 12:336–342, 2018.

[34] N Sapra et al. On-chip integrated laser-driven particle accelerator. *Science*, 367, 2020.

[35] Carl A. Lindstrøm. Staging of plasma-wakefield accelerators. *Phys. Rev. Accel. Beams*, 24:014801, Jan 2021.

[36] J. van Tilborg et al. Active plasma lensing for relativistic laser-plasma-accelerated electron beams. *Phys. Rev. Lett.*, 115:184802, Oct 2015.

[37] S. Cheshkov et al. Particle dynamics in multistage wakefield collider. *Phys. Rev. ST Accel. Beams*, 3:071301, Jul 2000.

[38] C. Lindstrom. Self-correcting longitudinal phase space in a multistage plasma accelerator. 2021.

[39] S. Steinke, J. van Tilborg, C. Benedetti, C. G. R. Geddes, J. Daniels, K. K. Swanson, A. J. Gonsalves, K. Nakamura, B. H. Shaw, C. B. Schroeder, E. Esarey, and W. P. Leemans. Staging of laser-plasma accelerators. *Physics of Plasmas*, 23(5):056705, 2016.

[40] Y. Wu et al. Polarized electron-beam acceleration driven by vortex laser pulses. *New J. Phys.*, 21, 073052, 2019.

[41] C. S. Hue et al. Efficiency and beam quality for positron acceleration in loaded plasma wakefields. *Phys. Rev. Research*, 3:043063, 2021.

[42] J. P. Couperus et al. Demonstration of a beam loaded nanocoulomb-class laser wakefield accelerator. *Nature Communications*, 8(1):487, December 2017.

[43] M. F. Gilljohann et al. Direct Observation of Plasma Waves and Dynamics Induced by Laser-Accelerated Electron Beams. *Physical Review X*, 9(1):011046, March 2019.

[44] A. Martinez de la Ossa et al. Hybrid LWFA-PWFA staging as a beam energy and brightness transformer: conceptual design and simulations. *Philosophical Transactions of the Royal Society A: Mathematical, Physical and Engineering Sciences*, 377(2151):20180175, August 2019.

[45] J. Götzfried et al. Physics of High-Charge Electron Beams in Laser-Plasma Wakefields. *Physical Review X*, 10(4):041015, October 2020.

[46] T. Kurz et al. Demonstration of a compact plasma accelerator powered by laser-accelerated electron beams. *Nature Communications*, 12(1):2895, December 2021.

[47] C. Thaury et al. Demonstration of relativistic electron beam focusing by a laser-plasma lens. *Nat. Commun.*, April 2015.

[48] R. Pompili et al. Experimental characterization of active plasma lensing for electron beams. *Appl. Phys. Lett.*, 2017.

[49] C.A. Lindstrøm et al. Overview of the clear plasma lens experiment. *Nuclear Instruments and Methods in Physics Research Section A: Accelerators, Spectrometers, Detectors and Associated Equipment*, 909:379–382, 2018.

[50] Pompili et al. Focusing of high-brightness electron beams with active-plasma lenses. *Phys. Rev. Lett.*, 121:174801, Oct 2018.

[51] C. et al. Lindstrom. Emittance preservation in an aberration-free active plasma lens. *Phys. Rev. Lett.*, 121:194801, 2019.

[52] M. Tzoufras et al. Beam loading in the nonlinear regime of plasma-based acceleration. *Phys. Rev. Lett.*, 101:145002, Sep 2008.

[53] R. Roussel et al. Single shot characterization of high transformer ratio wakefields in nonlinear plasma acceleration. *Phys. Rev. Lett.*, 124:044802, Jan 2020.

[54] Erik Adli. Plasma wakefield linear colliders—opportunities and challenges. *Phil. Trans. R. Soc. A.*, 377(2151):20180419.

[55] A. J. Gonsalves et al. Petawatt laser guiding and electron beam acceleration to 8 gev in a laser-heated capillary discharge waveguide. *Phys. Rev. Lett.*, 122:084801, Feb 2019.

[56] Henning Stark et al. 1kw, 10mj, 120fs coherently combined fiber cpa laser system. *Opt. Lett.*, 46(5):969–972, Mar 2021.

[57] W. Chang et al. Femtosecond pulse spectral synthesis in coherently-spectrally combined multi-channel fiber chirped pulse amplifiers. *Opt. Express*, 21(3):3897–3910, Feb 2013.

[58] L Daniault et al. XCAN — A coherent amplification network of femtosecond fiber chirped-pulse amplifiers. *The European Physical Journal Special Topics*, 224(13):2609–2613, 2015.

[59] Tong Zhou et al. Two-dimensional combination of eight ultrashort pulsed beams using a diffractive optic pair. *Opt. Lett.*, 43(14):3269–3272, Jul 2018.

[60] M. Gebhardt et al. High average power nonlinear compression to 4  gw, sub-50  fs pulses at 2  μm wavelength. *Opt. Lett.*, 42(4):747–750, Feb 2017.

[61] O. Jakobsson, S. M. Hooker, and R. Walczak. Gev-scale accelerators driven by plasma-modulated pulses from kilohertz lasers. *Phys. Rev. Lett.*, 127:184801, Oct 2021.

[62] Yong Wang et al. 1.1j yb:yag picosecond laser at 1khz repetition rate. *Opt. Lett.*, 45(24):6615–6618, Dec 2020.

[63] Simon Nagel et al. Thin-disk laser system operating above 10kw at near fundamental mode beam quality. *Opt. Lett.*, 46(5):965–968, Mar 2021.

[64] L. T. Ke et al. Near-GeV Electron Beams at a Few Per-Mille Level from a Laser Wakefield Accelerator via Density-Tailored Plasma. *Phys. Rev. Lett.*, 126(21):214801.

[65] Y. F. Li, D. Z. Li, K. Huang, M. Z. Tao, M. H. Li, J. R. Zhao, Y. Ma, X. Guo, J. G. Wang, M. Chen, N. Hafz, J. Zhang, and L. M. Chen. Generation of 20 kA electron beam from a laser wakefield accelerator. *Physics of Plasmas*, 24(2):023108, February 2017.

[66] S. K. Barber et al. Measured Emittance Dependence on the Injection Method in Laser Plasma Accelerators. *Phys. Rev. Lett.*, 119(10):104801.

[67] W. T. Wang, W. T. Li, J. S. Liu, Z. J. Zhang, R. Qi, C. H. Yu, J. Q. Liu, M. Fang, Z. Y. Qin, C. Wang, Y. Xu, F. X. Wu, Y. X. Leng, R. X. Li, and Z. Z. Xu. High-brightness high-energy electron beams from a laser wakefield accelerator via energy chirp control. *Phys. Rev. Lett.*, 117:124801, Sep 2016.

[68] E. Brunetti, R. P. Shanks, G. G. Manahan, M. R. Islam, B. Ersfeld, M. P. Anania, S. Cipiccia, R. C. Issac, G. Raj, G. Vieux, G. H. Welsh, S. M. Wiggins, and D. A. Jaroszynski. Low emittance, high brilliance relativistic electron beams from a laser-plasma accelerator. *Phys. Rev. Lett.*, 105:215007, Nov 2010.

[69] T. Tajima and J. M. Dawson. Laser electron accelerator. *Phys. Rev. Lett.*, 43:267–270, Jul 1979.

[70] Pisin Chen, J. M. Dawson, Robert W. Huff, and T. Katsouleas. Acceleration of electrons by the interaction of a bunched electron beam with a plasma. *Phys. Rev. Lett.*, 54:693–696, Feb 1985.

[71] European high performance computing joint undertaking (eurohpc ju).

[72] European extreme data and computing initiative.

[73] S.P.D. Mangles et al. Monoenergetic beams of relativistic electrons from intense laser–plasma interactions. *Nature*, 431:535–538, 2004.

[74] C.G.R. Geddes et al. High-quality electron beams from a laser wakefield accelerator using plasma-channel guiding. *Nature*, 431:538–541, 2004.

[75] J. Faure et al. A laser–plasma accelerator producing monoenergetic electron beams. *Nature*, 431:541–544, 2004.

[76] A. Pukhov and J. Meyer-ter Vehn. Laser wake field acceleration: the highly non-linear broken-wave regime. *Applied Physics B*, 74:355–361, 2002.

[77] J.-L. Vay. Noninvariance of space- and time-scale ranges under a lorentz transformation and the implications for the study of relativistic interactions. *Phys. Rev. Lett.*, 98:130405, Mar 2007.

[78] S. F. Martins et al. Exploring laser-wakefield-accelerator regimes for near-term lasers using particle-in-cell simulation in lorentz-boosted frames. *Nature Physics*, 6:311–316, 2010.

[79] D.F. Gordon, W.B. Mori, and T.M. Antonsen. A ponderomotive guiding center particle-in-cell code for efficient modeling of laser-plasma interactions. *IEEE Transactions on Plasma Science*, 28(4):1135–1143, 2000.

[80] A.F. Lifschitz, X. Davoine, E. Lefebvre, J. Faure, C. Rechatin, and V. Malka. Particle-in-cell modelling of laser–plasma interaction using fourier decomposition. *Journal of Computational Physics*, 228(5):1803–1814, 2009.

[81] Patrick Mora and Thomas M. Antonsen, Jr. Kinetic modeling of intense, short laser pulses propagating in tenuous plasmas. *Physics of Plasmas*, 4(1):217–229, 1997.

[82] J.-L. Vay, C.G.R. Geddes, E. Cormier-Michel, and D.P. Grote. Numerical methods for instability mitigation in the modeling of laser wakefield accelerators in a lorentz-boosted frame. *Journal of Computational Physics*, 230(15):5908–5929, 2011.

[83] Fei Li, Kyle G. Miller, Xinlu Xu, Frank S. Tsung, Viktor K. Decyk, Weiming An, Ricardo A. Fonseca, and Warren B. Mori. A new field solver for modeling of relativistic particle-laser interactions using the particle-in-cell algorithm. *Computer Physics Communications*, 258:107580, 2021.

[84] M. Vranic et al. All-optical radiation reaction at 10^{21} $\mathrm{W/cm^2}$. *Phys. Rev. Lett.*, 113:134801, Sep 2014.

[85] C.P. Ridgers, J.G. Kirk, R. Duclous, T.G. Blackburn, C.S. Brady, K. Bennett, T.D. Arber, and A.R. Bell. Modelling gamma-ray photon emission and pair production in high-intensity laser–matter interactions. *Journal of Computational Physics*, 260:273–285, 2014.

[86] M. Litos, E. Adli, W. An, C. I. Clarke, C. E. Clayton, S. Corde, J. P. Delahaye, R. J. England, A. S. Fisher, J. Frederico, S. Gessner, S. Z. Green, M. J. Hogan, C. Joshi, W. Lu, K. A. Marsh, W. B. Mori, P. Muggli, N. Vafaei-Najafabadi, D. Walz, G. White, Z. Wu, V. Yakimenko, and G. Yocky. High-efficiency acceleration of an electron beam in a plasma wakefield accelerator. *Nature*, 515:92, 2014.

[87] A. J. Gonsalves, K. Nakamura, J. Daniels, C. Benedetti, C. Pieronek, T. C. H. de Raadt, S. Steinke, J. H. Bin, S. S. Bulanov, J. van Tilborg, C. G. R. Geddes, C. B. Schroeder, Cs. Tóth, E. Esarey, K. Swanson, L. Fan-Chiang, G. Bagdasarov, N. Bobrova, V. Gasilov, G. Korn, P. Sasorov, and W. P. Leemans. Petawatt laser guiding and electron beam acceleration to 8 gev in a laser-heated capillary discharge waveguide. *Phys. Rev. Lett.*, 122:084801, Feb 2019.

[88] M J Boland et al. *Updated baseline for a staged Compact Linear Collider*. CERN Yellow Reports: Monographs. CERN, Geneva, Aug 2016. Comments: 57 pages, 27 figures, 12 tables.

[89] M. Aicheler et al. A primary electron beam facility at CERN —eSPS: Conceptual design report. Conceptual design report — eSPS. Technical report, Sep 2020.

[90] P. Agostini et al. The Large Hadron-Electron Collider at the HL-LHC. 7 2020.

[91] H. Abramowicz et al. Conceptual Design Report for the LUXE Experiment. 2 2021.

[92] M Wing. Particle physics experiments based on the AWAKE acceleration scheme. *Phil. Trans. R. Soc. A*, 377:20180185, 2019.

[93] A. Caldwell et al. Particle physics applications of the AWAKE acceleration scheme. 12 2018.

[94] Edda Gschwendtner et al. AWAKE++: The AWAKE Acceleration Scheme for New Particle Physics Experiments at CERN. Technical report, CERN, Geneva, Dec 2018.

[95] A. Caldwell and M. Wing. VHEeP: A very high energy electron–proton collider. *Eur. Phys. J. C*, 76(8):463, 2016.

[96] V. I. Telnov. Gamma-gamma collider with $W_{\gamma\gamma} \leq 12$ GeV based on the 17.5 GeV SC linac of the European XFEL. *JINST*, 15(10):P10028, 2020.

[97] C. Huang et al. Hosing instability in the blow-out regime for plasma-wakefield acceleration. *Phys. Rev. Lett.*, 99:255001, Dec 2007.

[98] J. Vieira and J. T. Mendonça. Nonlinear laser driven donut wakefields for positron and electron acceleration. *Phys. Rev. Lett.*, 112:215001, 2014.

[99] S. Gessner et al. Generalized superradiance for producing broadband coherent radiation with transversely modulated arbitrarily diluted bunches. *Nature Communications*, 7:11785, 2016.

[100] X. L. Xu, J. F. Hua, Y. P. Wu, C. J. Zhang, F. Li, Y. Wan, C.-H. Pai, W. Lu, W. An, P. Yu, M. J. Hogan, C. Joshi, and W. B. Mori. Physics of phase space matching for staging plasma and traditional accelerator components using longitudinally tailored plasma profiles. *Phys. Rev. Lett.*, 116:124801, Mar 2016.

[101] R. Ariniello, C. E. Doss, K. Hunt-Stone, J. R. Cary, and M. D. Litos. Transverse beam dynamics in a plasma density ramp. *Phys. Rev. Accel. Beams*, 22:041304, Apr 2019.

[102] J. Vieira, M. Pardal, J. T. Mendonça, and R. A. Fonseca. Generalized superradiance for producing broadband coherent radiation with transversely modulated arbitrarily diluted bunches. *Nature Physics*, 17:99, 2021.

[103] W. Lu et al. Generating multi-gev electron bunches using single stage laser wakefield acceleration in a 3d nonlinear regime. *Phys. Rev. ST Accel. Beams*, 10:061301, Jun 2007.

[104] David H. Whittum et al. Electron-hose instability in the ion-focused regime. *Phys. Rev. Lett.*, 67:991–994, Aug 1991.

[105] T. J. Mehrling et al. Mitigation of the hose instability in plasma-wakefield accelerators. *Phys. Rev. Lett.*, 118:174801, Apr 2017.

[106] R. Lehe et al. Saturation of the hosing instability in quasilinear plasma accelerators. *Phys. Rev. Lett.*, 119:244801, Dec 2017.

[107] Weiming An et al. Ion motion induced emittance growth of matched electron beams in plasma wakefields. *Phys. Rev. Lett.*, 118:244801, Jun 2017.

[108] Froula D. et al. Spatiotemporal control of laser intensity. *Nature Photonics*, 12:262, 2018.

[109] A. Sainte-Marie, O. Gobert, and F. Quéré. Controlling the velocity of ultrashort light pulses in vacuum through spatio-temporal couplings. *Optica*, 4(10):1298–1304, Oct 2017.

[110] C. Caizergues et al. Phase-locked laser-wakefield electron acceleration. *Nature Photonics*, 14:475, 2020.

[111] R. Siemann. Energy efficiency of laser driven, structure based accelerators. *Phys. Rev. ST Accel. Beams*, 7:061303, 2004.

[112] U. Niedermayer, T. Egenolf, O. Boine-Frankenheim, and P. Hommelhoff. Alternating-phase focusing for dielectric-laser acceleration. *Phys. Rev. Lett.*, 121:214801, 2018.

[113] J. England and L. Schachter. Beam-beam interaction in a dielectric laser accelerator electron-positron collider, 2021.

[114] J. Vieira et al. Polarized beam conditioning in plasma based acceleration. *Phys. Rev. ST Accel. Beams*, 14:071303, 2011.

[115] J. M. Cole et al. Experimental evidence of radiation reaction in the collision of a high-intensity laser pulse with a laser-wakefield accelerated electron beam. *Phys. Rev. X*, 8:011020, Feb 2018.

[116] K. Poder et al. Experimental signatures of the quantum nature of radiation reaction in the field of an ultraintense laser. *Phys. Rev. X*, 8:031004, Jul 2018.

[117] A. Picksley, A. Alejo, R. J. Shalloo, C. Arran, A. von Boetticher, L. Corner, J. A. Holloway, J. Jonnerby, O. Jakobsson, C. Thornton, R. Walczak, and S. M. Hooker. Meter-scale conditioned hydrodynamic optical-field-ionized plasma channels. *Phys. Rev. E*, 102:053201, Nov 2020.

[118] S. Borrelli, G.L. Orlandi, M. Bednarzik, C. David, E. Ferrari, V.A. Guzenko, C. Ozkan-Loch, E. Prat, and R. Ischebeck. Generation and measurement of sub-micrometer relativistic electron beams. *Communications Physics*, 1:52, 2018.

[119] B. Hermann, V.A. Guzanko, O.R. Hürzeler, A. Kirchner, G.L. Orlandi, E. Prat, and R. Ischebeck. Electron beam transverse phase space tomography using nanofabricated wire scanners with submicrometer resolution. *Phys. Rev. Accel. Beams*, 24:022802, 2021.

[120] A. et al. Thomas. *Phys. Rev. Acc. Beams*, 24, 2021.

[121] Press release (30.6.2021) of esfri committee: Esfri announces new ris for roadmap 2021.

[122] B. Hermann, U. Haeusler, G. Yadav, A. Kirchner, T. Feurer, C. Welsch, P. Hommelhoff, and R. Ischebeck. Inverse-designed narrowband thz radiator for ultra-relativistic electrons. *submitted for publication*, 2021.

[123] Dann. S.J.D. et al. Laser wakefield acceleration with active feedback at 5 hz. *Phys. Rev. Acc. Beams*, 22:041303, 2019.

[124] S. Jalas, Kirchen. M., P. Messner, P. Winkler, L. Hübner, J. Dirkwinkel, M. Schneep, R. Lehe, and A.R. Maier. Bayesian optimization of a laser-plasma accelerator. *Phys. Rev. Lett.*, 126:104801, 2021.

[125] M. Kellermeier, S. Zinsli, U. Dorda, R. Ischebeck, J. Lehmann, B. Hermann, K. Flöttmann, F. Lemery, H. Dinter, C. Lombosi, M. Magjar, L. Stingelin, W. Hillert, and R. Assmann. Towards additive manufacturing of dielectric accelerating structures. *Journal of Physics: Conference Series*, 1596:012020.

5 Bright Muon Beams and Muon Colliders

Editors: C. Rogers[a], D. Schulte[b]

Panel members: D. Schulte[b,] (Chair), M. Palmer[c] (Co-Chair), T. Arndt[d], A. Chancé[e], J. P. Delahaye[b], A. Faus-Golfe[f], S. Gilardoni[b], P. Lebrun[b], K. Long[a,g], E. Métral[b], N. Pastrone[h], L. Quettier[e], T. Raubenheimer[i,j], C. Rogers[a], M. Seidel[k], D. Stratakis[l], A. Yamamoto[m]*

Associated members: A. Grudiev[b], R. Losito[b], D. Lucchesi[n,o]

[a]STFC Rutherford Appleton Laboratory, Harwell Campus, UK
[b]CERN, Geneva, Switzerland
[c]BNL, Upton, New York, USA
[d]KIT/ITEP, Karlsruhe, Germany
[e]CEA, Saclay, France
[f]IJCLab, Orsay, France
[g]Imperial College London, UK
[h]INFN, Torino, Italy
[i]Stanford University, California, USA
[j]SLAC, California, USA
[k]PSI, Villigen, Switzerland
[l]Fermilab, Batavia, USA
[m]KEK, Tsukuba, Japan
[n]INFN, Padova, Italy
[o]University of Padova, Italy

5.1 Executive Summary

High-energy lepton colliders can serve as precision and discovery facilities. The decrease of s-channel cross sections as $1/s$ requires that the luminosity increases with energy, ideally proportional to s, the square of the centre-of-mass energy. The only mature technology to reach high-energy, high-luminosity lepton collisions is linear electron-positron colliders; the highest energy for which a conceptual design exists is CLIC at 3 TeV, with an estimated integrated cost of 18 GCHF and an estimated power consumption of 590 MW to reach the desired luminosity.

Muon collider (MC) technology must overcome several challenges to reach a similar level of maturity. A robust R&D effort is justified because the muon collider promises a unique path toward high-energy, high-luminosity lepton collisions that extends beyond the expected reach of linear colliders. The strong suppression of synchrotron radiation compared to electrons allows beam acceleration in rings making efficient use of the RF systems for acceleration. The overall power consumption of a 10 TeV MC is expected to be significantly less than of CLIC at 3 TeV. Additionally the beam can repeatedly produce luminosity in two detectors in the collider ring. In particular, the ratio of luminosity to beam power is expected to improve with collision energy, a unique feature of the MC. The compactness of the collider makes it plausible that a very cost effective design might be achieved, however this must be

---

[*] Daniel.Schulte@cern.ch

This contribution should be cited as: Bright Muon Beams and Muon Colliders, DOI: 10.23731/CYRM-2021-XXX.129, in: European Strategy for Particle Physics - Accelerator R&D Roadmap, Ed. N. Mounet,
CERN Yellow Reports: Monographs, CERN-2021-XXX, DOI: 10.23731/CYRM-2021-XXX, p. 129.

verified with more detailed estimates. The MC can ensure the long-term sustainability of the field and may also provide a next-generation collider for Europe if a Higgs factory were built in another region.

Past work has demonstrated several key MC technologies and concepts and gives confidence that the concept is viable. Component designs have been developed that cool the initially diffuse beam and can accelerate it to multi-TeV on time scales compatible with the muon lifetime. However, a fully integrated design has yet to be developed and further development and demonstration of technology is required. In order to enable the next European Strategy for Particle Physics Update to consider the investment into a full Conceptual Design and demonstration programme, the design and potential performance of the facility must be developed.

The panel proposes a programme to assess realistic luminosity targets, detector background, power consumption and cost scale, as well as whether one can consider implementing a MC at CERN or elsewhere. Mitigation strategies for the key technical risks and the demonstration programme for the CDR phase will also be addressed.

The physics potential of a 10-14 TeV machine is expected to be comparable to a 100 TeV hadron collider and a 3 TeV machine to be readily comparable to the highest proposed energy for an e^+e^- collider. The proposed programme will develop a muon collider at 10 TeV along with exploration of a 3 TeV staging to mitigate technology and operational challenges. The 3 TeV option is expected to cost roughly half of the 10 TeV option and can be upgraded to 10 TeV or more by adding one accelerator ring and building a new collider ring. Only the 4.5 km-long 3 TeV collider ring would not be reused in this case. The reuse of existing infrastructure, such as existing proton facilities and the LHC tunnel, will also be considered.

If the next European Strategy for Particle Physics Update were to recommend further investment, a Conceptual Design Report phase would then develop the technologies needed to mitigate identified project risks and demonstrate that the community can execute a successful MC project. No cost estimate for the CDR phase exists but experience indicates that typically 5-10% of the final project cost has to be invested. A muon Cooling Demonstrator facility would be expected to be the largest single component of the CDR programme.

The resources of the muon collider over the next five years will depend both on the Roadmap process and the ongoing US strategy, that will conclude in 2023. Currently CERN plans a budget of 2 MCHF per year and several person-years have already been committed at INFN. This allowed the work to start. Two scenarios of engagement before the next ESPPU have been developed with strong support from the community, but both require resources beyond those currently commited. The aspirational MC development scenario is consistent with achieving the above goals for the input to the next ESPPU. The minimal scenario has a significantly reduced scope and lacks most preparation for the demonstration programme.

The muon collider programme will benefit from other Roadmap efforts, in particular the high-field magnet, RF and energy recovery linac programmes. In case of the high-field magnet programme it would be beneficial to include the effort for the development of very high field solenoid magnets in addition to the effort to deliver high-field dipoles for proton facilities.

5.2 Introduction

Muon colliders offer enormous potential for exploration at the particle physics frontier. Muons, like electrons, are fundamental particles, so the full energy of the particle is available when they collide, whereas protons are composites of quarks and gluons so only a fraction of the energy is available. Unlike electrons, the high mass of the muon tends to suppress synchrotron radiation so that muons can be accelerated to high energy in rings. This results in a facility footprint that can be rather small compared to other proposed future energy-frontier facilities while yielding comparable results. Studies indicate that the luminosity per beam power increases linearly with energy, making it a plausible route to collision energy at the 10 TeV scale.

Unlike proton and electron machines, muon accelerators have received relatively little attention from the accelerator physics community owing to the challenges in producing and capturing muons and their limited lifetime. Muon sources are typically created by firing protons onto a target, yielding pions. The pions decay to make muons. The resultant muon beam can have a large current but owing to the production method is rather diffuse in physical and phase space. Conventional techniques to increase beam brightness such as stochastic cooling cannot be applied to muons due to the 2.2 μs muon lifetime at rest.

Existing muon sources overcome this obstacle simply by collimating the muon beam, resulting in a muon rate that is low when compared to equivalent proton or electron beams. Applications for muon sources have been mostly limited to rare decay searches, studies of the muon fundamental properties such as the muon anomalous magnetic moment and material physics studies employing features such as the muon's polarisation. These sources, when used in a collider, would not have luminosity comparable to other proposed facilities.

Over the past two decades, a dedicated effort has been undertaken in Europe, America and Asia to explore techniques to achieve higher muon brightness and accelerate muons. Two high energy applications have been studied, the production of neutrinos for the study of neutrino oscillations in a neutrino factory and the collision of muons in a muon collider. Concepts for muon-electron and muon-ion colliders have also been proposed.

These studies have yielded key results:

- The principle of ionisation cooling, which is the technique proposed to increase the beam brightness, has been demonstrated while RF component tests and ionisation cooling simulations have indicated that there exists a viable path to yield a beam with brightness suitable for a muon collider.

- Studies of the collider rings have yielded potential techniques for management of radiation arising from decay neutrinos at the TeV scale.

- Studies of the interaction region have demonstrated the possibility to optimise the design to shield detectors from the majority of beam induced background arising from decay electrons being lost in the neighbourhood of the detector at the TeV scale. Together with appropriate timing cuts, it seems possible to deliver highly performant detectors.

5.2.1 Baseline concept

The current muon collider baseline concept was developed by the Muon Accelerator Program (MAP) collaboration [1], which conducted a focused program of technology R&D to evaluate its feasibility. Since the end of the MAP study seminal measurements have been performed by the Muon Ionization Cooling Experiment (MICE) collaboration, which demonstrated the principle of ionisation cooling that is required to reach sufficient luminosity for a muon collider [2]. The MAP scheme is based on the use of a proton beam to generate muons from pion decay and is the baseline for the collider concept being developed by the new international collaboration. An alternative approach (LEMMA), which uses positrons to produce muon pairs at threshold, has been explored at INFN [3].

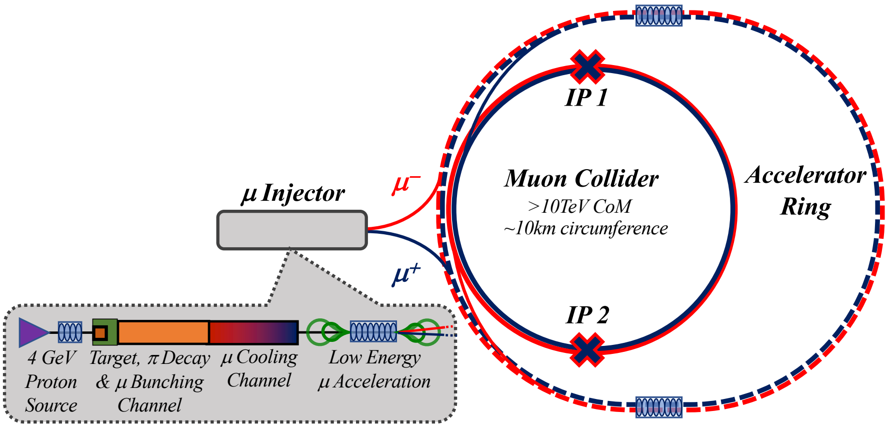


Fig. 5.1: A conceptual scheme of the muon collider.

MAP developed the concept shown in Fig. 5.1. The proton complex produces a short, high-intensity proton pulse that hits a target and produces pions. The decay channel guides the pions and collects the muons produced in their decay into a buncher and phase rotator system to form a muon beam. Several cooling stages then reduce the longitudinal and transverse emittance of the beam using a sequence of absorbers and RF cavities in a high magnetic field. A linac and two recirculating linacs accelerate the beams to 60 GeV. One or more rings accelerate the beams to the final energy. As the beam is accelerated, the lifetime in the lab frame increases due to relativistic time dilation so later stage accelerators have proportionally more time for acceleration, so that fast-pulsed synchrotrons can be used. Fixed-field alternating-gradient accelerators (FFAs) are an interesting alternative. Finally the two single-bunch beams are injected at full energy into the collider ring to produce collisions at two interaction points.

The MAP study demonstrated feasibility of key components but several important elements were not studied. The highest energy studied by MAP was 6 TeV centre-of-mass. Technical limitations such as beam induced backgrounds have not been studied in detail at higher energies.

Individual elements of the muon source were studied, but integrated system design and optimisation was not performed. Cooling studies assumed limits in available solenoid and RF fields that now appear to be too conservative; an updated performance estimate would likely yield a better assessment of the ultimate luminosity of the facility. MAP studies considered gallium, graphite and mercury target options, which should be taken on and studied in more detail to assess fully the performance and technical limitations of the system.

5.3 Motivation

A muon collider with 3 TeV center-of-mass energy would be likely to have similar or greater physics potential compared to an electron-positron collider such as CLIC, the physics reach of which is well established and documented [4]. A muon collider with a centre-of-mass energy of 10 TeV or more would open radically new opportunities for the exploration of fundamental physics [5]. On the one hand, it would feature a mass-reach for the direct discovery of new particles that vastly surpasses the HL-LHC exclusion potential and that, in certain cases, is superior to future hadron collider projects. The Muon collider could exploit a large production cross section in case of high-mass states and it would benefit of a much more favorable signal to background rates for low-mass states [6]. On the other hand, it would enable precision measurements through which new physics could be discovered indirectly, or the validity of the SM confirmed at a currently unexplored scale of energy. The growing interest of the theory community in muon colliders has also been expressed in the context of the ongoing Snowmass21 initiative [6, 7]. Several sensitivity projection studies have been completed during the last two years, and summarised at three Workshops [8–10] and at regular meetings on the muon collider physics potential [11]. Detector studies indicate that the potential of the muon collider can be exploited with the present state-of-the-art technologies at 3 TeV and further R&D for a 10 TeV facility, as discussed in the Detector R&D Roadmap.

5.3.1 *Cost and Power Efficiency*

As compared to other frontier particle accelerators and colliders under consideration, the Muon Collider shows particular advantages in terms of sustainability. The most obvious aspect is the moderate land use thanks to the relative compactness of the accelerator complex: for a collision energy per elementary constituent in the few TeV range, the footprint of the Muon Collider does not exceed linear dimensions of order 15 km, well below those of electron and hadron colliders of comparable physics reach.

A second, decisive advantage concerns the energy efficiency, and more precisely the beam power, and hence the specific electrical power consumption per unit of luminosity. To maintain similar rates of s-channel events, the luminosity has to increase in proportion to s, the square of the centre-of-mass energy. Goals for a lepton collider can be 1, 10 and 20 ab^{-1} for a centre-of-mass energy of 3, 10 and 14 TeV, respectively. The luminosity that can be achieved per wall-plug power is shown in Fig. 5.2, comparing the MAP muon collider and CLIC. The CLIC luminosity is limited by the beam size at the collision point. The current parameters are the fruit of a decade-long, intense development programme.

Under the assumption that the required technologies are available, the main parameters affecting the luminosity in a muon collider are summarised in the following scaling formula:

$$L \propto \gamma B P_{\mathrm{beam}} \frac{N\sigma_\delta}{\varepsilon_n \varepsilon_l}. \tag{5.1}$$

P_{beam} denotes the beam power, N the particles per bunch, σ_δ the relative energy spread, ε_n the normalised transverse beam emittance, ε_l the normalised longitudinal beam emittance and B the average dipole field in the collider ring.

From the above relation the advantageous scaling of efficiency with energy is evident. Table 5.1 shows that the beam power in a 10 TeV muon collider is expected to be half of the beam power in CLIC at 3 TeV. It is expected that the power consumption of the 10 TeV muon collider is below the one of a 3 TeV CLIC. However, the absolute value of the power consumption for a certain center-of-mass energy has not been studied or optimised in detail. In particular the energy efficient design of rapid cycling synchrotrons with recovery of the magnetic field energy from cycle to cycle, and the reduction of large unrecoverable losses from eddy currents, are important topics for optimisation. Other aspects include minimising beam induced heat load at cryogenic temperatures and efficient RF acceleration systems. The proposed programme will address this key question and allow to have a quantitative assessment.

Finally, the modularity of the Muon Collider complex will allow synergy with other accelerator projects through reuse of subsystems, e.g. the high-intensity proton driver which could also serve a neutrino factory.

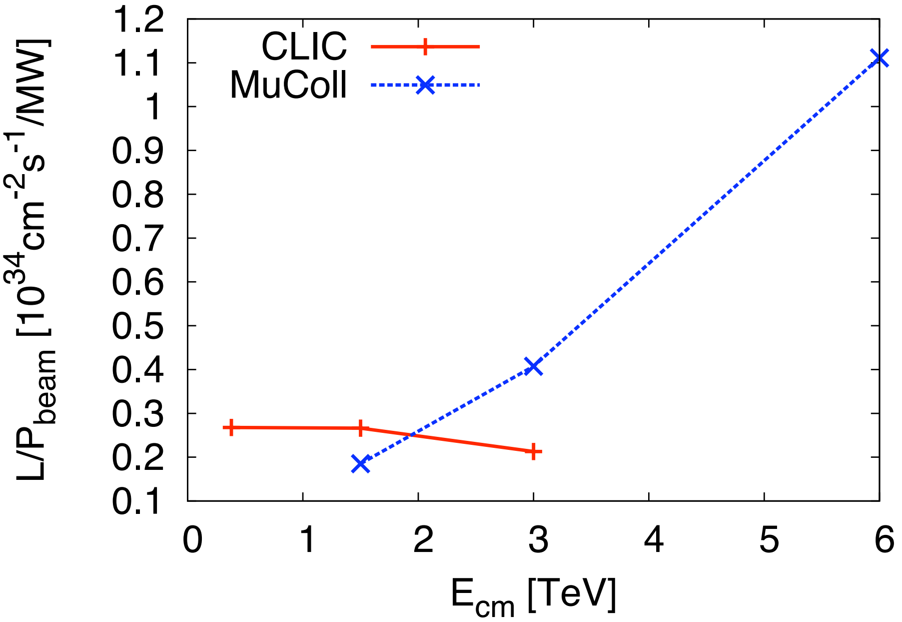


Fig. 5.2: Luminosity of the muon collider compared to CLIC per MW of beam power, compared with the centre of mass energy at the collision point. For CLIC the full luminosity is given, due to beamstrahlung at 3 TeV about 1/3 of this value is above 99% of the nominal centre-of-mass energy. The muon collider luminosity per power is expected to increase linearly with energy beyond 6 TeV.

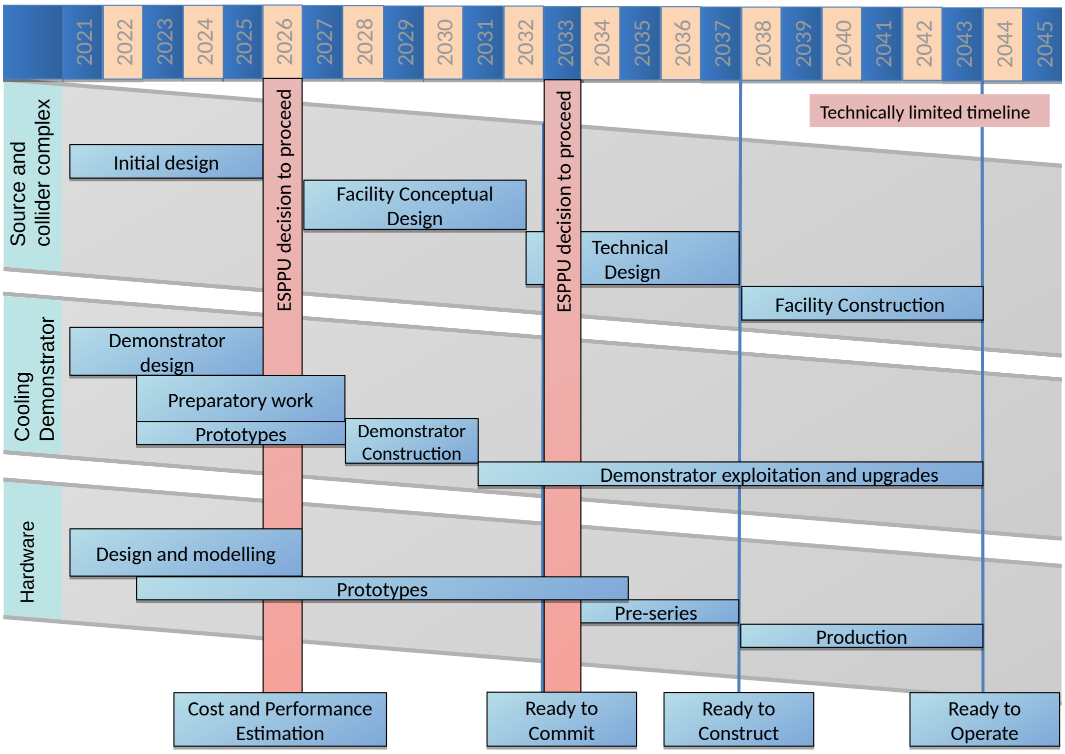


Fig. 5.3: A technically limited timeline for the muon collider R&D programme.

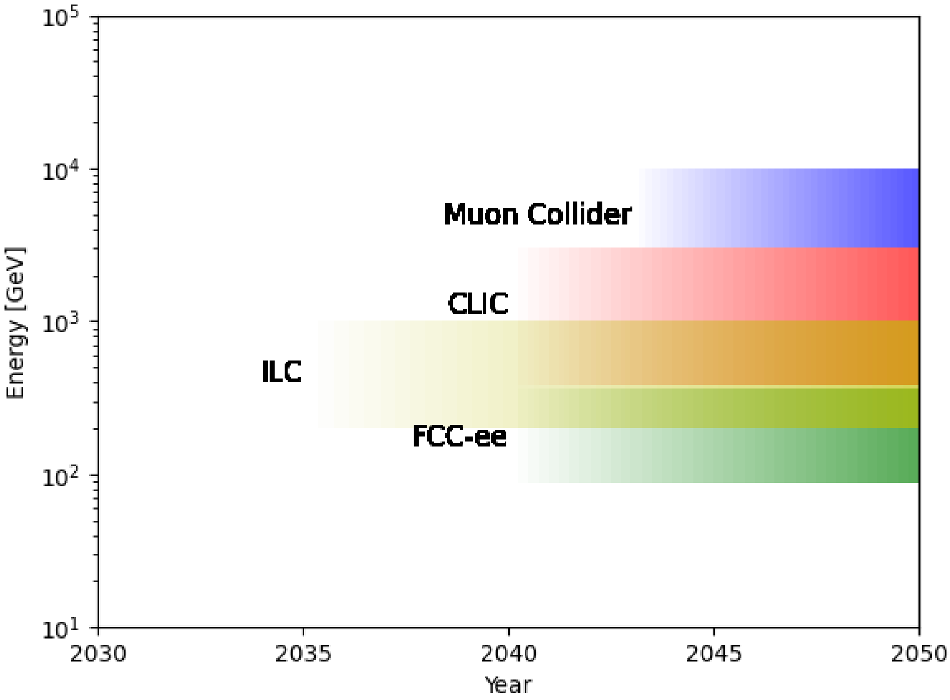


Fig. 5.4: Comparison of energy and time scale for selected energy-frontier lepton colliders.

5.3.2 Timescale

A muon collider with a centre-of-mass energy around 3 TeV could be delivered on a timescale compatible with the end of operation of the HL-LHC. A technically limited time line is shown in fig. 5.3 and compared with potential start-up dates for other energy frontier lepton colliders in 5.4. In order to deliver a muon collider on such a timescale, essential technical work to determine cost scale and feasibility must begin now in order for a fully informed decision to be made at the next ESPPU.

Based on these decisions, a programme of dedicated hardware prototyping could begin to support a conceptual design study. Prototypes would include rapid cycling synchrotron magnets and power supplies, high field solenoids, high power and high gradient RF cavities, high power targets and essential proton driver components such high current ion sources. Additionally, a beam demonstration is necessary to show the efficacy of muon ionisation cooling in both transverse and longitudinal phase space and at low emittance compared to previous R&D.

Such a programme would require a significant ramp up of resources. In order to justify such an effort the collaboration must establish, within the next five years, whether the investment into this R&D programme is scientifically justified.

R&D scenarios fall within a broad range. In a minimal programme the collaboration will study key challenges and design drivers in order to make key design choices and provide realistic targets for functional specifications of key components. This programme would provide supporting studies that key beam performance goals can be met, identify the key risks and provide a rough cost scale. This will allow the decisions at the next ESPPU in the light of a better understanding of the challenges and technologies inherent in the muon collider.

A full programme would address additional key challenges, develop technologies unique to the muon collider and prepare the demonstration programme. In particular, this would enable the collaboration to provide start-to-end studies of the accelerator performance and improve the maturity of key

Table 5.1: Tentative target parameters for a muon collider at different energies based on the MAP design with modifications. These values are only to give a first, rough indication. The study will develop coherent parameter sets of its own. For comparison the CLIC parameters at 3 TeV are also given. Due to beamstrahlung only 1/3 of the CLIC luminosity is delivered above 99% of the nominal centre-of-mass energy ($\mathcal{L}_{\prime.\prime\infty}$). The CLIC emittances are at the end of the linac and the beam size is given for the horizontal and the vertical plane.

Parameter	Symbol	Unit	Target value			CLIC
Centre-of-mass energy	E_{cm}	TeV	3	10	14	3
Luminosity	$\mathcal{L}$	$10^{34}\mathrm{cm}^{-2}\mathrm{s}^{-1}$	1.8	20	40	5.9
Luminosity above $0.99 \times \sqrt{s}$	$\mathcal{L}_{\prime.\prime\infty}$	$10^{34}\mathrm{cm}^{-2}\mathrm{s}^{-1}$	1.8	20	40	2
Collider circumference	C_{coll}	km	4.5	10	14	—
Muons/bunch	N	10^{12}	2.2	1.8	1.8	0.0037
Repetition rate	f_r	Hz	5	5	5	50
Beam power	P_{coll}	MW	5.3	14.4	20	28
Longitudinal emittance	ϵ_L	MeVm	7.5	7.5	7.5	0.2
Transverse emittance	ϵ	μm	25	25	25	660/20
Number of bunches	n_b		1	1	1	312
Number of IPs	n_{IP}		2	2	2	1
IP relative energy spread	δ_E	%	0.1	0.1	0.1	0.35
IP bunch length	σ_z	mm	5	1.5	1.07	0.044
IP beta-function	β	mm	5	1.5	1.07	6.8/0.068
IP beam size	σ	μm	3	0.9	0.63	0.04/0.001

technologies. Alternative technologies can be investigated that may enable reduction in cost and risk. This would build a higher level of confidence that the technical risks can be succesfully addressed in a CDR and allow rapid implementation of the CDR phase.

The full programme will provide a baseline concept, well-supported performance expectations and assess the associated key risks as well as cost and power-consumption drivers. It will also identify the R&D path to develop a full conceptual design for the collider and its experiments. This will allow fully informed decisions to be made at the next ESPPU and support similar strategy processes in other regions.

Target parameter sets for the various subsystems are identified in Table 5.1, based on 3, 10 and 14 TeV Centre-of-Mass energies. The parameters are based on inputs to the LDG process and will be developed as part of the R&D programme that is outlined in this document.

5.4 Muon Beam Panel Activities

The muon beam panel is employing three principal tools to develop the input for the roadmap:

- closed, fortnightly meetings of the panel to organise the work and to use the expertise of the members,
- the meetings of the muon collider collaboration, which address the R&D and
- dedicated community meetings and workshops that draw on the world-wide expertise.

Four community meetings were held in 2021.

- A workshop, held on March 24-25 to assess the testing opportunities for the muon collider, helped to arrive at a first definition of the scope of the demonstrator.

- A community meeting took place on May 20-21 with nine working groups. These working groups, coordinated by an international group of conveners, identified the key R&D challenges across the project.
- A community meeting, held on July 12-14, completed the formulation of the list of R&D challenges and prepared a set of proposals to address the key challenges that must be addressed before the next ESPPU.
- A community meeting in October discussed the proposed roadmap and provided feedback to the panel during the preparation of the final report.

This approach combined the expertise of the panel members, the participants in the new collaboration, as well as the participants in the earlier efforts. Contributions from the US community were extremely valuable but necessarily limited pending the outcome of the ongoing US strategy process.

5.5 State of the Art

Muon Colliders were first proposed in 1969 by Budker [12] and later developed by Skrinsky et al [13]. The concept was taken up in the late 1990s, principally in the U.S. Around the turn of the century the discovery of neutrino oscillations led to enthusiasm for a muon-based neutrino source, which could be compatible with the initial stages of a muon collider. Studies were taken up by the US Neutrino Factory and Muon Collider Collaboration. In Europe design concepts were advanced for a neutrino factory based on siting at CERN [14] or Rutherford Appleton Laboratory culminating in the EuroNu study [15]. The decision was made to focus on development of a neutrino source as it was viewed as a less demanding stepping stone to a muon collider.

Neutrino factory studies yielded significant advancements in the concepts required to deliver a muon collider. Concepts were developed to deliver a multi-MW proton beam based on European, American and Japanese siting options. In particular, it was realised that a very demanding short proton pulse would be required to maintain a short pion and muon bunch. Conceptual designs for appropriate bunch compression schemes were developed.

The first pulsed proton accelerators capable of delivering MW-scale proton beams were being commissioned around this time, using graphite and liquid Mercury targets capable of withstanding high beam powers. Significant effort was invested in theoretical studies to understand how such target designs could be developed to be capable of withstanding several MW of beam power. Moving targets received particular attention, with liquid Mercury the initially favoured option in US studies. Later studies considered alternatives such as gallium and graphite and found good performance. In Europe options were considered including tungsten powder fluidised by helium gas, multiple fixed graphite targets exposed successively to the beam to reduce the average power and beds of metal beads designed to absorb instantaneous shock. Experiments were undertaken on liquid Mercury [16] and fluidised tungsten powder targets in beam [17].

Studies were also undertaken to develop solutions for capturing both positive and negative pions. Conventional neutrino targets employ a horn optics, which acts as a focusing element for one pion charge and a defocusing element for the opposite charge pion. In order to focus both positive and negative pions, a solenoid was considered [18]. To capture a large phase space of pions, solenoids with fields in the range 15–20 T were considered. Consideration of shielding led to designs having large aperture in order to accommodate sufficient material to absorb the radiation from the target without inducing radiation damage to the superconductor and impractical heat deposition in the liquid helium.

Following the target, the design of the solenoid field employed a taper to lower values in order to contain the pions as they decayed to muons and transport the beam through to later parts of the accelerator [19]. Despite the short proton beam, the resultant pion beam still occupied a large longitudinal phase space with a huge energy spread. Initial studies dealt with this using low frequency RF in the 50-100

MHz range. Owing to the low frequency the RF cavities were large, some 2 metres in diameter, and had significant challenges concerning practicality of construction and integration with transport solenoids.

A novel scheme was developed employing more manageable RF cavities with frequencies in the range 325–650 MHz. In order to accommodate a beam that was much longer than the RF frequency, cavities near the target had a low voltage while cavities downstream had a higher voltage to adiabatically introduce a train of microbunches into the beam. An energy-time correlation developed before the bunches were properly captured, which evolved during the capture process. This was managed by employing higher frequency cavities near the target and lower frequency cavities downstream. After capturing the bunches, the design employed cavities that had a slightly different frequency to the microbunch spacing so that the early bunches experienced a decelerating field and the late bunches experienced an accelerating field. In the end, simulations yielded a bunch train that was flat in energy and captured within a RF bucket corresponding to conventional accelerator frequencies.

It was observed that significant beam impurities were transported by the muon front end. While this might be dealt with by a dipole-type chicane in more conventional machines, in the muon transport lines the beam had a large emittance that was challenging to transport through a regular chicane. A pure solenoid dogleg chicane was designed, drawing from experience from early stellarator designs. Solenoids in this arrangement induce a vertical dispersion, so high momentum particles scraped off on collimators in the roof or floor of the chicane, depending on the sign. Simulations indicated a very sharp cut-off momentum, below which even high emittance particles were transported with very little emittance growth for momenta very close to the cut-off. At the end of the chicane low momentum protons, which lose much more energy than pions and muons, were stopped in a plug of Beryllium.

By the end of the EuroNu design study, the concept for the muon capture system was considered mature, although further iterations were made to optimise RF frequency and solenoid field strength. Challenges remained especially in the target region, where practical experience of graphite and liquid Mercury targets in high power environments yielded new insights and detailed engineering of the challenging magnet was not performed.

Downstream of the muon capture region, the neutrino factory studies focused on reducing the transverse emittance of the beam so that it was suitable for acceleration. Conventional cooling techniques such as stochastic or electron cooling are not capable of cooling the beam on a sufficiently short time scale. Ionisation cooling schemes were proposed as an alternative. In ionisation cooling, beams are passed through material, which absorbs transverse and longitudinal momentum due to ionisation of the absorber material. The longitudinal momentum is restored by RF cavities, resulting in a beam having lower transverse emittance. Multiple Coulomb scattering off atomic nuclei degrades the cooling effect. In order to decrease the contribution from scattering, energy absorbers having low atomic number are considered along with tight focusing. Nonetheless, systems have a minimum equilibrium emittance where the ionisation cooling and scattering effects cancel.

Initial cooling studies employed an elaborate system capable of yielding relatively low transverse emittance beams with no longitudinal cooling. Most designs for acceleration employed relatively high gradient RF to promote rapid acceleration with a large RF bucket, so longitudinal emittance was considered manageable. It was later found that a more practical and simpler cooling system would yield a sufficiently low emittance muon beam while saving on cost and complexity. [20, 21]

The muon cooling system was felt to be sufficiently complex and novel that an experiment was required. The Muon Ionisation Cooling Experiment was initiated in this period by a collaboration drawn from Europe, North America and Asia. An entirely new muon beam line was constructed at Rutherford Appleton Laboratory, together with bespoke beam instrumentation capable of measuring individual muons as they traverse the apparatus and a tightly focusing arrangement of solenoids. This led to the demonstration of the transverse muon ionisation cooling concept for the first time [2].

For the neutrino factory, energies in the 5-50 GeV range were considered, in order to generate the desired neutrino energy spectrum. Acceleration used a linac at lower energies where the beam is not fully relativistic and geometric emittances are higher. At higher energies combinations of recirculating linear accelerators (RLAs) and fixed field alternating gradient accelerators (FFAs) were considered. The RLAs are conceptually similar to the acceleration phase of a multi-pass ERL. Muons decay so the energy cannot be recaptured. [22]

A beam test was carried out for FFAs using a scaled model based on electrons, the so-called Electron Model with Many Applications (EMMA) [23]. This showed that rapid acceleration was possible, with large acceptance despite the beam passing many resonances, and acceleration using fixed-frequency RF despite the time-of-flight of the beam changing as the beam increased in energy.

While the focus in this period was on neutrino production, development was ongoing in muon colliders. Notably, the development of techniques to reduce longitudinal as well as transverse emittance, 6D cooling, and the discovery of the Higgs boson meant the muon collider became topical. The Muon Accelerator Programme collaboration was formed in the US to develop the muon collider concept while maintaining the possibility to develop an intense neutrino beam as a first stage.

Initial ideas for 6D cooling involved rings. Dispersion, when combined with wedge-shaped absorbers, would enable transfer of emittance from longitudinal phase space to transverse phase space. However, practical issues surrounding injection and extraction proved very challenging. Instead, linear systems having solenoids superimposed with dipole fields were found to yield sufficient dispersion to enable significant longitudinal cooling. Such systems had the advantage that, as lower emittances were reached, tighter focusing systems could be employed. Typically such cooling systems had a smaller minimum equilibrium emittance, but at the expense of reduced dynamic aperture, so tapering of the cooling lattice was envisioned which is not possible in a ring.

The ultimate limit of the 6D cooling was determined assuming that High Temperature Superconductors would not be available in such an arrangement. The system assumed closely packed coils with adjacent coils having opposite polarity. Preliminary force calculations indicated that the simulated lattices were feasible. In principle improved performance could be achieved by using higher fields and closer packing of the coils; the technical limit was not studied.

Other novel systems were considered. An alternative cooling system using a helical dipole-solenoid arrangement appeared capable of rapid cooling, but the the scheme did not reach the same emittance and transmission as the rectilinear cooling scheme outlined above. At higher emittance a 6D cooling lattice was investigated capable of cooling both positive and negative muon species simultaneously. This would yield a much lower emittance, making the separation of positive and negative muons easier. A system for merging the bunch train produced by the front end was also designed. This was an important component of the system as a single merged bunch would yield a significantly higher luminosity than the bunch train.

Studies undertaken as part of EuroNu indicated that the size of the RF bucket was a crucial parameter and high real-estate gradients were important not just to keep the cooling channel short but also to prevent beam losses in the presence of energy straggling. Magnetic fields were well-known to induce breakdown well below the normal RF gradient limit. A dedicated hardware R&D programme yielded two solutions: either using hard cavity materials less prone to damage by electrons such as Beryllium; or insulation of the cavities with high pressure gas to absorb multipacting electrons.

Initial studies yielded lattice simulations indicating several orders of magnitude reduction in longitudinal and transverse emittance, yielding luminosities suitable for a Higgs factory. In order to reach luminosity suitable for collision at a multi-TeV muon collider, additional transverse emittance reduction was required. In order to reach extremely small transverse emittance, very strong solenoids were considered operating at low momentum to get the strongest possible focusing. Solenoids up to 30 T with aperture of a few cm, at the time beyond the state of the art, and momentum below 100 MeV/c were considered. In this energy range, well below minimum ionising energy, muons with low energy lose more energy than muons with high energy. This results in increased energy spread and longitudinal emittance growth, but the transverse cooling more than compensated and the final designs appeared capable of reaching high luminosity. Preliminary studies were performed that indicated further significant luminosity improvements could be achieved using higher field solenoids, but the prospect of higher field solenoids seemed unrealistic at the time.

Parametric Resonance Ionisation Cooling was also investigated for final cooling, using tight focussing available in near-resonance conditions. Progress was made in maintaining sufficient dynamic aperture, but further studies are required to demonstrate competitive performance.

Studies for acceleration considered a staged scheme, that could at first yield a neutrino source, and subsequently yield a collider at the Higgs resonance, with less detailed consideration of acceleration even up to 3 TeV. Acceleration for a neutrino source would use a linac or a recirculating linear accelerator (RLA). Acceleration to 63 GeV for a Higgs factory would be achieved by adding another RLA, with Rapid Cycling Synchrotron stages added to reach TeV energies. Very rapid cycling times were required in order to accelerate on a time scale compatible with the muon lifetime, making significant demands on dipole magnets and power supplies. Studies were made considering combined fixed superconducting magnets with rapid cycling normal conducting magnets.

Collider ring studies investigated the possible luminosity that could be achieved. In order to make the largest number of bunch crossings before muons decay, the ring should have the lowest circumference possible. The luminosity is therefore proportional to the magnetic field.

In order to avoid the hour-glass effect, short bunches were required meaning low longitudinal emittance and low momentum compaction factors. Studies showed a tight final focus could be achieved yielding a high luminosity, albeit with challenging magnet parameters.

Particular attention was given to the effect of neutrino radiation originating from muon decay. Neutrinos are capable of passing through distances a long way off-site from the accelerator complex. A small but significant shower arises from the neutrinos interacting with material near to the surface. Mitigations for this weak off-site radiation were considered, for example the use of wide aperture magnets with the beam path slowly moved to spread the radiation so that it is not concentrated in a particular area.

The muon decays also yielded an issue for the detector, where they would induce a significant background from electrons lost from the beam and interacting with detector material. Shielding of the detector, together with background rejection techniques such as timing selection cuts, appeared to be capable of reducing the effects of the beam induced background to a manageable level.

Other developments have taken place since the end of the MAP programme that are important to muon collider development. Promising experiments have been performed at PSI on frictional cooling. Frictional cooling works in a similar fashion to ionisation cooling, but at muon energy below 1 MeV. In this energy regime lower energy muons lose less energy than higher energy muons owing to different energy loss contributions of inner electrons, so there is natural longitudinal cooling. However, the energy acceptance of the system is naturally lower and a full evaluation of such a system's suitability for a muon collider is required.

An alternative scheme, LEMMA, to produce a muon beam using positrons impinging on a target very near to the muon production threshold has been considered at INFN. An injector complex produces an extremely high-current positron beam. The positrons impact a target with an energy of 45 GeV, sufficient to produce muon pairs by annihilating with the electrons of the target. This scheme can produce small emittance muon beams. However, it is difficult to achieve a high muon beam current and hence competitive luminosity. Novel ideas are required to overcome this limitation.

An energy recovery linac for electrons, CBETA, has been demonstrated in the US employing FFA arcs. Such a machine would be similar to the FFAs that were considered for early stage muon acceleration, although energy recovery of muons is not possible owing to the muon decay.

5.5.1 Current Status of the Feasibility R&D

Significant investment into muon accelerator R&D was made in neutrino factory design as part of EuroNu. The International Muon Ionization Cooling Experiment (MICE) completed a detailed measurement of the ionisation cooling process [2]; rapid acceleration of muons in a fixed field accelerator was demonstrated by EMMA; and schemes for high power targetry using liquid metal [16] and fluidised powder jets [17] were demonstrated.

By the beginning of the MAP study designs for several components of the muon collider existed. The MAP Collaboration initiated its study with an evaluation of the feasibility of the key sub-systems required to deliver an energy frontier collider [24]. Several issues were identified as part of the MAP Feasibility Assessment that had the greatest potential to prevent the realisation of a viable muon collider concept. These issues were:

- Operation of RF cavities in high magnetic fields in the front end and cooling channel;
- Development of a 6D cooling lattice design consistent with realistic magnet, absorber, and RF cavity specifications;
- A direct demonstration and measurement of the ionisation cooling process;
- Development of very high field solenoids to achieve the emittance goals of the Final Cooling system;
- Demonstration of fast ramping magnets to enable RCS capability for acceleration to the TeV-scale.

While other machine design and engineering conceptual efforts were pursued to develop the overall definition of a muon collider facility, research in the above feasibility areas received the greatest attention as part of the MAP effort.

An important outcome of MAP was that progress in each of the above areas was sufficient to suggest that there exists a viable path forward. The test program at Fermilab's MuCool Test Area demonstrated operation of gas-filled and vacuum pillbox cavities with up to 50 MV/m accelerating gradients in strong magnetic fields [25, 26]; a 6D cooling lattice was designed that incorporated reasonable physical assumptions to meet the 6D cooling targets [27]; a Final Cooling Channel design, which implemented the constraint of a 30 T maximum solenoid field, came within a factor of $\sim$2 of meeting the transverse emittance goal for a high energy collider [28] and current development efforts appear poised to deliver another factor of $\sim$1.5 improvement; while further R&D is required, fast-ramping magnet concepts [29] do exist that could deliver muon beams to the Terascale.

Since the end of the MAP studies a number of technologies have developed, which make the muon collider a promising avenue of study. In particular, new studies are required to leverage the present limits of solenoids and RF cavities, which theory suggests should give an improved cooling channel performance.

5.6 R&D Objectives

Based on the MAP design, target parameter sets have been defined for the collider as a starting point, shown in table 5.1. If all design goals are met, these parameters would deliver the desired integrated luminosities within five years from the end of commissioning. These design goals serve to clarify the critical design issues and, once detailed studies are available, operational budgets that account for sources of beam quality degradation will be added.

The parameter sets have a luminosity to beam-power ratio that increases with energy. They are based on using the same muon source for all energies and a limited degradation of transverse and longitudinal emittance with energy. This allows the bunch in the collider to be shorter at higher collision energy and the use of smaller beta-functions. The design of the technical components to achieve this goal are a key element of the muon collider study.

A 10 TeV lepton collider is uncharted territory and poses a number of key challenges:

- The collider can potentially produce a high neutrino flux that might lead to increased levels of radiation far from the collider. This must be mitigated and is a prime concern for the high energy option.
- The Machine Detector Interface (MDI) where beam induced background might limit the physics reach and the detector and machine needs to be simultaneously optimised. This study is shared with the physics and detector effort.
- The collider ring and the acceleration system that follows the muon cooling can limit the energy reach. These systems have not been studied for 10 TeV or higher energy. The collider ring impacts the neutrino flux and MDI.
- The production of a high-quality muon beam is required to achieve the desired luminosity. Optimisation and improved integration are required to achieve the performance goal, while maintaining low power consumption and cost. The source performance also impacts the high-energy design.

Integrated accelerator design of the key systems is essential to evaluate the expected performance, to validate and refine the performance specifications for the components and to ensure beam stability and quality. Tables 5.2 and 5.3 describe key technology challenges and their relation to the state-of-the-art.

5.6.1 Neutrino Radiation

Muon decay produces a large flux of high-energy neutrinos in a very forward direction. In particular in the plane of the collider ring this can lead to a high local flux of neutrinos, which have a small likelihood of producing showers when exiting the ground at a distance from the facility. The insertions produce a very localised flux in a limited area; the arcs in contrast produce a ring of flux around the collider.

Minimising the flux in public areas is a prime goal of the study; this implies staying well below the legal limit for off-site radiation, for example at a level comparable to that arising from LHC operation. Using formulae from [30], one finds that, even in a 200 m deep tunnel, decays in the arcs of a 10 TeV collider approach the legal limit for the neutrino flux.

The proposed solution is a system of movers to deform the beamline periodically in the vertical plane so that narrow flux cones are avoided. Flux from insertions can be further minimised by acquiring the concerned land and by using a large divergence in the focusing triplets. This solution improves on a previous, less performant, proposal to move the beam within the magnet apertures [31]. The system could achieve radiation levels similar to the LHC. The development of a robust system is the key to siting the collider in a populated area. Impact on the ring performance must be minimised. Proper consideration for vacuum connections and cryogenics systems must be made. Management of the neutrino flux is a critical issue for the muon collider.

5.6.2 MDI

Detector design at a muon collider has to be performed together with the machine-detector interface due to the presence of the huge flux of secondary and tertiary particles coming from the muon beam decay. Integrated studies of the detector and the collider are needed to ensure a properly optimised performance. Beam-induced-background, arising both from muon decays and incoherent e^+e^- pair production, is a serious concern for the detector performance. The current solution to mitigate the background arriving at the detector consists of two tungsten cone-shaped shields (nozzles) in proximity to the interaction point, accurately designed and optimized for each specific beam energy. A framework based on FLUKA has been developed to optimise the design at different energies [32]. Studies performed so far demonstrate that, given reasonable assumptions of detector performance, it will be possible to perform the most challenging physics measurements [33]. Optimisations, for example using improved pixel timing on the

Table 5.2: Description of principle technical challenges for series hardware items, where a significant number of each item will be required.

Proton driver bunch compression Similar proton beams have been used at facilities such as SNS, however none with the short bunch that is demanded to achieve a good quality muon beam. Simulations performed for a neutrino factory at Fermilab, RAL or based on the proposed CERN SPL indicate that such a bunch compression is achievable but need to be matched to the specific conditions proposed here.
Muon Cooling Design The muon cooling design has been worked through in simulation of individual components to yield the low emittance beams assumed in this document. Simulation of the final cooling system indicates 55 micron transverse emittance and 75 mm longitudinal emittance could be achieved. This document assumes that an improvement to 25 micron transverse emittance and 75 mm longitudinal emittance could be achieved. No start-to-end simulation has been performed and performance may be improved in the light of new magnet and RF technologies. If the low emittance cannot be reached, higher power on target would be required or the luminosity would be reduced.
Muon Cooling Rectilinear Magnets The MAP baseline design assumed rectilinear cooling channel solenoids with fields up to 13.6 T in a closely packed configuration with adjacent magnets having opposite polarity. Mechanical analysis showed satisfactory performance but indicate the lattice needs to be adjusted to enable a suitable support structure in proximity to the RF cavities.
Muon Cooling Rectilinear RF The RF cavities in the MAP design, simulated with up to 28 MV/m on-axis oscillating at 650 MHz, sit very close to the magnets, which can induce breakdown. Tests that have been performed using a single cavity filled with high pressure hydrogen gas showed operation with 65 MV/m on-axis oscillating at 805 MHz, while immersed in a 3 T field. Additional tests have been performed using a single cavity having Beryllium walls that showed operation with 56 MV/m on-axis and operating at 805 MHz, also while immersed in a 3 T field.
Muon Acceleration RF Beam loading of the RF cavities is a principle concern during acceleration. High gradients may be available using 1.3 GHz RF, for example operating at 35 MV/m demonstrated by ILC, but the smaller cavities are more sensitive to beam loading and optimisation of the frequency must be performed to understand the appropriate parameters.
Muon Acceleration Magnets The muon collider requires fast-ramping synchrotron magnets. Ramps from -2 T to +2 T on a time scale of 2 ms have been considered. Normal conducting magnets capable of ramping at 2.5 T/ms with peak field of 1.81 T have been demonstrated. HTS superconducting magnets have been demonstrated operating with faster ramp speeds, 12 T/ms, but lower peak field, 0.24 T, have also been demonstrated. As several km of magnets are required, the cost and efficiency of the power supplies is a critical parameter.
Collider dipoles The collider ring demands a small bending radius to get the highest number of bunch crossings. Dipole fields have been assumed of 11 T with a bore aperture of 15 cm for the 3 TeV collider and 16-20 T for the 10 TeV collider. A similar magnet has been demonstrated operating at 14.6 T with a bore aperture of 10 cm.

Table 5.3: Description of principle technical issues for unique hardware items, where only one or a few of each item will be required.

Muon Collider Target The muon collider target will operate around 5 GeV and with a 5 Hz repetition rate with beam power around 2 MW, depending on the performance of the muon beam cooling system. This is around the state of the art; T2K receives 750 kW on target at considerably higher energy while SNS operates with a liquid Mercury target. Care must be taken to ensure the survival of the target under such conditions.

Muon Collider Target Magnet The muon collider baseline is to employ a very high field solenoid to capture pions. This will require an extremely large bore in order to accommodate radiation shielding. The highest proposed proton beam power for such a target is for rare muon decay experiments where targets are proposed up to around 100 kW with fields in the range of a few T. The fall-back is to use horn-type focusing, which efficiently captures only a single sign of muon.

Muon Final Cooling Solenoids The MAP scheme had final cooling solenoids operating with fields up to 29 T and yielded a transverse emittance that was a factor 2 higher than outlined in this document. Commercial MRI magnets are now available with fields of 28 T and the highest field pure superconducting magnets are in use with fields of 32 T, with bores similar to those required for the muon collider.

Final focus quadrupoles Designs for a 3 TeV collider employed a final focus gradient of 250 T/m and 0.08 m aperture. This can be compared for example with the HL-LHC final focus quadrupoles having a gradient of 132.2 T/m and 0.15 m aperture.

tracker detector and novel trigger algorithms, are in progress and may yield improved performance. This requires further studies at higher energies. Combined interaction region, detector shielding and detector design should be performed to confirm physics performance at 3 TeV and 10 TeV.

5.6.3 Proton Complex

Based on MAP calculations, the average proton beam power required in the target is in the range of 2 MW, but this needs to be fully validated by an end-to-end design of the facility. The proton beam energy should be in the range of 5-15 GeV. The power appears very feasible; spallation neutron sources like SNS and J-PARC already operate in the MW regime and others like ESS and PIP-II are under construction. The Superconducting Proton Linac (SPL), an alternative injector complex considered for the LHC, would have provided 4 MW of 5 GeV protons. The collector and compressor system merges the beam into 2 ns long pulses with a repetition rate of 5 Hz. Alternatively the use of an FFA or fast pulsed synchrotron could be considered, profiting from synergies with the next generation of spallation neutron sources in the UK and experience in Japan. In this case the optics, magnet design and collective effects needs to be developed. The challenge of generating a high-intensity, short bunch at low repetition rate should be investigated. In particular, designs for an accumulator and compressor system should be developed, taking into account existing H- ion sources and capability of H- stripping systems for injection into the ring.

5.6.4 Muon Production and Cooling

Muons are produced via tertiary production ($p \rightarrow \pi \rightarrow \mu$) by delivering a multi-MW proton beam onto a target. The baseline design concept in MAP assumed a 6.75 GeV H^- linac with accumulator and buncher rings to properly format the proton beam with a final combiner system to bring multiple proton bunches simultaneously onto the target for pion production. The proton energy was chosen in order to facilitate a neutrino factory but, in the 5-15 GeV proton energy range, the muon production rate is proportional to the beam power and exhibits only a weak dependence on the beam energy so other

Table 5.4: Parameters for a selection of proposed and operational pion and neutron production targets.

Facility	Average power on target [kW]	Beam energy [GeV]	Repetition Rate [Hz]	Target material	Secondary particle species	Focusing type
T2K	750	30	0.5	Graphite	Pion	Horn
LBNF (proposed)	1200	60-120	1	Beryllium	Pion	Horn
Mu2E (Under Construction)	8	8	0.75	Aluminium	Pion	Solenoid
COMET Phase I	3	8	0.4	Aluminium	Pion	Solenoid
ISIS	200	0.8	50	Tungsten	Neutron	None
ESS (Under Construction)	5000	3	15	Tungsten	Neutron	None
SNS	1400	1	60	Mercury	Neutron	None
JPARC	500-1000	3	25	Mercury	Neutron	None

energies in this range are suitable [34].

The Front End systems begin with a multi-MW target enclosed in a high-field, large-bore solenoid magnet to enable simultaneous capture of both positive and negative species [18]. A tapered solenoid section matches into a decay channel where the pions produced at the target decay into muons. RF cavities capture the muons into a bunch train and then apply a time-dependent acceleration to decrease the energy spread of the muons [35].

The bunched muons from the Front End must be rapidly cooled to achieve the required emittances for a collider before the unstable muons can decay. In the MAP scheme, an Initial Cooling channel [36], capable of cooling both species of muons simultaneously, reduces the 6D phase space of the beam by a factor of 50. The two muon species are subsequently separated [37] into parallel 6D cooling channels to continue reducing the beam emittance to the levels required for luminosity production in a collider. This emittance reduction for the individual species occurs in 4 distinct steps: 1) 6D cooling of the bunch train that is delivered from the Charge Separator; 2) a Bunch Merge stage to combine the bunch trains into a single bunch of each species [38]; 3) a second 6D Cooling section to reduce the emittance of the individual bunches; and 4) a Final Cooling section that trades the longitudinal emittance for improved transverse emittance of the beam. In the MAP studies, the best 6D cooling performance achieved was based on the so-called Rectilinear Cooling Channel [27] while the performance of the baseline Final Cooling Channel [28] was limited by the maximum achievable B-field that was assumed for the solenoid magnets in the design.

A solid target might be able to handle 2 MW beam power, but evaluations of the stress and heating must be performed. The short proton bunch length and 5 Hz operation result in a large instantaneous power. Preliminary studies indicate target lifetime in these circumstances may be compromised and target heating will be an issue. A liquid metal [39] or a fluidised tungsten target [40] are alternative solutions in case a solid target cannot withstand the 2 MW or start-to-end studies indicate that the muon survival is insufficient and higher production rates, and hence beam power, are required.

The system of high-field solenoids with tapered fields around the target and downstream is challenging. At the target the field of a 15 T superconducting solenoid is boosted to 20 T with an inner copper solenoid. An alternative 15 T solution has also been explored by the MAP collaboration and may have sufficient performance [18]. The large 1.2 m aperture of the superconducting solenoid provides space for shielding from the target debris to avoid quench and radiation damage. The magnet design, with associated proton dump, and the radiation environment are key for overall machine performance. A preliminary engineering study of the target magnet should be performed, including consideration of radiation arising from beam interaction with the target. Studies of stress and heat load on the target should be performed. Alternative solutions, for example using liquid metal, should be considered to manage the large instantaneous power.

While subsystem designs exist that indicate the cooling performance required to deliver the required luminosity, they have not been integrated and further optimisation is expected to yield significant performance improvements.

The accelerating cavities are key to cooling efficiently and with limited loss of muons. Large real estate gradients are required to ensure sufficient longitudinal acceptance so that the beam is well-contained. The lattice is very compact to yield very tight focusing so cavities sit in significant magnetic fields. Magnetic fields are known to compromise available RF gradient. Two approaches were considered in MAP either using high-pressure hydrogen-filled cavities or beryllium end-caps, both of which are unconventional technology. The two approaches were each demonstrated on single test cavities but never incorporated into a cooling cell. The accelerating cavities should be developed experimentally so that they can be properly integrated into a cooling demonstrator. Novel solutions to the high gradient problem could also be investigated.

The baseline final cooling uses high field solenoids to minimise the beam emittance. Pushing their field beyond the current state-of-the-art, around ∼30 T, would improve the collider performance and appears feasible given the rate of progress in magnet R&D. The luminosity increases roughly linearly with the field and the high energy systems could potentially have smaller apertures, which can simplify their design. The current and expected availability of high field solenoids should be examined and appropriate magnet options should be incorporated into the muon collider design.

The overall design has to be optimised to improve the transverse emittance by a factor two and achieve the target performance; further improvements would facilitate the machine design in the high energy complex. Alternative options have been proposed and need to be evaluated. In addition, the collective effects and beam-matter interactions should be explored further to validate the overall emittance performance. Integration of the muon production subsystem designs should be performed. Optimisation should be performed, paying particular attention to those areas that can significantly improve facility performance.

5.6.5 High-energy complex

Cooled muons are accelerated through a sequence of accelerators. The MAP scheme envisioned an initial LINAC followed by a recirculating LINAC (RLA) that could provide 5 GeV muons for neutrino factory applications [22]. A second RLA would then take the beams to 63 GeV to enable an s-channel Higgs Factory option. To reach the TeV-scale, a series of Rapid Cycling Synchrotrons would be used to reach beam energies of 750 GeV, 1.5 TeV, and 3 TeV, depending on the choice of collider energy by the community.

Collider designs were developed for an s-channel Higgs Factory, as well as 1.5, 3.0 and 6.0 TeV centre-of-mass energies [41]. There are several notable features associated with the design of a muon collider ring. First, the luminosity performance of a muon collider is proportional to the dipole field that is used in the ring. Next, muon decays within the collider ring require large aperture superconducting magnets with shielding around the beam-pipe to prevent excessive radiation load on the magnets themselves. Finally, the use of straight sections in the ring must be minimized to prevent tightly focused beams of neutrinos from creating off-site radiation issues.

In the collider and accelerator rings of the high energy complex both muon beams will pass through the same magnet apertures moving in opposite directions; single aperture magnets are sufficient.

Longitudinal beam dynamics is the key to high luminosity. Each muon beam consists of one high-charge bunch and the accelerating cavities must be designed to have an acceptable single-bunch beam loading. This is more demanding at high energies where shorter bunches are required to boost the luminosity. A global lattice design for the high energy complex should be developed, including start-to-end simulations of key systems, taking into account the need to move the magnets in order to mitigate neutrino radiation. Particular attention should be paid to longitudinal collective effects such as beam loading. Consideration should be made of RF cavity design and effective beam loading compensation schemes.

In the baseline scheme, acceleration to 10 TeV centre-of-mass energies requires ∼30 km of 2 T fast-ramping normal-conducting magnets, which are interleaved with fixed-field superconducting magnets. The magnets for acceleration to 3 and 10 TeV are a large-scale system that can have significant impact on the cost and power consumption of the facility. Design and prototyping should be performed for these magnets. Alternative options based on high-temperature superconductors (HTS) should be explored.

The collider ring arc magnets have to combine high dipole field, to maximise the collision rate, and large aperture, to allow shielding in the magnet bore to protect the cold mass from the 500 W/m of high energy electrons and positrons produced by the muon beam decay around the ring. Combined function magnets are essential to minimise the neutrino flux and the field-free gap between magnets must be minimised for the same reason. Shielding of the collider ring magnets from muon decay products drives the aperture and consequently the maximum field that can be achieved. Particular attention needs to be given to optimise the aperture in order to yield the best performance.

The quadrupoles of the 3 TeV final focus pose similar challenges to the ones of High-Luminosity LHC (HL-LHC) or the hadron collider of the Future Circular Collider (FCC-hh). At 10 TeV larger aperture and higher magnetic field in the aperture are required and call for HTS. The design of the correction system to achieve the required bandwidth for the final focus system is a key challenge to ensure that the luminosity per beam power can increase with energy. The final focus magnets should be developed, paying attention to the needs of the detector and any beam-induced-background.

5.7 Delivery Plan

The muon collider is expected to provide a sustainable long-term path toward high-energy, high-luminosity lepton collisions. The goal of the study is to assess and develop the concept to a level that allows the next ESPPU to make fully informed decisions about the role of the muon collider for the future of particle physics. In particular, based on the study outcome and the strategic decision, a conceptual design and demonstration programme could then be launched.

To support the strategic choices of the next ESPPU, two energy scales are currently considered: 10 TeV and 3 TeV. This should allow a better understanding of the trade-off of risk and cost compared to performance. Also, the 3 TeV option could be the first step toward the implementation of a 10 TeV option. The latter would require an additional accelerator ring and a new collider ring. All of the 3 TeV option could be reused with the exception of its 4.5 km long collider ring. The cost of the 3 TeV stage is expected to be roughly half the cost of the 10 TeV option. The 3 TeV stage could likely be implemented faster since it is more compact and it is currently assumed to use magnets in the collider ring with fields similar to those that are developed for the HL-LHC, but with larger aperture for the dipoles. The R&D programme will focus on the 10 TeV collider thus naturally addressing all challenges of the 3 TeV stage. Dedicated studies of the 3 TeV option will only be made where this is required in view of the more aggressive timeline.

It is expected that with this strategy 3 TeV stage could be realised as the next European high-energy project in case that a Higgs factory is not realised in Europe. At this moment, no insurmountable obstacle has been identified that would prevent realising the technically limited timeline shown in fig.5.3 with a start of commissioning before 2045. Such an ambitious scenario requires investment now in particular into the muon cooling technology, in particular the solenoids and the RF, and into the fast-

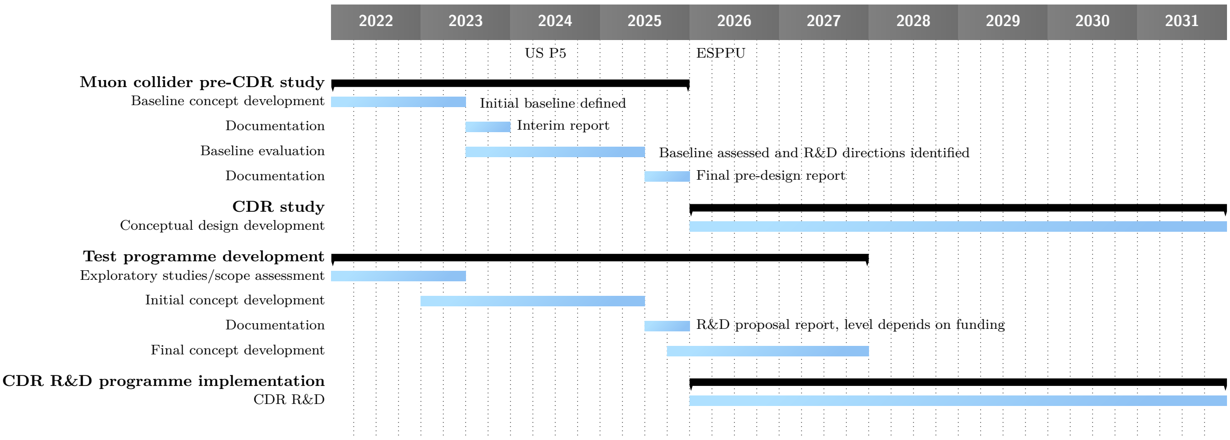


Fig. 5.5: Overall timeline for the R&D programme.

ramping magnet technology; an important ramp-up of effort is required in the full range of technologies after the next ESPPU.

In the following, two R&D scenarios are described. The full programme, which allows the collaboration to reach its ambition by the next ESPPU, and the reduced programme, which contains a sub-set of the R&D activities. Both programmes require more resources than are currently committed to the study and are therefore only indications of the level of results that can be obtained for different investments.

5.7.1 Main Deliverables

Three main deliverables are foreseen:

- A **Project Evaluation Report** that assesses the muon collider potential as input to the next ESPPU.
- An **R&D Plan** that describes a path towards the collider.
- An **Interim Report** by the end of 2023 that documents progress and allows the community to update their view of the concept and to give feedback to the collaboration.

The associated timeline is shown in fig.5.5. The availability of the Interim Report will coincide with the expected time when the strategy process in the US will arrive at its conclusion.

5.7.1.1 Project Evaluation Report

The project evaluation report will contain an assessment of whether the 10 TeV muon collider is a promising option and identify the required compromises to realise a 3 TeV option by 2045. In particular the following questions would be addressed:

- What is a realistic luminosity target?
- What are the background conditions in the detector?
- Can one consider implementing such a collider at CERN or other sites and can it have one or two detectors?
- What are the key performance specifications of the components and what is the maturity of the technologies?
- What are the cost drivers and what is the cost scale of such a collider?
- What are the power drivers and what is the power consumption scale of the collider?
- What are the key risks of the project?

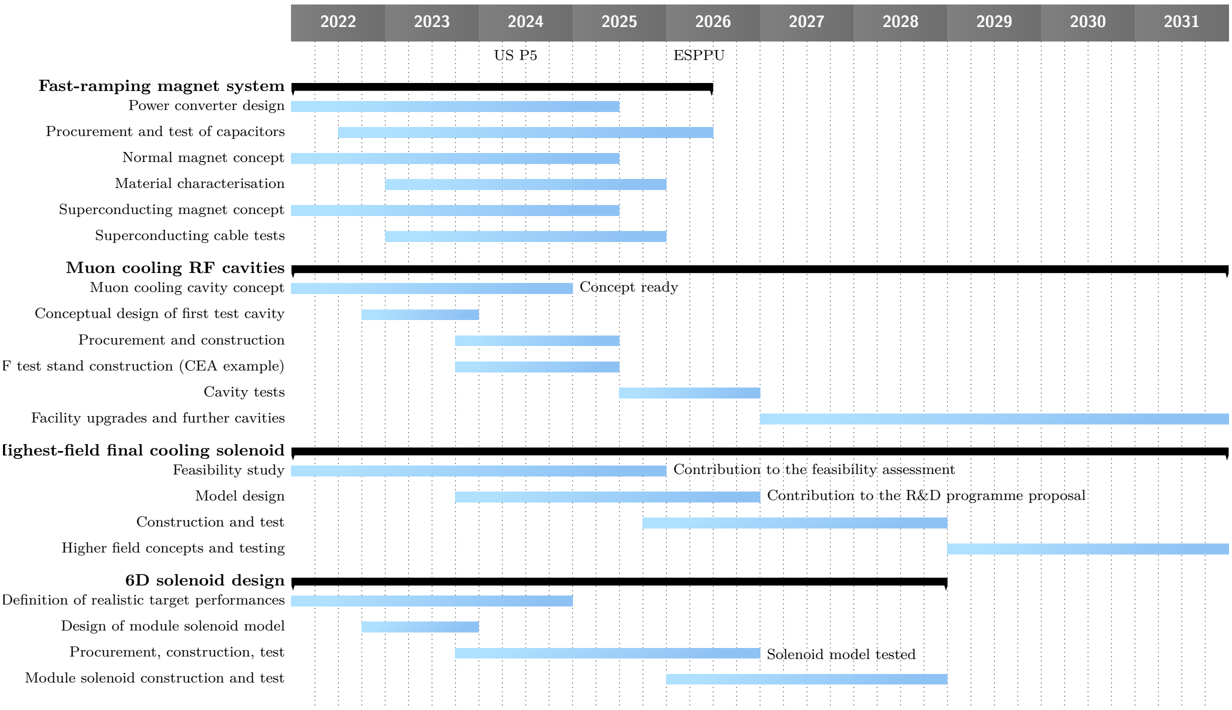


Fig. 5.6: Timeline for the technology R&D part of the programme. The solenoid model testing aims to develop the technology and will be followed by a programme to develop full performance models. The 6D solenoid models and the RF cavity tests provide input to the design choice for the prototype module.

5.7.1.2 R&D plan

The R&D plan will describe the R&D path toward the collider, in particular during the CDR phase. Key components of this programme will be

- An integrated concept of a muon cooling cell that will allow construction and testing of this key novel component.
- A concept of the facility to provide the muon beam to test the cells.
- An evaluation of whether this facility can be installed at CERN or another site.
- A description of other R&D efforts required during the CDR phase including other demonstrators.

This R&D plan will allow the community to understand the technically limited timeline for the muon collider development after the next ESPPU.

5.7.1.3 Interim Report

The Interim Report at the end of 2023 will allow the community to gauge the progress of the concept well in advance of the next ESPPU. It will also provide an opportunity for additional feedback to the collaboration.

5.7.2 Scope of the Full Scenario

The full scenario contains theoretical studies of the accelerator design and the technologies in order to define key functional specifications of the collider complex and components that allow achievement of the performance goals and that are realistic targets for the technology developments. This effort will be supported by a limited experimental programme to improve the reliability of the estimates:

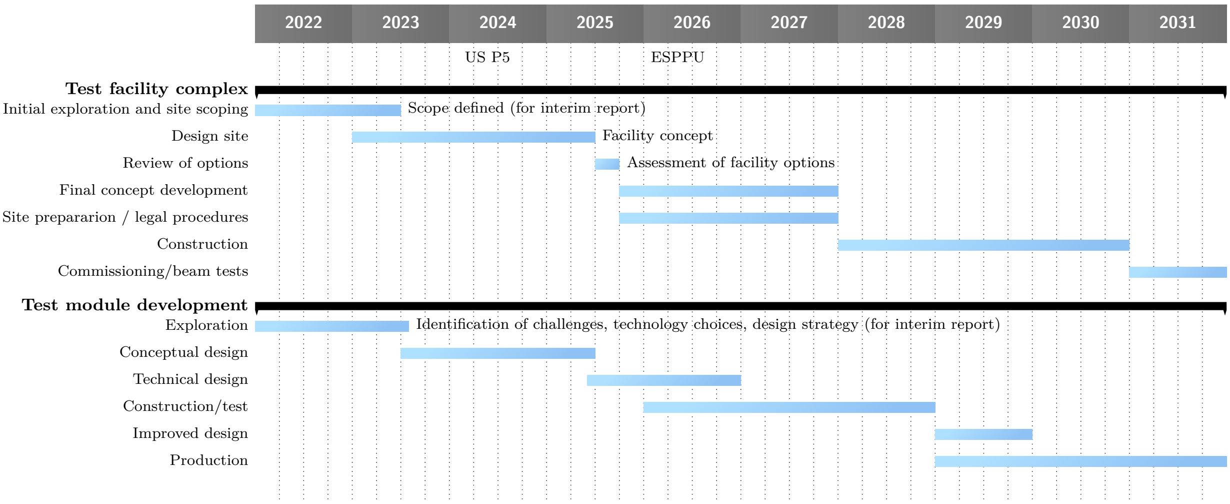


Fig. 5.7: Timeline for the demonstrator R&D. The long-lead procurement of module components would start in 2026, while the technical design continues, aiming at the prototype module to be ready by end of 2028. Within the frame of the demonstrator design an infrastructure to test the module with power will be developed. The test results will contribute to an improved design while the long-lead procurement for the modules is starting.

- Component tests for the unique fast-ramping magnet system and its powering, to demonstrate sufficient muon energy reach with appropriate cost and power efficiency.
- Construction of models for the superconducting solenoids of the muon cooling complex.
- Construction of a test stand to measure the performance of the normal conducting muon cooling cavities in high field.
- Test of components for the mechanical neutrino flux mitigation system and its alignment.
- Tests of materials for the target of the muon production complex.

In this scenario a further R&D programme will be prepared, which will cover the development of individual components but also of integrated demonstrations. In particular, the following would be included in the R&D plan:

- A conceptual design of one muon cooling cell module.
- A conceptual design of a demonstrator facility that allows testing of the muon cooling technology with beam.
- A concept to demonstrate the target of the muon production complex.

The list of workpackages of the full scenario is presented below. Labels in brackets indicate for each activity if it is only in the aspirational (*ASP*)or also in the mminimal programme (*MIN*).

MC.SITE Site Considerations and Layout

The goal is to assess whether one can consider implementing a muon collider close at CERN or another site. A key consideration is the decay of the muons in the collider ring that produces a dense flux of neutrinos, which might limit the choice of site. The goal is to develop a mitigation method that reduces the impact of the neutrino flux to the public, if possible to the same level as the LHC, so that the collider could be constructed the collider close to CERN. This will be achieved by:

- Verifying requirements and models of the impact of the neutrino flux. (*MIN*)

- Assessing whether the mechanical system to mitigate the neutrino flux from the arcs can fulfil legal requirements and the above goal. (*MIN*)
- Verifying that the system would not compromise the beam operation. (*MIN*)
- Defining the strategy to mitigate the neutrino flux from the experimental insertions. (*MIN*)
- Developing a tool to identify the surface areas that would show neutrino radiation based on the lattice design. (*MIN*)
- Identifying a potential orientation of the collider ring considering neutrino flux and geology. Estimating the civil engineering cost scale. (*MIN*)

MC.NF Neutrino Flux Mitigation System

Assessing the design of the proposed mechanical neutrino flux mitigation system to ensure its performance. In particular:

- Developing a concept of the mechanical flux mitigation system and of the alignment system required to control it. This includes high-accuracy, large stroke movers, alignment of the tunnel reference system to the surface and mechanical deformations and misalignments of the beam line components due to the movers. (*ASP*)

As part of the programme development, appropriate discussion is necessary with ring designers and experts on the technology systems to understand requirements and tolerances of the system.

MC.MDI Machine-Detector Interface

Muons decaying close to the detector and beam-beam effects can create background in the detector. This will be addressed by:

- Further developing the simulation tools to predict the background in the detector. (*MIN*)
- Further developing the masking system to mitigate the background in the detector. (*MIN*)
- Developing a tool to study the beam-beam background. (*MIN*)
- Developing the interaction region lattice considering the impact on background. (*MIN*)

This effort relies on a strong support from the physics and detector community, in addition to close collaboration with collider ring designers.

MC.ACC Accelerator Design

The goal is to develop concepts of the accelerator systems of the complex and to provide key functional component specifications and beam studies supporting realistic performance targets. Key expected results are:

- A lattice for the experimental insertion and arcs of the collider ring addressing the key high-energy challenges(*MIN*):
  - Maintaining the very short bunch length, which decreases with energy.
  - Achieving the very small beta-function, which decreases with energy.
  - Mitigating the beam loss in the magnets due to muon decay.
- A lattice for the arcs of the pulsed synchrotrons that accelerate the muon beam to full energy. (*MIN*)
- An improved concept of the final muon cooling system, which failed to achieve the emittance target by a factor two in the MAP study. (*MIN*)

- An improved and chained concept of the different cooling systems before the final cooling, which achieve the largest emittance reduction factor. (*MIN*)
- An exploration of alternatives for the final muon cooling. (*ASP*)
- A consideration of the engineering aspects of the muon cooling module design and its impact on beam dynamics. (*ASP*)
- An assessment of the limitations arising from collective effects along the whole complex. (*MIN*)
- A concept of the system of linacs that provide the initial acceleration after the muon cooling. (*ASP*)
- A concept of key systems of the proton complex. In particular, the systems that combine the bunches from the proton beam pulses into single, high-charge bunches. (*ASP*)
- An exploration of alternative concepts for muon and proton acceleration and the collider ring; in particular using FFAs. (*ASP*)

The accelerator design will require communication with most of the other areas of the facility, to ensure realistic hardware parameters and proper interfaces with the components of the muon source.

MC.HFM High-field Magnet Technologies

The goal is to develop realistic targets for the high-field magnet specifications and to develop an R&D programme to demonstrate them, where they are beyond the state of the art. The emphasis is on high-field solenoids in the muon production and cooling complex since they are unique for colliders. In particular the package will provide:

- An assessment of realistic target parameters for the superconducting collider ring magnets. This contains theoretical studies that translate the progress of the High-field Magnet Programme into the specific case of the muon collider.
- An assessment of realistic target parameters for the superconducting final muon cooling solenoids, aiming well beyond 30 T and ideally for 50 T. The solenoids have small apertures and the luminosity will be roughly proportional to their field. This includes theoretical studies using input from the High-field Magnet programme and other developments.
- An assessment of realistic target parameters for the solenoids of the 6D muon cooling, which form the main part of the system. The goal is to use HTS solenoids instead of Ni_3Sn technology to push the field to 20–25 T, well above the level in the MAP study. This may allow a shorter system and improve both the muon survival rate and the emittance. (*MIN*)
- An assessment realistic target parameters for the solenoid system around the target in order to asses the strong constraints arising from the large aperture and the high-radiation environment. Higher field corresponds to a higher capture rate of muons. (*MIN*)
- Testing and characterisation of cables and potentially the design and construction of models for the target solenoid at lower fields (currently around 30 T is considered) to improve the understanding of the technology and to prepare the development of prototypes. (*MIN*)
- Testing and characterisation of cables and potentially the construction of models for the 6D solenoid. The closer packing, larger aperture but lower field places different demands on the technology than for the final solenoids. (*ASP*)
- A design of the solenoid for the test module in MOD. This might use less ambitious specifications and technologies than the 6D cooling solenoid models. (*ASP*)
- A conceptual design of the target solenoid. (*ASP*)

MC.FR Fast-ramping Magnet Technologies

The goal is to develop realistic targets for the functional specifications of the fast-ramping magnet systems including their powering. These systems form the longest technical system of the collider and are critical for the cost and power consumption. The large stored energy in the magnets and the large power flow during the ramp requires the development of efficient and cost-effective solutions. Particular efforts are required to develop:

- A concept of the power converters and the power distribution system focusing on cost and power recovery efficiency. (*MIN*)
- A concept of a normal-conducting fast-ramping magnet. (*MIN*)
- A characterisation of the magnet material to understand the linearity of the magnetic field during the ramp and the maximum practical field. (*MIN*)
- A concept of an alternative fast-ramping magnet using superconducting cables. This can be superferric or with air coils to reach higher magnetic fields and shorten the length of the system but demanding larger stored energy and power flow. (*ASP*)
- A test of superconducting cables to assess if the required high ramp speeds can be obtained. (*ASP*)

These efforts have to be tightly integrated with the development of the RF systems for the high-energy acceleration, as both need to be synchronised, and with the beam studies of the accelerator ring.

MC.RF Radio-frequency Technologies

The goal is to develop realistic targets for the functional specifications of the normal-conducting RF system in the muon cooling complex and the superconducting RF system in the high-energy complex. The muon cooling RF is unique as it has to operate in a very high magnetic field. The high-energy RF has to address exceptionally high transient beam loading. Specific efforts are:

- A concept of the normal-conducting accelerating cavities of the muon cooling complex, in particular choices have to be made for the frequencies and shapes along the cooling chain. These have to balance beam loading effects and RF power requirements. Initially, the would be based on the two cavities that have been tested in the past. (*MIN*)
- A concept of the longitudinal beam dynamics and the RF systems in the high-energy muon beam acceleration complex, which uses superconducting cavities. The very high bunch charge and short bunch length require mitigation of single bunch beamloading effects. The RF also has to be synchronised with the fast-ramping magnet system with due consideration of the lattice limitations. The study will link to measurements of the achievable gradients in superconducting cavities within the RF roadmap programme and world-wide. (*MIN*)
- Design and construction of a test stand that allows measurement of the gradient and breakdown rate of the muon cooling cavities in a high magnetic field. This test stand is instrumental to make technology choices and to develop the cavity design. The cost of the test stand depends depends on the availability of existing equipment. Two different examples have been assessed during the roadmap process. They are based on the possibility of using existing equipment at IRFU and from MICE. The first would cost 10 FTEy and about 3.2 MCHF and would allow testing of cavities in a field of up to 3 T. The second would use a commercial solenoid to reach 7 T and cost 10 FTEy and 10 MCHF. Currently two fundamentally different cavity technologies exist, one filled with high-pressure hydrogen the other using beryllium. Also copper structures at cryogenic temperatures (cooled copper at around 50–70 K) can be considered. However, it is currently not possible to predict the performance of different technologies theoretically and the need to operate them in high magnetic field adds to the uncertainty. Measurements are thus mandatory. (*ASP*)
- The cavity design for the test module in MC.MOD. (*ASP*)

- A powering system concept for the muon cooling and acceleration system. In particular, the muon cooling requires short, high-peak-power pulses, similar to the CLIC drive beam. The high-efficiency klystron development at CERN will be important. A high power klystron will have to be developed for an upgrade of the RF test stand and the module tests.(*ASP*)

For the studied examples, the construction of the test stand could start early in 2024, when the required klystrons become available at IRFU. It could be operational by around mid 2025 and test results could become available shortly before and during the ESPPU. One can consider starting with the existing solenoid, if it is available, and later upgrade to higher field.

MC.TAR Target Facility and Technologies

Significant proton beam power is required in the target of the muon production complex. The current estimate is 2 MW, but the specification may change once the muon survival rate can be estimated based on the accelerator chain design. A liquid mercury target has been demonstrated in MERIT. For safety reasons a solid graphite target would be preferred, which appear possible at 2 MW. Targets using liquid metal other than mercury, or fluidised powder, can also be considered and would provide some margin in muon production. This package contains:

- Assessment of feasibility of the target, specifically (*MIN*):
  - Estimation of heat load and radiation in magnets and design of shielding.
  - A preliminary study of the target area design.
  - Estimation of the shock wave and pion yield.
- Development of a target concept (*ASP*):
  - Optimisation of a graphite target for yield.
  - Consideration of non-solid targets such as power jet or liquid metal.
  - Conceptual design of the critical target cooling system.
- A design of the target including (*ASP*):
  - Essential engineering aspects of the target including remote handling.
  - A concept for demonstration of target power capability.
  - An engineering design of target.
- The experimental programme (*ASP*):
  - Verification of the impact of radiation is assumed to be performed in the high-field magnet programme.
  - Measurements of the impact of shocks on the material in HiRadMat and similar facilities. (*ASP*)
- The development of a programme to demonstrate the target performance in the CDR phase an beyond. This could use infrastructures at CERN or ESS. (*ASP*)

The available proton beam will impact the target system design, while the field profile has a direct relation to the eventual pion and muon beam distributions and the longitudinal capture system.

MC.MOD Muon Cooling Cell Module Technology Design

The muon cooling technology is unique and requires very tight integration of high-field solenoids and their cooling system with the RF cavities and their powering. The compactness is instrumental to the muon collider performance to achieve small luminosities and high muon survival rates. The cooling cell will thus be the heart of the demonstration programme. A conceptual design of the cell will allow identification of challenges resulting from integration of subcomponents and is instrumental to prepare a timely start of the demonstration programme after the next ESPPU. The following outcome is foreseen:

- Assessment of technological challenges of 6D cooling cell. (*MIN*)
- Conceptual design of technical systems for 6D cooling cell (*ASP*):
  - Mechanical engineering.
  - Adaptation of RF design.
  - Adaptation of magnet design.
  - Cryogenics design.
  - Vacuum design.
  - Beam instrumentation.
- Integrated conceptual design of the 6D cooling cell. (*ASP*)

This package is intimately linked to RF.MC and HFM.SOL, which provide the conceptual design of the key components and to ACC.MC, which provides the accelerator physics design of the cell.

MC.TF Muon Cooling Demonstrator

The muon cooling technology will need to be tested with all systems powered and ultimately with beam. This requires a facility that can produce a muon beam and measure its properties before and after the cooling cells. This facility will be the core of the demonstration programme during the CDR phase. A conceptual design will enable assessment of the cost of this demonstrator facility and allow its timely implementation. Key expected results are:

- A definition of the scope of the cooling demonstrator facility. The goal is to demonstrate significant 6D cooling of the muon beam and to show the ability to reliably predict the equilibrium emittance. (*MIN*)
- An identification of at least one potential suitable site. (*MIN*)
- A conceptual design of the demonstrator facility (*ASP*), including
  - Transfer of the proton beam from the existing complex.
  - The pion-production target.
  - The capture and transport system.
  - The beam preparation system.
  - The upstream beam diagnostics system.
  - The cooling system.
  - The final beam diagnostics system.
- A concept for a facility to test single modules with proton beam will be developed and sites explored. This could be either integrated with the demonstrator facility or be independent. (*ASP*)

Currently rough dimensions of the facility have been identified and two sites at CERN are being explored that can use proton beam from the PS.

MC.INT Integration

The integration package coordinates the different efforts and defines the collider baseline and the alternatives that will be maintained. It will also address a number of points.

- The fundamental parameters of the concept. (*MIN*)
- The layout and site considerations in collaboration with the work package SITE. (*MIN*)
- The optimisation of the concept. (*MIN*)

- The cost scale of the key components and the civil engineering. (*MIN*)
- Alternative approaches to the muon collider will also be considered. In particular the LEMMA scheme could use much smaller beam currents than the proton-driven baseline. However, a concept to overcome some fundamental limitations would need to be developed. (*MIN*)

5.7.3 Scope of the Reduced Scenario

The reduced scenario addresses selected key challenges and design drivers of the muon collider. It contains a subset of the full scenario that must be addressed particularly early and will allow to make a ramp-up of the effort efficient. The selection has been made considering for each R&D item:

- What is the risk of the challenge and the level of resources required to address it? For example the neutrino flux and the machine detector interface can fundamentally limit the energy and physics reach.
- Is the R&D required early to provide specifications for other parts of the collider? For example the accelerator chain from the muon production to the collision point defines the number of muons that have to be produced and hence the required proton beam.
- Is R&D performed outside of the collaboration that will advance the maturity of the technology and inform the community of likely performance? This is for example the case for high-field dipoles, which are developed in the magnet programme.
- Based on existing expertise, can one hope to address the uncovered challenges rapidly if demanded by the European Strategy and if resources become available later? For example one can expect to be able to design the proton complex more rapidly than the muon cooling complex.

In particular the following R&D is not covered by the reduced scenario:

- No conceptual design will be developed of the technical system to move the beam line in order to mitigate the neutrino flux and of the associated alignment system.
- The alternative design of the fast-ramping magnet system that uses superconducting cables would not be studied.
- The concept of several collider systems would not be covered, in particular
  - The linac system that accelerates the muon beam after the muon cooling system into the accelerating rings.
  - The target complex.
  - The proton complex.
  - Alternative designs for the final cooling system.
  - The high-energy FFA as an alternative to the pulsed synchrotrons.
  - Alternatives to the collider ring design.
- No studies would be carried out to consider the engineering of the muon cooling cells of the collider.
- No test stand would be constructed to develop the muon cooling accelerating cavities.
- No conceptual design of a muon cooling cell for the test programme would be developed.
- No conceptual design of a muon cooling demonstrator facility would be developed.
- No concept of the power sources for the muon cooling and high-energy acceleration would be developed.
- No design and construction of models to foster the muon cooling solenoid technology would be performed. Only a very limited theoretical effort would be maintained to explore realistic performance specifications.

Label	Title	Full		Reduced	
		[FTEy]	[kCHF]	[FTEy]	[kCHF]
MC.SITE	Site and layout	15.5	300	13.5	300
MC.NF	Neutrino flux mitigation system	22.5	250	0	0
MC.MDI	Machine-detector interface	15	0	15	0
MC.ACC.CR	Collider ring	10	0	10	0
MC.ACC.HE	High-energy complex	11	0	7.5	0
C.ACC.MC	Muon cooling systems	47	0	22	0
MC.ACC.P	Proton complex	26	0	3.5	0
MC.ACC.COLL	Collective effects across compl.	18.2	0	18.2	0
MC.ACC.ALT	High-energy alternatives	11.7	0	0	0
MC.HFM.HE	High-field magnets	6.5	0	6.5	0
MC.HFM.SOL	High-field solenoids	76	2700	29	0
MC.FR	Fast-ramp. magnet syst.	27.5	1020	22.5	520
RF.HE	HE RF	10.6	0	7.6	0
MC.RF.MC	Muon cooling RF	13.6	0	7	0
MC.RF.TS	RF test stand + test cavities	10	3300	0	0
MC.MOD	Muon cooling test module	17.7	400	4.9	100
MC.TF	Test facility	34.1	1250	3.8	250
MC.TAR	Target system	60	1405	9	25
MC.INT	Coordination/integration	13	1250	13	1250
	Sum	445.9	11875	193	2445

Table 5.5: The resources requirements for the full aspirational scenario and the part for the reduced scenario. The personnel is given in full-time equivalent years and the material in kCHF. It should be noted that the personnel contains a significant number of PhD students. Material budgets do not include budget for travel, personal IT equipment and similar costs.

The reduced scenario will make key design choices possible but important technology choices will remain. For example the choice of RF technology for the muon cooling complex requires experimental input that would not be provided. The programme can provide realistic targets for key component performance specifications but will rely almost completely on experimental programmes outside of the study that have a different focus. An important example is the solenoid development, which can profit from the high-field magnet programme but where the latter is focused on dipoles that have somewhat different requirements than solenoids. The reduced scenario will provide beam studies that support that the performance goal can be met for a part of the collider system but with no start-to-end study. The cost scale will remain rough.

5.7.4 Toward an Intermediate Scenario

An intermediate scenario would include with highest priority the design of the cooling module and the experimental programme. In particular the RF test stand and cavity development and the solenoid development would minimise the delays of the R&D programme after the next European Strategy for Particle Physics. This work would also support the choice of technologies and the assessment of realistic goals for the solenoids and the cavities.

5.7.5 Resource Estimate

The estimated resources for the two example scenarios are given in table 5.5.

The breakdown of the resources according to area of the collider is shown in figure 5.8 for the two

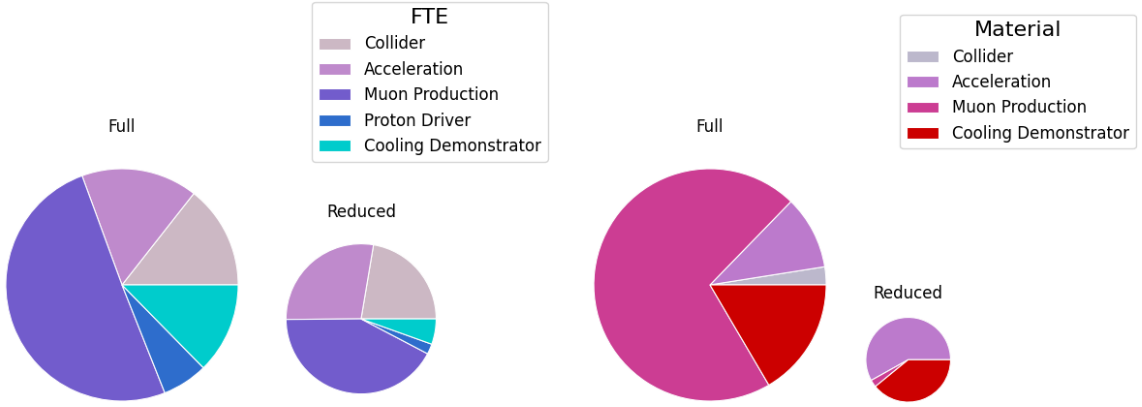


Fig. 5.8: The resource breakdown according to collider area for personnel and material of the full and reduced scenarios. The area of each diagram is indicative of the relative scale of resource requirement.

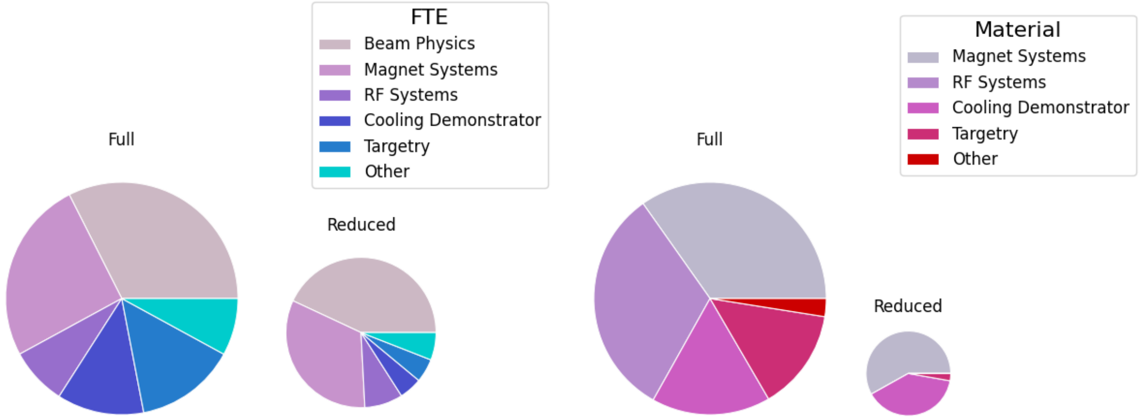


Fig. 5.9: The resource breakdown according to expertise for personnel and material of the full and reduced scenarios. The area of each diagram is indicative of the relative scale of resource requirement.

scenarios. The distribution according to expertise is highlighted in figure 5.9.

The minimal programme would mostly extend over the years 2022–2025, since the theoretical study should be documented in the reports. The intermediate and aspirational scenarios would extend into 2026, since updates of experimental results and designs could still be considered during the strategy process. It should be noted that the panel only costed the activities in preparation of the next ESPPU, i.e. before 2025 with limited consideration on activities that extend into 2026. As a consequence the resources are reduced toward the end of the period. To avoid delays, it appears necessary to maintain the effort at a constant or slightly increased level to fund the activities of the CDR phase during the strategy process.

5.8 Facilities, Demonstrators and Infrastructure

Demonstrations are required both for the muon source and the high energy complex. The compact nature of the muon cooling system, high gradients and relatively high-field solenoids present some unique challenges that require demonstration. The high power target also has a number of challenges that should be evaluated using irradiation facilities or single impact beam tests.

Issues in the high energy complex surround the short lifetime of the muons. Fast acceleration systems and appropriate handling of decay products result in unique challenges for the equipment.

The following new facilities are required and will be developed or constructed as part of the programme outlined in this document:

- a demonstration of fast-ramping magnet and power converter systems;
- a demonstration of muon cooling module solenoids;
- a demonstration of high-gradient normal-conducting muon cooling cavities operating in a high magnetic field; and
- an integrated demonstration of the muon cooling module as an engineering prototype, as an intensity demonstrator with protons, and as a cooling demonstrator with muons.

The following existing facilities are essential for the successful execution of the programme:

- facilities to demonstrate radiation and shock resistance of materials such as targets and superconducting cables;
- facilities to demonstrate high gradient superconducting RF cavities;
- facilities to demonstrate high-field dipoles.

Further details are given below.

5.8.1 *Ionisation Cooling Demonstrator and Related Facilities*

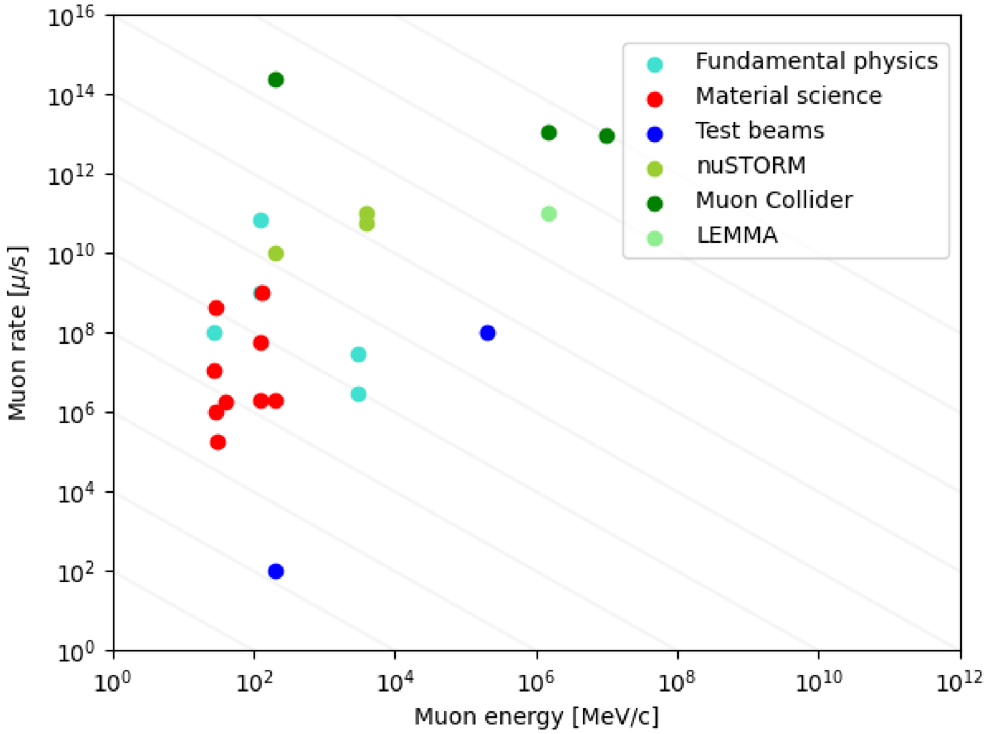


Fig. 5.10: Existing and proposed muon sources as a function of muon rate and muon energy. Diagonal lines show contours of equal beam power. Where available, muon rate data is taken near to the target. For muon collider and nuSTORM, multiple values are shown corresponding to different design options and regions of the facility.

Ionisation cooling is a novel technology and there are a number of tests which are required before the scheme discussed in Section 5.5 can be realised. In particular, MICE only demonstrated transverse cooling without reacceleration and operated at relatively high emittance. Further tests must be performed to demonstrate the 6D cooling principle at low emittance and including reacceleration through several cooling cells.

1. An RF test stand is required to test normal conducting RF cavity operation in the strong magnetic fields required by the cooling lattice.
2. Superconducting magnet fabrication and testing facilities are required to develop and test superconducting cables and solenoids operating at the highest fields and in challenging configurations.
3. A cooling cell prototype is required to test integration of the individual components.
4. Beam tests at low intensity using muons are required to test the beam physics of muons passing through several cooling cells.
5. Beam tests at high intensity using protons may be required to study potential intensity effects.

While the construction of an ionisation cooling demonstrator is not foreseen in the next 5 years, design of such a facility and necessary preparatory activities will need to begin so that the eventual muon collider can be delivered by 2045.

5.8.1.1 *Ionisation Cooling Demonstrator*

A test facility with beam is required to demonstrate the ability of the muon collider to deliver the requisite luminosity. Achieving high luminosity rests on the solution of two critical issues; the ability to create a high-flux muon beam from pions created at the target, and the ability to efficiently cool the beam in all 6 phase-space dimensions. This technology represents the single most novel system of the muon collider and requires unique customization of key accelerator technologies. A cooling demonstrator may be able to contribute to a cutting-edge physics programme and this possibility should be exploited [42].

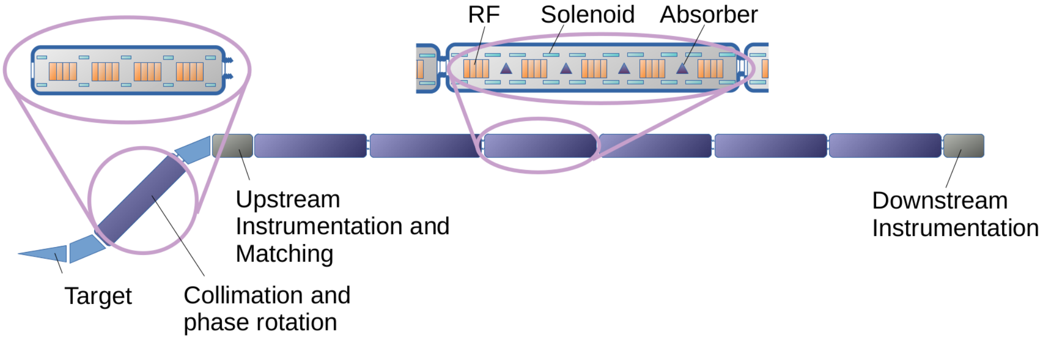


Fig. 5.11: Schematic diagram of a possible implementation of the muon cooling demonstrator. A pion-production target is followed by a collimation and phase rotation section where a low emittance muon beam is created. Instrumentation upstream and downstream of the cooling region is used to determine muon beam properties before and after a number of ionisation cooling cryostats, each containing a series of solenoids and RF cavities.

The construction and operation of the cooling demonstrator that can explore the full bandwidth of relevant accelerator technologies will be required. The test facility could be placed at any laboratory that can provide a proton beam having a sufficiently high instantaneous beam power or can afford to construct a new proton complex. Initial explorations are ongoing at CERN to identify a site but it could be situated at any laboratory where access to a suitable proton source could be provided. Preliminary studies indicate that construction of a junction cavern to the existing proton complex may be required in the next long shutdown in order to meet the timeline of the muon collider, depending on site considerations.

In addition to site studies, early design considerations have been made for the demonstrator. The rectilinear 6D cooling lattices developed as part of the MAP studies have been identified as a good candidate for cooling experiments [27]. These lattices will enable demonstration of cooling with the low β^* required to get good equilibrium emittance. The rectilinear B5 and B8 lattices have received particular attention. Both lattices yield an excellent cooling performance; the B8 lattice will deliver cooling at the lowest longitudinal emittance, but the challenges in the magnet system may make this lattice more appropriate for offline prototyping with beam tests possible at a later stage in the programme. The B5 lattice would cool at slightly higher emittances, but would still enable a full programme of study of beam physics issues including performance as well as addressing practical issues such as the commissioning of such a novel system.

The RF systems for the demonstrator are particularly challenging. The B5 lattice was designed with RF cavities operating at 650 MHz. However no suitable klystron exists at such a frequency. Klystrons operating at 704 MHz are available, used for example by ESS, but the peak power available is only 2 MW. The most suitable existing klystron would be at 1 GHz, with peak power output of 20 MW. Effort is required to understand whether such a frequency would be suitable for the cooling system; the bunch length would need to be very short, with impact on RF bucket size and longitudinal emittance. The transverse aperture of such RF cavities will be relatively small, and this may impinge on the physical acceptance of the lattice.

In order to realise the cooling demonstrator, an appropriate pion and muon source must be identified. Most sources have relatively long pulses, whereas the cooling demonstrator requires extremely short pulses so that the number of muons in each RF bucket is sufficient to yield an appropriate signal for the beam instrumentation. Even so, in order to meet the initial emittance requirements of the muon cooling system very low emittance muon beams are required, which can only be delivered using a collimation system to yield the appropriate transverse emittance and a phase rotation system to yield the appropriate longitudinal emittance. Event rates between 10^5 and 10^7 muons per pulse have been estimated for a source based on the CERN PS. The actual event rate depends on the configuration of the target and collimation system. Such a low event rate may be challenging for conventional beam instrumentation, and a dedicated study is required to understand potential solutions.

The possibility to share a pion source with another high energy physics facility has been explored. Particular interest has been expressed by the community surrounding the proposed nuSTORM facility. nuSTORM requires a high momentum pion beam, with energy in the range 1-6 GeV. Studies to investigate whether a beam could be shared with nuSTORM are inconclusive. During nuSTORM operations, the target horn system would be tuned for high energy pions and the rate at low energy would be compromised. The possibility to develop a momentum selection chicane that could capture both high and low momentum pions simultaneously has been investigated. Dedicated study would be required to understand the feasibility of combined operations. Even if this were not possible, appropriate sharing of beam time would enable the two facilities to operate using the same target.

The benefit of sharing a facility is significant. Successful operation of nuSTORM would demonstrate the highest power muon beam ever produced, albeit two orders of magnitude below the muon power in the front end of a muon collider. nuSTORM itself would yield a high impact physics programme comprising cross scattering measurements enabling full realisation of the capabilities of the international neutrino oscillation programme and Beyond Standard Model physics searches.

5.8.1.2 Prototype Cooling System

Many of the challenges are associated with integration issues of the magnets, absorbers and RF cavities. For example, operation of normal conducting cavities near to superconducting magnets may compromise the cryogenic performance of the magnet; as discussed elsewhere, operation of RF cavities in strong magnetic fields may lead to a lower breakdown threshold for the RF field gradient; and installation of absorbers, particularly using liquid hydrogen, may be challenging in such compact assemblies. In order to understand and mitigate the associated risks, an offline prototype cooling system will be required. Such a system will require an assembly and testing area, with access to RF power and support services. This could be integrated with the Demonstrator facility, as the Demonstrator will need an area for staging and offline testing of equipment prior to installation on the beamline.

5.8.1.3 Intensity Studies of Ionisation Cooling

The possibility to perform intensity studies with a muon beam are limited owing to the challenges with collecting a high-brightness muon beam in the absence of the full muon collider capture system. However, there are a number of technical issues that may arise in the presence of high beam currents, for example heating of absorbers, beam loading of RF cavities and space charge effects in the vicinity of beam intersecting devices. In the first instance such effects should be studied using the appropriate simulation tools. If such studies reveal potential technical issues, beam studies in the presence of a high intensity source will be necessary, for example using another particle species such as protons. In order to achieve this, a suitable proton beam will be required having an appropriate momentum. Protons lose more energy when passing through material than muons having the same momentum, so appropriate scalings will be required for proton momentum or absorber thickness.

5.8.2 Ionisation Cooling RF Development

In addition to the Cooling Demonstrator, a dedicated programme of key component development will be required. This programme will run in parallel to, and inform development of, the demonstrator facility itself. The cooling systems require normal conducting RF cavities that can operate with high gradient in strong magnetic fields without breakdown. The likelihood of RF breakdown can only be estimated from empirical observations relating the frequency and field gradient and further informed by cavity materials, surface preparation and environmental factors such as external magnetic fields. No satisfactory theory exists to predict the phenomenon. Considerable effort was made by MAP to develop high-gradient RF cavities. Two test cavities have been developed that can exceed the required performance.

The first cavity was filled with gas at very high pressure [25]. Electrons originating from RF breakdown lose significant energy in the gas, so that it acts as an insulator. Muons, on the other hand, lose relatively little energy in the gas compared to the absorbers already present in the cooling channel. By using a gas comprising low atomic number material, such as Hydrogen, the gas can in some circumstances even contribute to the ionisation cooling.

The second cavity used Beryllium walls [26]. Beryllium is both hard and also low density, so that it absorbs relatively little energy from electron beamlets that develop during breakdown and the damage is relatively weaker.

Additional concepts may yield even higher gradients. Operation of normal conducting RF cavities at liquid Nitrogen temperature has been demonstrated to yield reduced multipacting. Additional benefits may include reduced power requirements and reduced cooling requirements on the superconducting, which are situated close to the RF cavities.

Use of a shorter RF pulse may enable beam acceleration before the breakdown can fully develop. The muon pulse is less than 100 nanoseconds long, which is short compared to the RF pulses used during previous cavity tests. Operation of copper cavities at low temperatures, for example liquid Nitrogen temperatures, has also been shown to enable increased field gradient.

In order to test these concepts and others, a dedicated test facility is required. An RF source having high peak power at the appropriate frequency and a large aperture solenoid that can house the RF cavity will be needed and no such facility exists at present.

5.8.3 Cooling magnet tests

Development of a more effective 6D cooling system may also yield improved performance. The longitudinal and transverse emittance delivered by the 6D cooling system is limited by the available magnets. A more demanding cooling system would yield lower longitudinal and transverse emittances, resulting in a shorter final cooling system and potentially less longitudinal emittance growth. Overall the system performance and luminosity would improve.

In order to improve performance high field magnets are required with coils very close together and acting with opposing polarity. The possibility to implement high field magnets such as HTS magnets in these circumstances will be investigated, with appropriate design studies leading to the construction of a high-field solenoid magnet having fields in the range 20-25 T. Techniques for integration with RF cavities will be studied and test of operation in the presence of RF cavities will be performed.

Very high field magnets are required for the final cooling system. In this system, the ultimate transverse emittance is reached using focusing in the highest field magnets. The MAP baseline uses 30 T as the highest field. Even higher fields may be considered. As a first step towards the ultimate performance, a 30 T magnet would be designed and constructed. Feasibility studies towards a 50 T magnet would also be desirable, which may include testing of cables in high field magnets.

These very demanding magnets are envisaged to be developed separately to the Cooling Demonstrator. Eventually such magnets could be tested in beam if it was felt to be a valuable addition to the programme.

In order to support this magnet R&D, appropriate facilities will be required. Testing of cables requires a suitable test area having access to services such as cryogenics and power supplies along with access to high field magnets. Magnet fabrication will also require these facilities in addition to access to appropriate winding capabilities.

5.8.4 Acceleration RCS Magnet Systems

Acceleration within the muon lifetime is rather demanding. The baseline calls for magnets that can cycle through several T on a time scale of a few ms. The exact specification will be defined during the design work, but it is clear that a resonant circuit will be required to power the magnets and work on a prototype is anticipated [43, 44]. Studies will be made to examine the available capacitors and performance under various loads.

The cost and sustainability of RCS magnets is a concern, due to resistive power loss in the conductor and magnetization loss in the magnet cores. In order to study the effect of eddy currents in the magnets, prototyping of novel very thinly laminated cores will be performed.

Superconducting RCS magnets are challenging to realise owing to heating arising from energy dissipation in the conductor during cycling [45]. This heating can lead to demands on the cryogenic systems that outweighs the benefits that may be realised over normal conducting magnets. Recent prototypes have been developed using High Temperature Superconductors that can operate at higher temperatures, and in configurations leading to lower AC losses, yielding improved performance. This is a promising research direction that will be developed as part of the study. In order to continue this research, magnet tests with rapid pulsed power supplies and cryogenic infrastructure will be required.

5.8.5 Effects of radiation on material

The high beam power incident on the target and its surroundings is very demanding. Practical experience from existing facilities coupled with numerical studies indicate that there will be challenges in terms of target temperature and lifetime. Instantaneous shock load on the target will also be challenging. Tests are foreseen to study behaviour of target material under beam in this instance. Tests are desirable both for instantaneous shock load and target lifetime studies.

Additionally, the effect of radiation on superconducting wire is an important parameter in the target region. Studies have been performed as part of the HL-LHC work. As the target solenoid design matures, additional studies may be required taking into account the magnet arrangement, conductor design and estimates of radiation levels.

In order to realise such tests, facilities having both instantaneous power and integrated protons on target equivalent to the proton beam parameters assumed for this study are desirable. Preliminary studies indicate that existing facilities such as HiRadMat at CERN can yield sufficient instantaneous power.

5.8.6 Superconducting RF

Development of efficient superconducting RF with large accelerating gradient is essential for the high energy complex. Initially work will focus on cavity design; however eventually a high gradient prototype at 300-400 MHz frequency will be required. In order to realise such a device, appropriate superconducting cavity production and test facilities will be required including surface preparation techniques and a capability for high power tests.

5.8.7 FFA Magnets

Instead of ramping the synchrotron magnets, the use of FFA-style magnets has been considered. In FFAs the orbit moves to regions of higher field as the energy increases, but the magnets themselves are fixed.

Vertical orbit excursion FFAs have been considered, which have a path length that does not vary with energy. In the ultra-relativistic regime this would yield an isochronous beam. VFFAs are novel, but are under consideration for the next generation of neutron spallation sources. Initially, scalings will be made from magnets designed as part of the associated R&D activity [46]. If FFAs seem promising for the muon collider, dedicated magnet fabrication and testing will eventually be required. Owing to the complicated nature of the field, such fabrication requires challenging magnet windings which may require novel winding facilities and dedicated tests for the specific parameters chosen for the muon collider.

5.9 Collaboration and Organisation

Following the ESPPU the international Muon Collider Collaboration was established by CERN. The Muon Collider Collaboration has as its goal to establish whether the investment into a full Conceptual Design Report and demonstrator for a muon collider is scientifically justified. The MC Study will provide a baseline concept for a muon collider, well-supported performance expectations and assess the associated key risks as well as the cost and electricity consumption drivers. It will also identify an R&D path to demonstrate the feasibility of the collider and support its performance claims. The focus of study will be a collider at 3 TeV and a collider at 10 or more TeV.

An International Collaboration Board (ICB) oversees the MC Study and channels contributions from the Participants. Each Participant has one representative in the ICB. The ICB elects its Chair and can invite representatives of institutes that have not signed this Memorandum to participate in the discussions, without the right to vote.

CERN is the initial host organization for the MC Study, until such time as a change to the hosting of the MC Study is agreed by the International Collaboration Board following a proposal by CERN.

An International Advisory Committee will be established whose mandate is to review the scientific and technical progress of the Study typically on an annual basis and to submit recommendations to the ICB.

The ICB will appoint a MC Study Leader who organises and guides the study, establishes collaborations, ensures coherent communications, coordinates the resources and organises workshops, conferences and meetings where relevant. He or she will be appointed by the ICB and guided by its decisions, and will act under the authority of the head of the host organization. The term of office of the Study Leader will be three years, renewable.

Studies on the detector and physics reach of the collider are an essential part of the study; however they are not within the scope of the Accelerator R&D Roadmap presented here. The Muon Collider Collaboration is coordinating and integrate these efforts.

The international Muon Collider Collaboration has representation from regions outside Europe. In particular, the collaboration is supporting closely the Snowmass process in the US.

5.9.1 Relationship to other fields

The ambitious programme of R&D necessary to deliver the muon collider has the potential to enhance the science that can be done at other muon-beam facilities.

nuSTORM and ENUBET offer world-leading precision in the measurement of neutrino cross sections and exquisite sensitivity to sterile neutrinos and physics beyond the Standard Model. nuSTORM in particular will require capture and storage of a high-power pion and muon beam and management of the resultant radiation near to superconducting magnets. The target and capture system for nuSTORM and ENUBET may also provide a testing ground for the technologies required at the muon collider and as a possible source of beams for the essential 6D cooling-demonstration experiment.

Technologies required to deliver the muon collider are important in a number of fields.

- A multi-MW proton source is at the heart of neutron spallation facilities. Long pulse facilities such as ESS use linacs while short pulse machines such as SNS, JPARC and ISIS accumulate protons either before or after acceleration. The protons are delivered to a target when neutrons are used for material studies. In Europe ESS and ISIS are both studying options for upgrades to MW-class short-pulse proton production.

- High power targetry is of interest in a number of fields, for example neutrino physics and neutron physics. The solenoid focusing that is the baseline for the muon collider will also be employed by the next generation of charged lepton flavour violation experiments.
- High field solenoids required for the muon cooling systems have application in a broad range of sciences. In particular, the high field solenoids envisaged for final stage muon cooling are of great interest in applications such as MRI.
- Rapid cycling synchrotrons are of interest for high power proton users such as neutrino and neutron users. Novel fast ramping synchrotrons can enable higher repetition rates and hence higher beam powers.
- FFAs have been proposed as a route to high proton beam power for secondary particle sources such as neutron spallation sources, owing to the potential for high repetition rate and lower wall plug power compared to other facilities. An FFA is under study as a possible means to upgrade the ISIS neutron and muon source.
- The potential to deliver high quality muon beams could enhance the capabilities of muon sources such as those at PSI and ISIS. The use of frictional cooling to deliver ultra-cold positive and negative muon beams is under study at PSI and may be applicable to the muon collider.
- High gradient RF is of interest to the linear collider community. Linear colliders are limited by the achievable real estate gradient and development here could improve performance. There is considerable potential for collaboration with industry in the development of novel RF power supplies.
- High gradient normal conducting RF cavities are used by electron sources, often near to high field solenoids.

5.9.2 Training and Human Resources

Training is an essential part of the muon accelerator programme. The neutrino factory conference series supports a regular school in essentials of accelerator and neutrino physics, with a significant component dedicated to muon accelerators. The collaboration will continue to support similar endeavours, as well as direct training through PhDs, internships and university-based training.

Communication and outreach is a core part of our effort, both in peer reviewed journals, conferences, workshops and the broader media in collaboration with the appropriate groups in collaboration institutes.

The muon collider collaboration is a global one, and it is important to the project success to include collaboration members from a wide range of backgrounds. The collaboration will continue to support this effort.

5.10 Conclusion

The muon collider presents enormous potential for fundamental physics research at the energy frontier. Previous studies, in particular the MAP study, have demonstrated feasibility of many critical components of the facility. A number of proof-of-principle experiments and component tests, such as MICE, EMMA and the MuCool RF programme, have been carried out to practically demonstrate the underlying technologies.

The muon collider is based on novel concepts and is not as mature as the other high-energy lepton collider options such as ILC and CLIC. However, it promises a unique opportunity to deliver physics reach at the highest energies on a cost, power consumption and time scale that may improve significantly on other proposed colliders. At this stage the panel did not identify any showstopper in the concept.

The panel has identified a viable baseline parameter set and a development path that can address the major challenges and deliver a 3 TeV muon collider by 2045. The panel has proposed the R&D effort that it considers essential to address these challenges during the next five years to a level that allows estimation of the performance, cost and power consumption with greater certainty. Execution of this R&D is required in order to maintain the timescale described in this document. Ongoing developments in underlying technologies will be exploited as they arise in order to ensure the best possible performance. This R&D effort will allow the next ESPPU to make fully informed decisions. It will also benefit equivalent strategy processes in other regions. Based on these decisions a significant ramp-up of resources could be made to accomplish construction by 2045 and exploit the enormous potential of the muon collider.

5.10.1 Acknowledgement

We would like to thank the conveners of the community meetings as well as the speakers and participants of the community meeting, the meeting on muon collider testing opportunities and of the regular muon collider meetings. Special thanks go to Andrea Wulzer for valuable comments on the physics and detector.

References

[1] Muon accelerator programme web page, https://map.fnal.gov/.

[2] M. Bogomilov et al. Demonstration of cooling by the muon ionization cooling experiment. *Nature*, 578, 2020.

[3] D. Alesini et al. Positron driven muon source for a muon collider, 2019.

[4] P. Roloff et al. The Compact Linear e^+e^- Collider (CLIC): Physics Potential. 12 2018.

[5] Antonio Costantini et al. Vector boson fusion at multi-tev muon colliders. *Journal of High Energy Physics*, 2020(9), 2020.

[6] H. Al Ali et al. The Muon Smasher's Guide. *ArXiv*, 2103.14043, 2021.

[7] A. Wulzer et al. Letter of interest: Muon collider physics potential. *Submission to Snowmass21.*

[8] https://indico.cern.ch/event/1037447/.

[9] https://indico.cern.ch/event/969815/.

[10] https://conference.ippp.dur.ac.uk/event/967/.

[11] https://indico.cern.ch/category/12792/.

[12] D. Cline quoting G. I. Budker and A. N. Skrinsky. *Physics Potential and Development of* $\mu^+\mu^-$.

[13] A. N. Skrinsky and V. V. Parkhomchuk. *Fiz. Elem. Chastits At. Yadra*, 12, 1981.

[14] ECFA/CERN studies of a European neutrino factory complex. In A. Blondel et al., editors, *3rd ECFA/BENE Workshop on the Future of Accelerator Neutrino Experiments in Europe*, CERN Yellow Reports: Monographs, 4 2004.

[15] M. Bogomilov et al. Neutrino factory. *PRSTAB*, 17, 2014.

[16] I. Efthymiopoulos et al. The MERIT (nTOF-11) high intensity liquid mercury target experiment at the CERN PS. *Proc. European Particle Accelerator Conference*, 2008.

[17] O. Caretta, T. Davenne, C. Densham, M. Fitton, P. Loveridge, J. O'Dell, N. Charitonidis, I. Efthymiopoulos, A. Fabich, and L. Rivkin. Response of a tungsten powder target to an incident high energy proton beam. *Phys. Rev. ST Accel. Beams*, 17:101005, Oct 2014.

[18] X. Ding et al. Carbon and mercury target systems for muon colliders and neutrino factories. *Proc. of the International Particle Accelerator Conference*, 2016.

[19] C. T. Rogers, D. Stratakis, G. Prior, S. Gilardoni, D. Neuffer, P. Snopok, A. Alekou, and J. Pasternak. Muon front end for the neutrino factory. *Phys. Rev. ST Accel. Beams*, 16:040104, Apr 2013.

[20] M. Zisman Ed. S. Ozaki, R. Palmer and J. Gallardo. Feasibility study-ii of a muon-based neutrino source. *BNL-52623*, 2001.

[21] Ed. S. Geer and M. Zisman. Neutrino factory and beta beam experiments and development. *BNL-72369*, 2004.

[22] S.A. Bogacz. Muon acceleration concepts for numax:dual-use linac and dogbone rla. *JINST*, 13, 2018.

[23] S. Machida. Acceleration in the linear non-scaling fixed-field alternating-gradient accelerator EMMA. *Nature Physics*, 8, 2012.

[24] J. P. Delahaye M. Boscolo and M. Palmer. The future prospects of muon colliders and neutrino factories. *RAST*, 10, 2019.

[25] B. Freemire et al. The experimental program for high pressure gas filled radio frequency cavities for muon cooling channels. *JINST*, 13, 2018.

[26] D. Bowring et al. Operation of normal-conducting RF cavities in multi-tesla magnetic fields for muon ionization cooling: A feasibility demonstration. *PRAB*, 23, 2020.

[27] D. Stratakis and R.B. Palmer. Rectilinear six-dimensional ionization cooling channel for a muon collider: A theoretical and numerical study. *PRSTAB*, 18, 2015.

[28] H. Sayed et al. High field - low energy muon ionization cooling channel. *PRSTAB*, 18, 2015.

[29] J.S. Berg and H. Witte. Pulsed synchrotrons for very rapid acceleration. *AIP Conference Proc.*, 1777, 2016.

[30] B. King. Neutrino radiation challenges and proposed solutions for many-TeV muon colliders. *BNL - 67408*, 2000.

[31] N. V. Mokhovy and A. Van Ginneken. Neutrino induced radiation at muon colliders. *Proc. of the Particle Accelerator Conference*, 1999.

[32] F. Collamati et al. Advanced assessment of beam induced background at a muon collider. *ArXiv*, 2105.09116.

[33] N. Bartosik et al. Detector and physics performance at a muon collider. *JINST*, 15, 2020.

[34] M. Zisman. Proton beam requirements for a neutrino factory and muon collider. *Proc. of the Workshop on Applications of High Intensity Proton Accelerators*, LBNL-2932E, 2009.

[35] D. Neuffer et al. Front end for a neutrino factory or muon collider. *JINST*, 12, 2017.

[36] Y. Alexahin. Helical FOFO snake for initial six-dimensional cooling of muons. *JINST*, 13, 2018.

[37] C. Yoshikawa et al. A charge separation study to enable the design of a complete muon cooling channel. *Proc. of the Particle Accelerator Conference*, 2013.

[38] Y. Bao et al. Conceptual design and modeling of a six-dimensional bunch merging scheme for a muon collider. *PRAB*, 19, 2016.

[39] K. Tsujimoto et al. Research and development program on accelerator driven subcritical system in jaea. *Journal of Nucl. Sci. and Tech.*, 44(3), 2007.

[40] O. Caretta et al. Proton beam induced dynamics of tungsten granules. *PRAB*, 21, 2018.

[41] Y. Alexahin et al. Muon collider lattice concepts. *JINST*, 13, 2018.

[42] https://indico.cern.ch/event/1061280/.

[43] https://indico.cern.ch/event/1077393.

[44] Y. Alexahin, E. Gianfelice-Wendt, and V. Kapin. Muon collider lattice concepts. 13(11):P11002–P11002, nov 2018.

[45] Henryk Piekarz, Steven Hays, Jamie Blowers, Brad Claypool, and Vladimir Shiltsev. Record fast-cycling accelerator magnet based on hts conductor. *Nuclear Instruments and Methods in Physics Research Section A: Accelerators, Spectrometers, Detectors and Associated Equipment*, 943:162490, 2019.

[46] JB Lagrange. Development of vertical excursion ffa. In *Snowmass21 Workshop on FFAs and Cyclotrons*, 2021.

6 Energy-Recovery Linacs

Editor: M. Klein[b]

Panel members: M. Klein[b,*] *(Chair), A. Hutton*[a] *(Co-Chair), D. Angal-Kalinin*[c], *K. Aulenbacher*[d], *A. Bogacz*[a], *G. Hoffstaetter*[e,f], *E. Jensen*[g], *W. Kaabi*[h], *D. Kayran*[f], *J. Knobloch*[i], *B. Kuske*[i], *F. Marhauser*[a], *N. Pietralla*[j], *O. Tanaka*[k], *C. Vaccarezza*[l], *N. Vinokurov*[m], *P. Williams*[c], *F. Zimmermann*[g]

Associated members: M. Arnold[j], *M. Bruker*[a], *G. Burt*[n], *P. Evtushenko*[o], *J. Kühn*[i], *B. Militsyn*[c], *A. Neumann*[i], *B. Rimmer*[a]

Sub-Panel on CERC and ERLC: A. Hutton[a] *(Chair), C. Adolphsen*[p], *O. Brüning*[g], *R. Brinkmann*[q], *M. Klein*[b], *S. Nagaitsev*[r], *P. Williams*[c], *A. Yamamoto*[k], *K. Yokoya*[k] *F. Zimmermann*[g]

[a]Jefferson Lab, Virginia, USA
[b]University of Liverpool, UK
[c]STFC Daresbury Laboratory, UK
[d]Mainz University, Germany
[e]Cornell University, Ithaca, New York, USA
[f]BNL, Upton, New York, USA
[g]CERN, Geneva, Switzerland
[h]IJCLab, Orsay, France
[i]Helmholtz-Zentrum Berlin, Germany
[j]Technical University Darmstadt, Germany
[k]KEK, Tsukuba, Japan
[l]LNF/INFN, Frascati, Italy
[m]BINP, Novosibirsk, Russia
[n]University of Lancaster, UK
[o]Helmholtz-Zentrum Rossendorf, Germany
[p]SLAC, California, USA
[q]DESY Hamburg, Germany
[r]Fermilab, Chicago, USA

6.1 Executive summary of findings to date

Energy Recovery is at the threshold to becoming a major means for the advancement of accelerators. Recycling the kinetic energy of a used beam for accelerating a newly injected beam, i.e., reducing the power consumption, utilising the high injector brightness and dumping at injection energy: these are the key elements of a novel accelerator concept, invented half a century ago [1]. The potential of this technique may indeed be compared with the finest innovations of accelerator technology such as by Widerøe, Lawrence, Veksler, Kerst, van der Meer and others during the past century. Innovations of such depth are rare, and their impact is only approximately predictable.

The fundamental principles of energy-recovery linacs (ERLs) have now been successfully demonstrated across the globe. There can no longer be any doubt that an ERL can be built and achieve its goals. The history, present and future directions of the development of ERLs for particle, nuclear and applied

---

[*] max.klein@liverpool.ac.uk

This contribution should be cited as: Energy Recovery Linacs, DOI: 10.23731/CYRM-2021-XXX.171, in: European Strategy for Particle Physics - Accelerator R&D Roadmap (Interim Report), Ed. N. Mounet,
CERN Yellow Reports: Monographs, CERN-2021-XXX, DOI: 10.23731/CYRM-2021-XXX, p. 171.

physics, are summarised in a long write-up on “The Development of Energy Recovery Linacs” [2], which accompanies the appearance of this roadmap. An important, preparatory milestone was an ERL Symposium [3] held in June 2021 which, in consultation with the particle and accelerator physics communities, discussed the basis, status, impact, technology, and prospects of the field of ERLs. The technique of energy recovery in superconducting linac cavities promises a luminosity increase for physics applications by one or more orders of magnitude at a power consumption comparable to classic, lower-luminosity solutions, which is a necessary step towards the sustainability of high-energy physics, as interaction cross sections fall at high scales. Much enhanced luminosities are similarly crucial for opening new areas of low-energy physics such as nuclear photonics or the spectroscopy of exotic nuclei. ERLs are also near utilisation in several industrial and other applications such as photo-lithography, free electron lasers, inverse photon scattering and others.

The novel high-energy ERL concepts targeted at energy-frontier electron-hadron, electron-positron and electron-photon colliders, as well as further physics and other applications, require the development of high-brightness electron guns and dedicated SRF technology as prime R&D objectives. Moreover, it needs a facility comprising all essential features simultaneously: high current, multi-pass, optimised cavities and cryomodules, and a physics-quality beam eventually for experiments.

The ERL roadmap presented here rests upon three major, interrelated elements:

A) Facilities in progress, including crucial technological developments and operational experience. These comprise sDALINAC (TU Darmstadt, Germany), MESA (U Mainz, Germany), CBETA (U Cornell and BNL, US), cERL (KEK, Japan) and the normal-conducting, lower-frequency Recuperator facility (BINP Novosibirsk, Russia);

B) A key technology R&D program focused on high-current electron sources and high-power SRF technology and operation in the years ahead, including the target to achieve cavity quality factors, Q_0, near to 10^{11}. Next generation ERLs lead to the major goal of being able to operate at 4.4 K cryogenic temperature [3] with high Q_0, also including higher-order mode damping at high temperature, dual-axis cavity developments and novel means for high-current ERL diagnostics and beam instrumentation to deal with effects such as beam break-up or RF transients;

C) New ERL facilities in preparation for reaching higher currents and electron beam energies at minimum power consumption by the mid twenties. These are, in Europe, bERLinPRO (Berlin, Germany) with the goal to operate a 100 mA, 1.3 GHz facility and PERLE (hosted by IJCLab Orsay, France) as the first multi-turn, high-power, 802 MHz facility with novel physics applications. In the coming years, the US will explore ERL operation near 10 GeV with CEBAF5 (Jefferson Lab, Newport News) and develop a challenging 100 mA electron cooler for hadron beams at the EIC [4] (BNL, Brookhaven).

ERLs are the means to reach out to very high luminosity in the next-generation, energy frontier electron-hadron colliders, LHeC and FCC-eh [5, 6]. An ERL-based proposal has been published [7] for the generation of picometer-emittance-class muon beams by electron-photon collisions. Two concepts have been published and explored as part of this roadmap process for reaching higher luminosity at high energies—for the FCC-ee, termed CERC [8], and for the ILC, termed ERLC [9]. A particularly interesting prospect is to design and possibly build an energy-efficient, ultra-high-luminosity ERL-based electron-positron collider at 500 GeV, termed HH500, which would enable the exploration of the Higgs vacuum potential with a measurement of the tri-linear Higgs coupling in e^+e^-.

In summary, the panel notes with much interest that the ERL technology is close to its high-current and high-energy application, requiring dedicated and coordinated R&D efforts, with the stunning potential to revolutionise particle, nuclear and applied physics as well as key industry areas, at a time where caring for energy resources is an overarching necessity for this planet, not least big science. ERLs are

---

[3] The basic 4.4 K R&D program is hosted by the SRF panel, while for ERLs it leads to the development and beam test of a warm cavity-cryomodule in a decade hence. Operation at 4.4 K would allow universities to adopt small superconducting accelerators for inverse Compton back-scattering, FELs, isotope production, etc. Apart from the societal aspect, this would provide a steady product line for SRF cavity and cryomodule production by industry, which would in turn benefit future HEP colliders.

therefore primed for inclusion among the grand visions our field has been generating, and for dedication of adequate support to it, in Europe as well as globally, for this unique potential to bear fruit.

6.2 Introduction

6.2.1 History

The idea of an energy-recovery linac traces back to Maury Tigner [1] in 1965. He was looking at ways to enhance the current in a collider for high-energy physics. Accelerating two beams, colliding them, and then dumping them is extremely inefficient. If one could recover the energy of the beams in the same cavities in which they were accelerated, then the efficiency of the machine could be greatly increased. The design of the final dump also becomes much simpler. Though the idea was sound, the implementation of an efficient solution relied on the development of reliable superconducting radiofrequency (SRF) accelerating cavities. These were developed over the next decade. The first major use of SRF cavities was at the High Energy Physics Lab at Stanford University. Researchers there installed a recirculation loop with the capability of varying the path length so that the electrons in a second pass through the accelerating cavities could be either accelerated or decelerated. Both options were demonstrated. This was the first ERL with SRF cavities [10]. This type of ERL is called same-cell energy recovery. The beam was not used for anything, and the current was pulsed, but evidence for energy recovery was clearly seen in the RF power requirements during the beam pulse.

Other demonstrations of energy recovery with room-temperature cavities were carried out at Chalk River [11] and Los Alamos National Lab [12]. The Los Alamos demonstration used coupled accelerating and decelerating cavities, and it had an FEL in the beamline so the overall FEL efficiency could, in principle, be increased, but the cavity losses and the RF transport losses led to an overall increase in the RF power required, showing the advantage of SRF cavities being nearly lossless for same-cell energy recovery.

During the early development of CEBAF at what is now Jefferson Lab, the ability to recirculate beam in the newly-developed SRF cavities was tested in the Front End Test (FET) [13], where the beam was recirculated in a fashion similar to the HEPL experiment. The current in this case, however, could be run continuously, and both recirculation (two accelerating passes) and an energy-recovery configuration were demonstrated.

While all of this technology development work was taking place, several authors noted that the ERL was a natural way to increase the overall efficiency of a Free-Electron Laser (FEL) since the FEL usually only takes about 1 % of the energy of the electron beam out as laser radiation and then dumps the rest. If one could recover most of the beam power at the exit of the FEL, one could greatly enhance the overall efficiency of the laser. The Los Alamos experiment demonstrated some of the concepts of an ERL-based FEL but was a low-average-power, pulsed device.

This led to the development of an IR Demo project at Jefferson Lab [14], based on the same cryomodules that had been developed for CEBAF. This was a resounding success, exceeding all of the ambitious goals that had been established with a 35 MeV to 48 MeV, 5 mA electron beam producing 2.1 kW of IR outcoupled to users. This enabled the development of an even more ambitious goal: to increase the power levels by a factor of ten, which was then achieved by a rebuild of the recirculation arcs and an increase of the electron energy. This facility circulated 9 mA at up to 150 MeV, still the highest current that has been recirculated in an SRF ERL [15]. There was a considerable amount of beam optics studies which laid the foundation for the design of later ERL facilities.

The ERLs at JLab were important demonstrations of high beam power without a large installed RF power source. The IR Upgrade ERL operated with over 1.1 MW of beam power with only about 300 kW of installed RF, thus demonstrating the most basic reason for building an ERL. Other devices were also built, however, which pushed other frontiers. Novosibirsk has built two ERLs using room-temperature cavities [16]. While the copper losses of the cavities result in low efficiency, these machines were able to recirculate up to 30 mA of average current, still the record for recirculated current. The two ERLs are used for far-infrared FELs in a very active user program.

A group at JAERI built an ERL that used novel cryogenic cooling at long wavelengths to produce a very efficient ERL. They also pushed the efficiency of the FEL to record levels for an ERL [17]. The group at KEK commissioned a high-current ERL test machine that is designed for currents up to 100 mA and demonstrated 1 mA of beam recirculation. The photocathode gun operates at 500 kV, the highest of any photocathode gun [18].

An ERL similar in design to the Jefferson Lab ERL, ALICE, was built at the Daresbury Lab. It operated pulsed due to radiation and refrigeration concerns but demonstrated both THz production and IR FEL operation [19]. ALICE was shut down after ten years of successful operation, having achieved its objectives.

As part of an ERL program for a light source, Cornell commissioned an injector with the highest average current demonstrated from a photocathode injector [20]. Following this, they reused the gun, booster and a single cryomodule as the basis for CBETA. The arcs that return the beam to the cryomodule used a novel technique, Fixed-Field Alternating-Gradient (FFAG) transport, to demonstrate the first multi-pass energy recovery in an SRF-based ERL [21].

6.2.2 Technology

In an Energy-Recovery Linac, a high-average-current electron beam is accelerated to relativistic energies in (typically) a superconducting RF CW linear accelerator. The beam is then used for its intended purpose, i.e., providing a gain medium for a free-electron laser, synchrotron light production, a cooling source for ion beams, or a high energy particle collider. The application usually creates an increase in the energy spread or emittance of the electron beam, while the majority of the beam power remains. To recover this power, the beam is then sent back through the accelerator again, only this time roughly 180° off the accelerating RF phase. The beam is therefore decelerated as it goes through the linac, putting its power back into the RF fields, and dumped with some (small) residual energy.

Three major system benefits accrue from this manipulation: the required RF power (and its capital cost and required electricity) is significantly reduced, the beam power that must be dissipated in the dump is reduced by a large factor, and often the electron beam dump energy can be reduced below the photo-neutron threshold, minimizing the activation of the dump region, so the required shielding of the facility can be reduced. The cost savings associated with incorporation of energy recovery must be balanced against the need to provide a beam transport system to re-inject the beam to the linac for recovery. If significant growth in the energy spread or emittance of the electron beam has occurred in the process of utilising the beam, then this transport system can necessitate significant manipulation of the beam phase space. While these techniques are well understood by now, any new machine requires considerable care in the design phase to minimise operational problems.

There are additional benefits that accrue from the geometry and physics of such a machine. An ERL has the ability to supply extremely low emittances (of approximately equal value in both planes) for the production of synchrotron light with high peak and average brightness, or for electron beam cooling. Additionally, the ERL has the advantage of being able to optimize beta functions independently without exceeding the dynamic aperture limitations that rings present.

Finally, the ability of the ERL to operate at low charges with small longitudinal emittances enables the production of very short electron pulses at extremely high repetition rates. To achieve these benefits requires careful design, including answering a number of physics issues.

Several advances have been made on the hardware side to enable the potential of ERLs, most notably in the field of SRF cavity design to allow high currents, including damping of unwanted Higher-Order Modes (HOMs) to avoid beam break-up issues. Yet, the continual improvement in ERL capability is still pushing the technology limits in several areas, including SRF. Another active research area is the development of a high-current, ultra-high-brightness, CW electron source. Extensive development efforts for CW sources have been undertaken at many laboratories, and substantial efforts are also required for appropriate diagnostics e.g. to measure multiple different energy beams simultaneously.

All relevant aspects have now been addressed at some level, but not always simultaneously. It is generally believed (and history bears this out) that progress in accelerator performance usually requires steps of about a factor of ten. This roadmap is established to show how the next 5–10 years may be used for ERLs to advance as a base for electron-hadron and electron-positron colliders, as a hub for high intensity particle and nuclear physics at low energies, and with an impact on industry and other science areas. It will become clear and to be exploited that ERLs are to a large extent a global, pioneering project. Europe will develop into a leading role with its existing and new facilities as well as with fundamental technology projects. A vision for ERLs, as will be outlined, is the development of the 4.4 K technology, to reduce the power consumption of tens of km long linacs and to also revive SRF technology by making it accessible to smaller labs and Universities which do not have 2 K helium cryogenics available. Following a remarkable history, a next step of ERL development is near which will grant ERLs entrance to energy-frontier particle physics.

6.3 Motivation

6.3.1 Energy-frontier particle physics and the economy of power

More than five decades of particle physics have passed, establishing the Standard Model (SM), a unified electroweak interaction with QCD attached to it. And yet, we are in a similar situation as before the discovery of quarks: theory provides questions, but no firm answers. The SM has known, fundamental deficiencies: a proliferation of too many parameters, a missing explanation of the repetitive quark and lepton family pattern, an unresolved left-right asymmetry in the neutrino sector related to lepton-flavour non-conservation, an unexplained flavour hierarchy, the intriguing question of parton confinement, and others. The Standard Model carries the boson-fermion asymmetry, it mixes the three interactions but has no grand unification, it needs experiments to determine the parton dynamics inside the proton, it has no prediction for the existence of a yet lower layer of substructure, and it does not explain the difference between leptons and quarks. Moreover, the SM has missing links to Dark Matter, possibly through Axions, and Quantum Gravity, while string theory still resides apart. The Standard Model is a phenomenologically successful theory, fine tuned to describe a possibly metastable universe [22].

Principally new theories, however, would be required to "turn the SM on its head" as Steven Weinberg stated not long ago noting "There isn't a clear idea to break into the future beyond the Standard Model" [23]. It remains the conviction, as Gian Giudice described it in his eloquent "imaginary conversation" with the late Guido Altarelli, that "A new paradigm change seems to be necessary" [24] in the "Dawn of the post naturalness era".

Apparently, particle physics is as interesting, challenging, and far-reaching as it has ever been in recent history. It yet needs revolutionary advances in insight, observation, and technologies, not least for its accelerator base. It demands that new generation hadron-hadron, electron-hadron and pure lepton colliders be developed and realised. Hardly a new paradigm can be established with just one type of collider in the future. The field needs global cooperation, trust and complementarity of its techniques, a lesson learned from the exploration of the physics at the Fermi scale with the Tevatron, HERA and LEP/SLC.

As new phenomena may be expected to be rare and high-scale cross sections are small, new colliders have to reach integrated luminosities increased by orders of magnitude as compared to the colliders of the recent past. With increasing energy and luminosity, wall plug power demands rise to values which, even if they still could be realised, are essentially unacceptable in a world which fights for its sustainability and energy balance. To quote Frederick Bordry [25]: "There will be no future large-scale science project without an energy management component, an incentive for energy efficiency and energy recovery among the major objectives". It is a built-in feature of energy recovery linacs that the power required for operation is an order of magnitude or more below the beam power. A prime motivation for the ERL panel had been to evaluate this feature and its underlying technology demands as a crucial part of the ERL strategy for the coming and future years ahead. This leads to emphasis on further increased cavity quality, 4.4 K technology, Fast Reactive Tuners (FRT) and other key elements of the ERL roadmap described here. ERLs, for electron-hadron and electron-positron colliders, are a "route royale" to high energy, high luminosity and limited power consumption, not easy but now possible to follow, owing to half a century of often generic ERL and SRF R&D efforts.

6.3.2 Accelerator developments

Energy-Recovery Linacs are an extremely efficient technique for accelerating high-average-current electron beams. As mentioned before, in an ERL, an intense electron beam is accelerated to relativistic energies in (typically) a superconducting RF linear accelerator operating in continuous-wave (CW) mode. The beam is then used for its intended purpose, i.e., providing a gain medium for a free-electron laser, synchrotron light production, or a cooling source for ion beams. In high-energy physics, the interest is on an intense, low-emittance e^- beam for colliding against hadrons (eh), positrons ($\mathrm{e}^+\mathrm{e}^-$) or photons (eγ). They all rely on the provision of high electron currents (of I_e up to $\sim 100\,\mathrm{mA}$) and high-quality cavities ($Q_0 > 10^{10}$). As part of this roadmap, novel techniques are to be worked out and applied for monitoring beams of such high power, as is explained subsequently.

ERLs provide maximum luminosity through a high-brightness source, high energy through possible multi-turn recirculation, and high power, which is recovered in the deceleration of a used beam. It is remarkable that following the LHeC design from 2012 [26] (updated in 2020 [5]), all these avenues have been pursued: for $\gamma\gamma$ collisions [27] using the LHeC racetrack, further for eh with the FCC-eh in 2018 [6], for $\mathrm{e}^+\mathrm{e}^-$ in 2019 with an ERL concept for FCC-ee, termed CERC [8]), and in 2021 with an ERL version of the ILC, termed ERLC [9]), and very recently also with a concept for the generation of picometer-emittance muon pairs through high-energy, high-current eγ collisions [7].

A common task for these colliders is precision SM Higgs boson measurements dealing with a small cross section (of 0.2/1 pb in charged current ep interactions at LHeC/FCC-eh and similarly of 0.3 pb in Z-Higgsstrahlung at $\mathrm{e}^+\mathrm{e}^-$). This makes maximising the luminosity a necessity to profit from the clean experimental conditions and to access rare decay channels while limiting power. High luminosity and energy are expected to lead beyond the Standard Model and are essential for precision measurements at the corners of phase space.

A particularly interesting prospect is to design and possibly build an energy efficient, ultra-high-luminosity ERL-based electron-positron collider, which would enable the exploration of the Higgs vacuum potential with a precise measurement of the tri-linear Higgs coupling. The $e^+e^- \to ZH \to HH$ production cross section is maximal near 500 GeV cms energy with a value of about $0.1\,\mathrm{fb}^{-1}$ [28]. For measuring this at per-cent level, a luminosity of $10^{36}\,\mathrm{cm}^{-2}\mathrm{s}^{-1}$ is required. In order for this to happen with a linear collider, it shall be based on novel cavity technology that exploits 4.4 K cryogenics for which pure Niobium is not suited as its Q_0 drops to 10^8. This sets a long-term goal of combining of high gradient, $\geq 20\,\mathrm{MV/m}$, high Q_0, $\geq 3 \times 10^{10}$, achieved also with dual axis cavities, 4.4 K technology, and room-temperature HOM damping to limit cost and power [4]. This goal has been translated to a long-term, high-quality ERL R&D program that has a strong link to the SRF panel roadmap.

While these requirements, as happened in history before, arise with particle physics, they are in line with and beneficial for general technical developments and applications. The 4.4 K technology is suited to reduce cryoplant cost and heat load for HOM extraction. This makes SCRF more cost-effective both in capital and operating cost. Examples of industrial interest includes semiconductor lithography

---

[4] Emphasis on the 4.4 K program and the recognition of the $\mathrm{e}^+\mathrm{e}^-$ ERL collider potential was strongly supported by the evaluation of two recent ingenious concepts, which were connected to FCC-ee and ILC, by the intense analysis of a sub-panel. The results are described in Section 6.4.

and gamma sources for nuclear industry. During previous studies of such applications with comparable scale, the capital cost of cryogenics comprised about 25 % of the full facility cost. The operating cost of electricity and maintenance again typically comprises 25 % of the full operating cost. Reducing these therefore has a significant impact on the economics of commercial deployment. Finally, at 4.4 K, SRF technology becomes accessible to smaller research labs or universities by avoiding the very special and expensive requirements posed by superfluid technology. This is expected to feed back to SRF industry, on which particle physics depends to a considerable extent.

6.3.3 Physics opportunities with sub-GeV beams

The unique beam properties of ERLs—high intensity and small emittance—enable substantial experimental advances for a variety of physics goals at lower energies. This is described in detail in [2].

Form factors of nucleons and nuclei are classically accessed via elastic electron scattering. Recently, the low-Q^2 form factors of the proton was in the focus of increased scrutiny because of the proton charge radius puzzle (for a recent overview, see [29]), a more than 5σ difference in the charge radius extracted from muonic spectroscopy and all other determination methods. The determination of the proton form factors is limited by experimental systematics stemming from target-related background. The high beam current available at ERLs allows us to employ comparatively thin targets, for example cluster jets [30], which minimise this background, paving the way for a new generation of experiments. In a similar vein, the relatively high luminosity and typically small energies at places like MESA allow us to measure the magnetic form factor, only accessible at backward angles at low Q^2, with substantially increased precision—in a Q^2 range highly relevant for the magnetic and Zeeman radii and where the current data situation is especially dire. Further electron scattering experiments include dark sector searches like DarkLight@ARIEL, aiming at masses of a couple of (tens of) MeV.

In backscattered photon scattering, the luminosity available exceeds that of ELI by a few orders of magnitude, paving the way to nuclear photonics, an area possibly comparable with the appearance of lasers in the sixties. For example, the intensities achievable at an ERL allow nuclear parity mixing to be accessed. Photonuclear reactions test the theory for nuclear matrix elements relevant for the neutrino mass determination from neutrino-less double beta decay. They can be used to study key reactions for stellar evolution. Ab-initio calculations of light nuclei (see, e.g., [31]) are much advanced and need to be tested with precision measurements.

A further fundamental interest regards the exploration of unstable nuclear matter with intense electron beams of $\mathcal{O}(500\,\mathrm{MeV})$ energy as is characteristic for PERLE and envisaged for GANIL in France. This follows the recognition of the field by NuPECC in their strategic plan in 2017: “Ion-electron colliders represent a crucial innovative perspective in nuclear physics to be pushed forward in the coming decade. They would require the development of intense electron machines to be installed at facilities where a large variety of radioactive ions can be produced”.

6.3.4 Industrial and other applications

The range of further applications, beyond particle and nuclear physics, is very remarkable. Examples include high-power lasers, photolithography, and the use of inverse Compton scattering (ICS) [2]. An ERL-FEL based on a 40 GeV LHeC electron beam would generate a record laser with a peak brilliance similar to the European XFEL but an average brilliance which is four orders of magnitude higher than that of the XFEL [32].

The industrial process of producing semiconductor chips comprises the placing of electronic components of nanometre scale onto a substrate or wafer via photolithography. For advancing this technology to nm dimensions, the FEL must be driven by a superconducting ERL. An ERL with electron beam energy of about 1 GeV would enable multi-kW production of extreme-ultraviolet (EUV) light. This would benefit the global semiconductor industry by allowing the study of FEL capabilities at an industrial output level. Initial surveys and design studies were undertaken by industry some years ago. If the economic viability may be underpinned by large scale high reliability, ERLs might well reach into the market, which in 2020 was 400 billion euro.

A third example, interesting due to its applications for nuclear physics but also exotic medical isotope generation and transmutation, is the process of very intense inverse Compton scattering. An about 1 GeV energy superconducting ERL operating at high average electron current in the 10 to 100 mA range would enable a high-flux, narrowband gamma source based on ICS of the electron beam with an external laser within a high-finesse recirculating laser cavity. The production of 10 to 100 MeV gammas via ICS results in the properties of the gamma beam being fundamentally improved with respect to standard bremsstrahlung generation. This ICS process would be a step change in the production of high-flux, narrowband, energy-tunable, artificial gamma-ray beams. They will enable quantum-state selective excitation of atomic nuclei along with a yet-unexploited field of corresponding applications.

The panel highlighted a further example of ERL impact: Using high-field (15 T) bending magnets in an ERL in the energy range of 1 GeV, one can build a unique user facility with sub-picosecond X-ray pulses. Those cannot be achieved by contemporary sources, see [2], which have to use femto-slicing techniques [33] with very low photon flux instead. The JLab UV Demo FEL demonstrated less than 0.2 ps r.m.s. bunch duration (at an electron energy of 135 MeV and a longitudinal emittance of 50 keV ps) [34]. Therefore, at higher energies it is possible to obtain 0.1 ps and less. For example, installation of 15 T bending magnets to the last orbit of PERLE at 500 MeV provides synchrotron radiation with a critical energy of 2.5 keV (leading to 7 keV photons), enough for most of the experiments that use femto-slicing now. For lower-energy ERLs, such as bERLinPro, there is a similar option with bremsstrahlung on a few-micron Carbon foil. The advantage of Carbon is a high fail temperature and, therefore, good radiation cooling of the foil, which allows a high electron current density (small spot size) at the foil. The tests of such a scheme have been started with the Novosibirsk ERL (Recuperator) at 40 MeV. ERLs have a potential to radically advance our knowledge, science, and industry as these few examples illustrate.

6.4 Panel activities

6.4.1 Summary

The ERL Roadmap Panel was recruited and its membership endorsed by the LDG in early 2021. It has 18 members from three continents, representing leading institutions and major ERL facilities (past, ongoing, or in progress), and assembles key expertise such as on injectors, superconducting RF, operation and management. Supported by the LDG, the panel decided early on to write a baseline paper on ERLs for publication [2] for accompanying the appearance of this roadmap. That paper, written by about 50 co-authors, describes the history, present, challenges, prospects, physics, and applications of ERL technology and is thought to be an up-to-date, comprehensive reference paper, which neither the short interim report delivered on July 21 nor this roadmap could represent.

On Friday 4th of June 21, an extended Symposium on the Development of Energy Recovery Linacs was held [3], introduced by Dave Newbold for the LDG. With 100 participants and including an hour-long discussion, this was an important consultation with a community of interested accelerator, particle, and nuclear physicists. The talks presented there are suitable and interesting material for a quick introduction: ERL facilities (Andrew Hutton), high-current electron sources (Boris Militsyn), SRF developments for ERLs (Bob Rimmer), ERL prospects for high-energy colliders (Oliver Brüning, Low-energy physics with ERLs (Jan Bernauer), Industrial applications (Peter Williams) and Sustainability (Erk Jensen), chaired by Bettina Kuske and Olga Tanaka. Max Klein was invited to present intermediate summary reports to a TIARA meeting in June and, like the other panel chairs, to the EPS Conference at DESY (virtually) in July 21 [35].

Over the summer 21, members of the panel and further colleagues in a sub-panel, were involved in an evaluation of future e^+e^- ERL collider concepts and their implications for this roadmap. A summary of the findings of this sub-panel is given in the next section and in more detail in [2].

In the final phase of its activities, the panel's emphasis focused on the development of the actual roadmap and this report. This was made possible through much work of the facility representatives, including ERL panel members, and further contributions and consultations with a number of colleagues worldwide for which we are extremely grateful, far exceeding the list of authors of this report. What had begun as an attractive, interesting task developed to an intense process which hopefully will bear fruit. It had been motivated by the conviction to work on one of the most fascinating and promising new accelerator concepts, of which energy-frontier particle physics does not have many.

6.4.2 Analysis of Future e^+e^- ERL collider prospects and their R&D

While our panel started to work, the ERLC concept was put forward [36] to possibly build the ILC as an energy-recovery twin collider, with the prospect of a major increase in e^+e^- luminosity as compared to the ILC default. Similarly, the CERC concept had been published [37] to configure the FCC-ee as a circular energy-recovery collider, with very high luminosity extending to a large c.m.s. energy of $\mathcal{O}(500\,\text{GeV})$. In agreement with the LDG, this caused the formation of a sub-panel, see the ERL title page, to evaluate the luminosity prospects, the R&D involved, and the schedule and cost consequences for both ERL-based e^+e^- collider options. This group met frequently throughout the summer and had to deal with changes of the parameters of CERC and ERLC which partially arose in a friendly dialogue with the authors of these concepts. A brief summary of this evaluation—a topic in progress—is presented here, while a more detailed report will be available with the ERL baseline paper accompanying this roadmap report.

CERC

The Circular Energy Recovery Collider is proposed as an alternative approach for a high-energy high-luminosity electron-positron collider based on two storage rings with 100 km circumference and a maximum CM energy of 365 GeV. The main shortcoming of a collider based on storage rings is the high electric power consumption required to compensate for the 100 MW of synchrotron radiation power. This concept aims to drastically reduce the electrical power for the RF. The sub-panel task was to evaluate whether the total power would also be reduced compared to the FCC-ee.

According to the proponents, an Energy Recovery Linac (ERL) located in the same-size 100 km tunnel would allow a large reduction of the beam energy losses while providing a higher luminosity and extending the CM energy to 500 GeV, enabling double-Higgs production, and even to 600 GeV for ttH production and measurements of the top Yukawa coupling. This concept also proposes to recycle the particles as well as the energy to enable collisions of fully polarized electron and positron beams.

A sketch of a possible layout of the CERC with linacs separated by 1/6th of the 100 km circumference (in Ref. [37]) shows the evolution of the beam energy for electrons and positrons in a 4-pass ERL equipped with two 33.7 GeV superconducting (SRF) linacs. The number of interaction points and corresponding detectors is determined by the physics program. In this scheme, the luminosity can be shared between detectors: e.g., by timing, the beam bunches collide in only one of the detectors, avoiding collisions in the others. Using this scheme, the luminosity is divided between detectors in any desirable ratio, compared to the FCC-ee where the total luminosity is the sum of the luminosity in each detector. Only beams at the top energy pass through detectors, while the other beam lines bypass the IRs area. The energy loss caused by synchrotron radiation is significant at these high energies. It makes the process of the beam acceleration and deceleration asymmetric, and both the electron and the positron beams require separate beamlines for each of the accelerating and decelerating passes, meaning that the 4-pass ERL would require 16 individual transport lines around the tunnel. While adding complexity in the geometry of the accelerator, the authors propose to use small-gap ($\sim$ 1 cm) combined-function magnets and a common vacuum manifold.

The authors estimated the maximum luminosity to be in excess of 10^{36}/(cm^2 s), which excited a lot of interest among the future user community. This was achieved by using extremely flat beams for reduced beamstrahlung energy loss (a horizontal-to-vertical ratio of 500), which the authors stated would still avoid beam loss due to high vertical disruption. A fundamental difficulty with this concept is the choice of bunch length; too short and beamstrahlung at the Interaction Point makes it impossible to recuperate the beams for deceleration; too long and the curvature of the RF increases the energy spread of the bunches so that they do not fit in the energy bandwidth of the final focus system. Neither of the two alternative bunch lengths suggested by the authors (2 mm and 5 cm) are viable, but an intermediate value might be acceptable. Clearly, this is a topic that needs careful simulation to move forward. Since neither parameter set was fully self-consistent, the sub-panel was unable to validate the luminosity estimate. However, the sub-panel identified several beam dynamics issues that should be studied to enable a more accurate simulation of the luminosity once a self-consistent parameter set has been developed. However, it is clear that the luminosity falls rapidly with increasing energy. The most important issue in the arcs is the preservation of the small vertical emittance of 8 nm over the 400 km orbit in the presence of strong focusing magnets. Emittance growth comes both from the misalignment of the combined-function magnets and the ground motion, and tolerances are normally tighter for stronger focusing. Alignment of the 16 small magnets would be a challenge, given the difficulty of access and the tight tolerances that must be achieved. The orbit correction algorithm must also be studied (the dispersion-free method, in which the beam energy is changed, cannot be used). It also became clear early on in the evaluation that 2 GeV was too low an energy for the damping rings, and the authors later stated that up to 8 GeV may be required.

The proposal was aimed at reducing the power needed for the accelerator, and the sub-panel spent a lot of effort to evaluate this claim. The sub-panel was able to confirm the reduction on synchrotron radiation and the consequent reduction in RF power required. However, there were two other effects that negated this advantage. First, the cryogenic power required to maintain the cryomodules at 2 K for the $t\bar{t}$ case was 153 MW assuming state-of-the-art SRF technology. In addition, the synchrotron radiation in the 2 GeV damping ring is not negligible and would exceed the synchrotron radiation in the 100 km arcs for the case of 8 GeV damping rings. Overall, the power consumption was estimated to be 316 MW with 2 GeV damping rings, similar to the FCC-ee. The cost of the proposal was also estimated by the sub-panel, based on the cost of the arc magnets from the e-RHIC study and estimates from the FCC-ee for the rest. The total cost was estimated to be 138 % of the FCC-ee for the same configuration.

The sub-panel looked at the possibility of building the FCC-ee first and upgrading to the CERC as a later upgrade. The CERC layout is required to minimize the synchrotron radiation losses in the arcs. The FCC-ee layout, on the other hand, envisions two to four interaction points and features several 2.1–2.8 km-long SRF sections distributed around the ring. Implementing the CERC configuration inside the FCC-ee tunnel would require a redesign of the FCC tunnel layout with sufficient space for the CERC linacs next to the central interaction point. In addition, the required caverns for the detector placement are not compatible with the experimental caverns planned in the FCC-ee layout. The extent to which such a design iteration affects the FCC-ee performance reach and cost would need to be assessed.

Updated Parameters: As this report was being finalized, the authors proposed an updated set of operating parameters and gave specific choices for the linac cavity design, voltage gain and quality factor, which were not provided in the initial proposal. We had assumed a Q_0 of 3×10^{10}, the present state of the art. The authors assumed that the Q_0 would be 10^{11} as a result of future R&D. They also reduced the gradient by a factor of 2. Taken together, these values would significantly lower the electrical requirements of the linac from our assessment in the $t\bar{t}$ case but would roughly double the number of linac cavities. Our simple cost model is not adequate to accurately assess these changes although an overall decrease in the cost is likely. However, the new parameters reduce the luminosity by a factor of three and do not change the large, beamstrahlung-induced bunch energy spread that brings into question the viability of this approach. With the new parameters, the CERC would still be significantly more expensive than the FCC-ee.

CERC Recommendations: The sub-Panel supports the idea of designing a collider based on an ERL to reduce the energy footprint of the facility, and the CERC is an excellent first attempt. While the present proposal has several flaws due to the limited effort that the authors were able to devote to the design, the sub-Panel chose to look for ways that the design could be improved rather than focus on the problem areas:

1. We strongly recommend the development of a self-consistent set of parameters with associated preliminary simulations to fully demonstrate that the idea is viable.
2. The bunch length is a critical parameter: too short and the beamstrahlung becomes excessive; too long and the energy spread from the RF curvature becomes excessive. It will be necessary to carefully optimize the choice.
3. The energy requirements of the damping rings must be integrated in the design.
4. We recommend R&D on high Q_0 cavities operating at 4.5 K, which would reduce both the cost and the power consumption.

ERLC

The Energy-Recovery Linear Collider was proposed as a high-luminosity alternative for the ILC [36]. It is based on twin-axis superconducting cavities, with the bunches being decelerated after collision to recuperate the energy (see Figure 2 in the reference for the schematic layout). This would also permit the re-use of the bunches themselves so that the injectors only have to replace lost particles rather than the whole bunch charge. In the concept, the linacs operate with a 1/3 duty cycle, with two seconds on, four seconds off to reduce the cryogenic power needed to maintain the cryomodules at 1.8 K. The luminosity is estimated by the author to be 5×10^{35}/(cm^2 s), a significant increase over the ILC. The sub-panel carried out an evaluation of the luminosity as well as the cost and power consumption. In addition, there were several new beam-dynamics effects which arose over the course of the study. The idea of using a 1/3 duty cycle was not endorsed by the sub-panel given the sensitivity of 1.8 K cryogenic plants to pressure variations. An additional problem with the pulsed RF is the time it takes for the RF to stabilize before the beams can be injected, and additionally, the beams have to be ramped slowly to limit the RF power required (because of the length of the linacs, it takes time for the energy to be restored in the outermost cavities). A version with full CW operation but reduced current was therefore considered as well.

The entire machine is a storage (damping) ring with an unusual insertion from the bunch compressor to the decompressor consisting of the acceleration linac, Final Focus system (FFS), Interaction point (IP), FFS, and the deceleration linac. The longitudinal dynamics can therefore be somewhat different from a normal storage ring due to this long insertion (the transverse plane may also be affected). The energy loss due to HOMs in the acceleration and deceleration linacs is also a large perturbation of the longitudinal dynamics. This new configuration needs careful study as it is likely to be a configuration used in other, future ERL concepts.

The vertical emittance is the same as in the ILC. However, since the proposed transverse damping time corresponds to ~ 400 turns, various types of emittance increase contribute to equilibrium in contrast to the case of single-pass colliders such as the ILC. Various stochastic effects belong into this category, and these need to be carefully evaluated. More complex is the emittance increase in the main linac (and FFS) due to misalignment and the wake field. The ILC expects 10 nm increase in the vertical normalized emittance in a single pass. While the major components of this emittance increase are coherent turn-by-turn effects, some of them may be cumulative. A cumulative emittance increase of as little as 0.1 nm out of a 10 nm single-pass increase can exceed the design emittance if multiplied by 400. The possible source of the cumulative components may be a combination of the above effects (misalignment and wake field) with the chromaticity, which cannot be compensated in the linacs, unlike in ring colliders.

The linac design was not specified in the proposal, so assumptions were made about the CW SRF cavities that would be used. A CBETA-like cryomodule (CM) design concept was chosen, but with dual cavities, that is, side-by-side, multi-cell, 1.3 GHz cavities with Niobium cross connections so power can flow from one multi-cell cavity to its neighbor as required for energy recovery. The huge steady-state loading (1.6 GV/m) from each of the 53 mA beams makes the cavity fields very sensitive to imperfect loading cancellation (i.e., partial energy recovery). In particular, the relative timing of the e^- and e^+ bunches at the cavities may vary due to slow tunnel temperature changes that move the CMs longitudinally.

The cost of the ERLC is higher than that of the ILC as the average gradient is lower (longer tunnel) and the cavities are roughly twice as expensive. We estimated the total cost of the ERLC to be 224 % that of the ILC. The power requirements are harder to estimate as there are several different options. A major uncertainty is the fraction of the HOM power that is dissipated at 1.8 K. In the ILC, this is 7 %, which would be excessive for the high currents in the ERLC. We therefore assume that sufficient R&D has been carried out to enable 100 % of the HOM load to be dissipated at much higer temperature. With this assumption, the power was estimated by the sub-Panel to be 463 MW instead of the 130 MW estimated by the author for a luminosity of $4.8 \times 10^{35}/(\mathrm{cm}^2\ \mathrm{s})$. Note that recently, an optimization of the ILC parameters resulted in a luminosity of $1.35 \times 10^{34}/(\mathrm{cm}^2\ \mathrm{s})$. The ERLC concept has the potential to exceed the performance projections of the ILC by over an order of magnitude, but still requires vetting of the beam dynamics to affirm emittance preservation is possible in a recirculating linear collider with beam damping at low energy. If shown viable, the ERLC approach might be considered as a future upgrade option for the ILC although it would require a major reconfiguration of the accelerators and cooling systems. One appealing scenario could therefore be to start the physics program with the baseline ILC configuration and to look at the ERLC as a future upgrade option of the collider. Noting that the Main Linac and SRF system amount to approximately 45 % of the total ILC budget, one can conclude further that such an upgrade of the ILC implies an additional investment of about half of the total ILC budget. While this clearly represents a significant cost item, it might still be an interesting option for the long-term exploitation of the ILC if one considers the potential increase of the collider performance by over one order of magnitude and the extension of the ILC exploitation period by perhaps another decade. This approach assumes that the ERLC cryostats are compatible with the main tunnel dimensions and that the Interaction Region design of the ERLC is designed to be compatible with the ILC Interaction Region.

Updated Parameters: The author developed an update to the published parameters with a reduced distance between bunches (23 cm instead of 1.5 m) with an equivalent reduction in the number of particles per bunch [9], which reduces the HOMs by the same factor. The luminosity is kept the same by adopting a smaller horizontal beam size at the IP (keeping the same vertical beam-beam tune shift). The new parameter set considers full CW operation, and the author estimates that the electrical power for the beams is 250 MW. This assumes that the cryogenic efficiency is equal to the Carnot efficiency (1/550). We estimate this efficiency to be 1/900 (the value obtained at LCLS-II), to which 25 % should be added for the cryomodule thermal shield cooling and utilities to dissipate the cryoplant heat loads in cooling towers. Adding the site power requirements gives a total of over 600 MW, which the sub-panel considers unacceptable. We also believe that the closer bunch spacing in the ERLC would require a crossing angle at the interaction region, adding the complexity of including a bend that returns the bunches to the decelerating linac after collision.

ERLC Recommendations: The sub-Panel supports the idea of designing a linear collider based on an ERL to reduce the energy footprint of the facility, and the ERLC is an excellent first attempt. The present proposal was developed by a single author and is therefore incomplete in many details. Therefore, the sub-Panel chose to look for ways that the design could be improved as part of a more detailed study:

1. We recommend a study of the new beam dynamics problems inherent in the integration of a linac

and a damping ring.

2. We recommend R&D on high Q_0 cavities operating at 4.5 K, which would reduce both the cost and the power consumption.
3. We recommend the development of twin aperture SRF cavities in a common cryomodule.

Overall conclusions

The sub-Panel was presented with two, extremely interesting ideas to evaluate. While neither is ready to be adopted now, they point to the future in different ways. The CERC aims for multiple passes in a tunnel with an extremely large bending radius to minimize the synchrotron radiation loss. The ERLC proposes a single acceleration and deceleration, separating the two beams by using twin-axis cavities. Both of these ideas provide an indication of the variety of different ERL layouts that might be developed in the future. A particularly interesting prospect is to design an energy efficient, ultra-high luminosity ERL-based electron-positron collider at 500 GeV, which would enable the exploration of the Higgs vacuum potential with a measurement of the tri-linear Higgs coupling in e^+e^-. The most important R&D activity that would make this kind of development viable at a luminosity approaching 10^{36}/(cm^2 s) is to operate at 4.4 K with high Q_0. We strongly recommend R&D on this topic also, since it would allow universities to adopt small superconducting accelerators for inverse Compton backscattering, FELs, isotope production, etc. Apart from the societal aspect, this would provide a steady product line for SRF cavity and cryomodule production by industry, which would in turn benefit future HEP colliders.

6.5 State of the art and Facility plans

6.5.1 Overview on facilities and requirements

A long way has been paved since the first SRF ERL [38] at Stanford. Key parameters of an ERL are the electron beam current I_e ($\propto$ luminosity) and energy E_e. The beam power is simply $P = I_e E_e$. Through recovery of the energy, the beam power is related to the required externally supplied power P_0, which then gets augmented by a factor $1/(1-\eta)$ where η is the efficiency of energy recovery. This way, for example, the LHeC can be designed to reach a luminosity of 10^{34}/(cm^2 s), for which a GW of beam power would be required without energy recovery. The current state of the art may thus be characterised by a facility overview, presented in Fig. 6.1, as an E_e vs I_e diagram with constant beam power values P drawn as diagonal lines. The plot includes three completed ERL facilities, the first European ERL facility ALICE at Daresbury, CEBAF (1-pass), which, with 1 GeV, reached the highest energy so far, and the JLab FEL, which reached the highest current of all SRF ERLs, 10 mA. Larger currents have been achieved in the normal-conducting, lower-frequency ERL facility at BINP (the Recuperator).

There are three currently operational superconducting ERL facilities (marked as 'ongoing' in dark green), S-DALINAC at Darmstadt, CBETA at Cornell and the compact ERL at KEK in Japan, to which we add MESA at Mainz as it does not require any additional resources from the roadmap process and expects to have beam in the not-too-distant future. These facilities, including that at Novosibirsk, all have important development plans as presented subsequently. There is no financial request to the roadmap here outlined, and yet, the development of the field of ERLs is based to a considerable extent on their progress, for which they have been introduced as part **A** of the ERL roadmap, see Sect. 6.1.

Four facilities in progress, two of which are in Europe, marked in dark blue in Fig. 6.1, have complementary goals intending to reach higher energy in five turns (CEBAF 5-pass) or high current (bERLinPRO and the coherent electron cooler, CeC at the EIC), in a single pass. PERLE is designed for medium-current (20 mA), 3-turn operation leading to 500 MeV beam energy. These new facilities are described in Sect. 6.7. The two European projects, bERLinPRO at 100 mA and PERLE, constitute the core part **C** of the ERL roadmap presented here.

Figure 6.1 also displays the parameters of the by now five design concepts for ERL applications at the energy frontier with electron beam energies between 50 GeV (LHeC) and 200 GeV (EXMP). CERC has a low current but a rather large number of beam lines. LHeC and FCC-eh are 3-turn linacs with about 20 mA current delivered by the gun but 120 mA load to their cavities. ERLC and EXMP are single-pass linacs, possibly with twin-axis cavities. These plans hint at a common demand on SC cavities to tolerate about 100 mA current load, which is the goal of PERLE (in three turns) and, in a single pass, of an upgraded bERLinPRO and the CeC at BNL in its most challenging configuration.

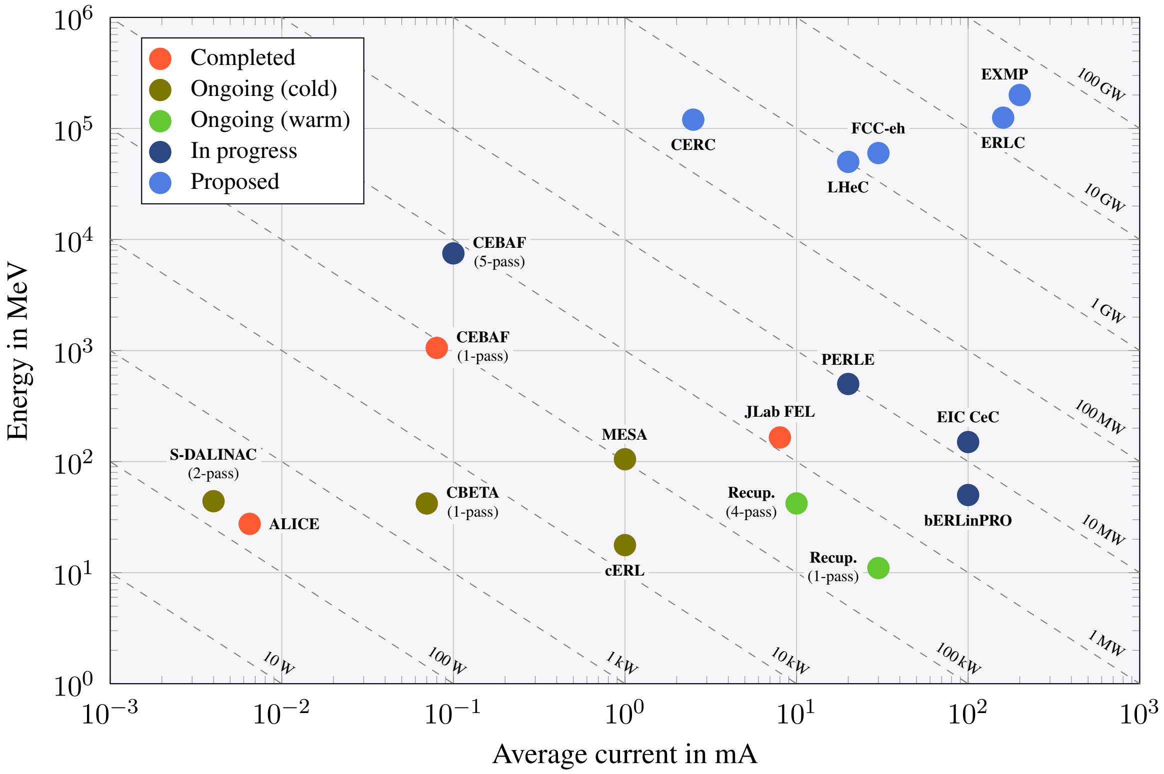


Fig. 6.1: Electron energy E vs. electron source current I for classes of past, present and possible future ERL facilities as are introduced in the text. Dashed diagonal lines are equi-power lines, $P[\mathrm{kW}] = E[\mathrm{MeV}] \cdot I[\mathrm{mA}]$. A brief account of the ERL history is presented in Sect. 6.2.1.

The E-I graph provides an understanding of basic ERL facility characteristics. However, it does not display the collider luminosities or cryogenic power demands. From these, as is explained later in this summary, a vision arises of a 500 GeV c.m.s. energy electron-positron collider with the potential to reach $10^{36}/(\mathrm{cm}^2\,\mathrm{s})$. Such a prospective version of ERLC, when based on warm (4.5 K) technology, would be affordable in terms of power and allow for a few % accurate test of the Higgs boson self-coupling in $\mathrm{e}^+\mathrm{e}^-$.

6.5.2 Recuperator BINP Novosibirsk

The Novosibirsk free electron laser (FEL) facility [39] includes three FELs [40] operating in the terahertz, far-, and mid- infrared spectral ranges. The first FEL of this facility has been operating for users of terahertz radiation since 2004. It remains the world's most powerful source of coherent narrow-band radiation in its wavelength range (90 µm to 340 µm). The second FEL was commissioned in 2009. Now it operates in the range of 35 µm to 80 µm, but its undulator shall soon be replaced with a new, variable-period one [41], shifting its short wavelength boundary down to 15 µm. The average radiation power of the first and the second FELs is up to 0.5 kW, and the peak power is about 1 MW. The third FEL was commissioned in 2015 to cover the wavelength range of 5 µm to 20 µm and provides an average power of about 100 W.

The Novosibirsk facility was the first multi-turn ERL in the world. Its peculiar features include the normal-conducting 180 MHz accelerating system, the electrostatic electron gun with a gridded thermionic cathode, three operating modes of the magnetic system, and a rather compact ($6 \times 40\,\mathrm{m}^2$) design.

The accelerator of the Novosibirsk FEL has a rather complex design. One can consider it to be three different ERLs that use the same injector and the same linac. The first ERL of the facility has only one orbit, while the second and the third ones are two- and four-turn ERLs, respectively. The low RF frequency allows operation with long bunches and high currents.

The current of the Novosibirsk ERL is now limited by the electron gun. A new RF gun was built and tested recently [42]. It operates at a frequency of 90 MHz. An average beam current of more than 100 mA was achieved. In brief, the following work is planned for the next years:

- Installation of the RF gun in the injector, while the existing electrostatic gun will be kept there. The RF gun beamline has already been manufactured and assembled in the test setup. It includes an RF chopper for the beam from the electrostatic gun.
- Continuation of routine operation with three FELs for users of the “Novosibirsk FEL” user facility.
- Optimisation of the optics for further reduction of beam loss at large energy spread induced by FEL operation.
- Optimisation of the optics for the reduction of beam loss at large emittance induced by the foil target for the bremsstrahlung radiation source. These experiments are aimed to create a hard X-ray source with few-picosecond pulse duration and a few MHz repetition rate for users.
- Demonstration of the so-called electron outcoupling technique for the FEL oscillator at the third FEL [43].

6.5.3 S-DALINAC TU Darmstadt

The S-DALINAC is a superconducting, multi-turn recirculating linear accelerator for electrons at TU Darmstadt [44]. It is used for scientific research and academic training in the fields of accelerator science, nuclear physics, nuclear astrophysics, and radiation science. The S-DALINAC employs eleven multi-cell niobium cavities for superconducting-radiofrequency (SRF) acceleration and operates at a frequency of 2.998 GHz. The SRF cavities have quality factors in excess of 10^9 at an operating temperature of 2 K and sustain average accelerating fields of 4 MV/m to 6 MV/m. The S-DALINAC delivers a continuous-wave (CW) beam with electron bunches every 333 ps and a bunch length of about 1 ps.

The S-DALINAC went into operation in 1991. At the time, it consisted of a thermionic electron gun, a superconducting injector linac, a main linac with two recirculations, and a suite of experimental beam lines. In 2015/16, the accelerator lattice was extended by an additional recirculation beam line capable of operating in energy-recovery mode. The maximum beam energy after four passes of the electron beam through the main linac is 130 MeV. At this energy, the maximum beam current is limited to 20 µA for radiological reasons. The emittance of the electron beam amounts to < 1 mm mrad. The main accelerator consists of four cryomodules, each housing two 20-cell Niobium cavities. Any desired electron beam energy up to 130 MeV can be provided and delivered to the experimental hall by recirculating the beam up to three times through the main linac.

The ERL operating mode of the S-DALINAC was first demonstrated in 2017 [45] with an energy-recovery efficiency of 90.1(3) %. This efficiency corresponds to the decrease of RF-power consumption due to beam loading of one of the main linac’s RF cavities when the recirculated beam is decelerated in the cavity. This success made S-DALINAC the first ERL operating in Germany.

In August 2021, S-DALINAC was successfully operated in a twice-recirculating ERL mode. Full energy-recovery efficiencies of up to 81.8 % had been measured for beam currents of up to 8 μA at a beam energy of 41 MeV. The beam load of the SRF cavities in the two situations— with the beam either being accelerated only once or being accelerated twice and decelerated once— resulted in the same beam load within measurement uncertainties. The measurements, thus, indicate complete energy recovery in the first deceleration passage through the main linac with an efficiency of 100 % within uncertainties.

Since the injection energy cannot be recovered in an ERL and a decrease of the injection energy by 1 MeV reduces the power consumption of a 200 mA ERL with 5000 hours of operation per year by 1 GWh per year, it is worthwhile to improve the technology for low-energy injection ERLs for which relativistic phase slippage is largest. Main research topics therefore include the quantification of the phase-slippage effect in extended multi-cell SRF cavities and countermeasures for its mitigation including individual off-crest working points for various SRF cavities and individual phase advance to be made possible by multi-turn SRF ERLs with individual recirculation beam lines.

6.5.4 MESA Mainz

MESA is envisioned as a facility for high-intensity electron scattering experiments in the 100 MeV energy region [30, 46, 47]. It will represent a sustained infrastructure for such experiments but also be available for further research on ERLs for a long time to come. The civil construction for the new machine will be finalised in 2022. Following the installation and commissioning of the machine, first ERL tests are expected in 2025. External-beam experiments are expected to start somewhat earlier. The ERL beam will be directed towards the so-called MAGIX experiment using a windowless gas target.

Radiation protection considerations call for a system of halo spoilers and collimators behind the MAGIX target. The unavoidable losses due to Coulomb scattering—the so-called TArget-Induced haLo, or TAIL for short—can therefore be mostly confined to a heavily shielded area which does not contain any sensitive components. The relative power losses in the ERL beam line are predicted to be below 10^{-5} of the beam power at the target when using the MAGIX hydrogen target with the nominal areal density. Therefore, a limit to the luminosity at 105 MeV under reasonable assumptions for radiation protection issues may be set to about $5 \times 10^{35}/(\mathrm{cm}^2\,\mathrm{s})Z^{-2}$ with Z the nuclear charge of the target. This value seems sufficient for the experiments that are presently being discussed.

During the next years, the project team will focus on the installation and commissioning of MESA. On the other hand, it will pursue accelerator research goals, specifically aiming at the following topics:

- **Improving electron beam polarimetry** in order to support the precision measurements of electroweak observables at MESA. This will include a chain of three polarimeters [?] which each will reach an accuracy well below $\Delta P/P < 1\,\%$, in some cases even below 0.5 %. The chain will consist of two Mott polarimeters—both operating in the region of the source and the injector, respectively—and the so-called Hydro-Möller polarimeter [?]. The latter will operate online and is based on a completely polarised electron target formed by trapped hydrogen atoms. With a target density of $\approx 3 \times 10^{16}\,\mathrm{cm}^{-2}$, it is suited for online operation but will also yield a high statistical efficiency, eliminating the slow drift of the polarisation of a few percent per week. More details can be found in [48]. The target will be incorporated into the external beam line leading to the electroweak P2 experiment. In the long run, this beam line may be extended as a third recirculation in ERL mode.
- **Installing a second photoelectron source** at the MESA injector with the potential to provide bunch charges $> 10\,\mathrm{pC}$ with good beam quality. The present source is operated at a relatively low voltage because reliable operation parameters for the NEA photocathodes are of utmost importance. NEA cathodes are mandatory for production of spin-polarised beam but do not tolerate field emission, which is frequently associated with high voltages. Moreover, the spin-manipulation systems elongate the transfer beam line to the injector and create more complicated optics, which

is also detrimental to attaining high bunch charges. However, according to simulations and experiments, an average current of 1 mA of MESA stage-1 can be produced with normalised emittance below 1 µm, which is sufficient for all presently planned experiments while limiting the available MESA beam power in ERL mode to 100 kW. To enter the MW regime, a second source will be installed which is dedicated for experiments not requiring a spin-polarised beam. Due to the normal-conducting injector system of MESA, the input energy can be changed with moderate effort. Simulations indicate that increasing the source energy to 200 keV will allow to have good beam quality with bunch charges exceeding 10 pC, creating a test bed for experiments, e.g., compensation studies of transient beam loading, ion trapping, Compton backscattering, and others.

- **Improving the higher-order mode damping capabilities** of the cavities. At high average currents, HOM heating of the damping antennas will lead to a breakdown of superconductivity in the antenna and hence inhibit operation. This can be improved by coating the HOM antennas with layers of material with a high critical temperature, e.g. Nb_3Sn. The MESA research group has recently received funding to start corresponding investigations within a larger joint effort of German universities.

6.5.5 cERL KEK Tokyo

The compact ERL is a facility at KEK which is introduced in detail in the ERL long write-up [2]. Its future plans can briefly be summarised as follows:

- R&D of powerful 10 kW-class ERL-based EUV-FEL focuses on creating a high-intensity EUV light source for EUV lithography for semiconductor microfabrication, surpassing the existing LPP-type sources (up to 250 W) by more than 40 times.Core accelerator technology development includes: high-efficiency superconducting cavity accelerator, and energy-recovery linac (ERL).
- Realization of energy-recovery operation with 100 % efficiency at a beam current of 10 mA at cERL and the FEL light production experiment.
- Development of an irradiation line for industrial applications (carbon nanofibers, polymers, and asphalt production) based on the CW cERL operation.
- Realization of a high-efficiency, high-gradient Nb_3Sn accelerating cavity to produce a superconducting cryomodule based on the compact freezer. We are targeting a general-purpose compact superconducting accelerator system that that can be operated at universities, companies, hospitals, etc.

6.5.6 CBETA Cornell

The Cornell-BNL Test Accelerator (CBETA) [49] is the first multi-pass SRF accelerator operating in energy-recovery (ER) mode [21], focusing on technologies for reduced energy consumption. The energy delivered to the beam during the first four passes through the accelerating structure is recovered during four subsequent decelerating passes. In addition to ER, energy savings are achieved by using superconducting accelerating cavities and permanent magnets. The permanent magnets are arranged in a Fixed-Field Alternating-gradient (FFA) optical system to construct a single return loop that successfully transports electron bunches of 42, 78, 114, and 150 MeV in one common vacuum chamber. While beam loss and radiation limits only allowed commissioning at low currents, this new kind of accelerator, an 8-pass energy-recovery linac, has the potential to accelerate much higher current than existing linear accelerators. Additionally, with its DC photoinjector, CBETA is designed for high brightness while consuming much less energy per electron. CBETA has also operated as a one-turn (i.e., two-pass) ERL to measure the recovery efficiency accurately [50].

CBETA was constructed and commissioned at Cornell University as a collaborative effort with Brookhaven National Laboratory. A large number of international collaborators helped during commissioning shifts, making it a joint effort of nearly all laboratories worldwide that pursue ERL technology. Because recovering beam energy in SRF cavities was first proposed at Cornell [51], it is pleasing that its first multi-pass system is constructed at the same university.

The FFA beam ERL return loop is also the first of its kind. It is constructed of permanent magnets of the Halbach type [52, 53] and can simultaneously transport beams within an energy window that spans nearly a factor of 4, from somewhat below 40 MeV to somewhat above 150 MeV. Having only one beamline for 7 different beams at 4 different energies saves construction and operation costs. The permanent Halbach magnets contain several innovations: they are combined-function magnets, they were fine-tuned to 0.01 % accuracy by automated field shimming, and they provide an adiabatic transition between the arc and straight sections [54].

After achieving all Key Performance Parameters of CBETA's NYSERDA-funded construction and commissioning phase, operation was interrupted in the spring of 2020. The accelerator is now available to test single-turn and multi-turn ERL technology. Especially tests for the 100 mA hadron-cooling ERL of the EIC are of interest, as several key design parameters of CBETA's main components match that future accelerator well.

Provided funding, a test program at CBETA for the EIC hadron cooler ERL entails:

- Adjusting the setup to one-turn ERL operation.
- Increase the beam current in this configuration initially to 1 mA, with the already increased shielding of the beam dump.
- Use a low-halo cathode, install beam-halo monitors and study loss mechanisms, in particular halo development from ghost pulses, dark current, gas, ion, and intra-beam scattering.
- Install a halo collimation system.
- Increase shielding for larger beam currents toward 100 mA and study beam-current limits.
- Increase bunch charge toward 1 nC and study bunch-charge limits.

Other future options for CBETA are continued optimisation of 4-turn ERL operation with increased beam transmission, the conversion of CBETA to a Compton-scattering hard X-ray source [55], and the use of the CBETA injector for Ultra-fast Electron Diffraction [56] with extremely short MeV-scale bunches.

6.6 R&D objectives - Key technologies

ERL technology has developed much over the past decades. For reaching a new level of high electron currents and energy in quiet, efficient, well-monitored ERL beam operation, for reducing the cost and cryogenics load and thus the power consumption, especially at big machines such as the ERLC, a number of key technologies have been identified, which are introduced below. More information is given in the accompanying ERL overview paper [2]. Most of the topics described here lead to requirements on funding and effort as summarised in the subsequent section 6.8, often appearing as part of new facility charts. This concerns, for example, the source developments as upgrades of existing SRF and DC photocathode sources in Berlin and Orsay, respectively, or the establishment of the goal to develop a 4.4 K 802 MHz cavity cryomodule for beam test with PERLE about a decade hence.

6.6.1 High-Current Electron Sources

Injectors for high-energy physics ERLs, which require high average current in combination with a complicated temporal beam structure, are typically based on photocathode guns. These guns rely on photocathodes, e.g., semiconductor materials, which for high average current are based on (multi)alkali antimonides, or GaAs-based systems for polarised beams, in combination with a photocathode drive laser and extremely-high-vacuum accelerating structure.

The quality of the photocathode is relevant to the performance of the photoinjector in terms of emittance and current, and a long photocathode lifetime is essential for photo-injector operation. Reproducible growth procedures have been developed, and months-long lifetimes have been achieved under operational conditions. For high-current operation, photocathodes with high quantum efficiency are necessary and are usually developed in-house. Quantum efficiencies above 10 % at the desired laser wavelength have been achieved in the laboratory.

One critical aspect is to preserve demanding vacuum conditions ($< 10^{-10}$ mbar) on the whole way from the preparation system, via the complete transfer line to the photo-injector and the photocathode gun itself. The photocathode substrates (usually made from molybdenum) are optimised regarding their cleanliness and surface finish ($<$ 10 nm r.m.s. surface roughness) to achieve low emittance and to avoid field emission.

Especially in SRF photoinjectors, the superconducting cavity is extremely sensitive to any kind of contamination; therefore, the photocathode exchange process is very critical.

For weak-interaction physics experiments, polarised electron beams are needed. These can be based on GaAs photocathodes, but their lifetime has still to be improved, e.g., by using newly developed activation processes.

Ongoing research topics in the field of photocathodes are the understanding of the photocathode materials (e.g., electronic properties), the photoemission process, and their intrinsic emittance. New growth procedures of high quantum efficiency, smooth, mono-crystalline photocathodes or multi-layer systems, and the screening of new photocathode materials are crucial for future electron accelerators.

A main research topic in the field of gun development is the design of accelerating structures which can provide a high cathode field in combination with extremely-high-vacuum conditions. Major efforts concentrate on the development of DC guns (Cornell University), VHF NCRF (LBNL), and lower- (BNL) and high-frequency SRF guns (bERLinPRO). Important insight can be gained from operating smaller facilities with high-current thermionic guns (BINP).

In brief, the field of laser systems for electron injectors, the technology of lasers with sufficient power to operate with antimonide-based photocathodes has been rather well developed. Major efforts concentrate on the generation of laser pulses with elliptical temporal profile, which are necessary to deliver high-charge bunches with ultra-low emittance.

6.6.2 SRF Technology and the 4.4 K Perspective

Near-Term 2 K Developments

Superconducting RF is the key technology for energy-efficient ERLs. A vibrant global R&D program has aptly demonstrated the routine operation of SRF systems in many large-scale accelerators. This is described in much detail in the accompanying ERL overview paper [2]. Future developments must now push the technology to meet the stringent demands of next-generation ERLs while making strides in improving the energy sustainability of the systems further.

The focus for the linear e^+e^- collider has been the high accelerating gradient achievable in pulsed operation. CW ERLs, however, must handle very high beam currents. Simultaneously, they must balance the requirement for high cryogenic efficiency and beam availability with the need for a reasonably compact and cost-efficient design. This different optimisation leads to a frequency lower than 1 GHz and lower gradients. Presently, operation at moderate gradients (below or close to 20 MV/m) provides the best compromise between these competing requirements.

Critical ERL SRF system developments must now focus on

- system designs compatible with high beam currents and the associated HOM excitation,
- handling of transients and microphonic detuning that otherwise require a large RF overhead to maintain RF stability,

- enhanced cryogenic efficiency of SRF modules.

To ensure beam stability in future ERLs operating with currents of $\mathcal{O}(100\,\text{mA})$ requires cavity designs and systems that minimise both the excitation and trapping of higher-order modes, facilitate HOM extraction and enables their efficient damping outside of the helium bath. Low-frequency cavities (< 1 GHz) are typically favoured, having fewer cells to provide the same voltage and larger apertures. HOM damper solutions include space-efficient waveguide-coupled absorbers with high power capability or more readily implemented beam line absorbers between cavities. The ultimate efficacy of solutions must be put to the test in beam test facilities.

Towards 4.4 K

A significant part of the power consumption of ERLs is related to the dynamic cavity load in CW operation, which can be estimated by

$$P = \frac{V_{\text{acc}}^2}{(R/Q) \cdot Q_0} \cdot N_{\text{cav}} \cdot \eta_T \tag{6.1}$$

where V_{acc} is the acceleration of a cavity, R/Q the shunt impedance, Q_0 the cavity quality factor, N_{cav} the number of cavities and η_T the heat transfer, i.e. combined technical and Carnot, efficiency, which is proportional to the ratio of the cryo temperature, T, and its difference to room temperature, $300\,\text{K} - T$. This power has to be provided externally. For the LHeC it is about 15 MW for $T = 1.8$ K. A 500 GeV e^+e^- collider, however, with 10–20 times more cavities ($N_{\text{cav}} = \mathcal{O}(10^4)$) than the LHeC, requires a few hundred MW of power. This can be significantly reduced by a factor of about three with 4.4 K technology, for similar V_{acc} and Q_0 characteristics. The overarching request to limit HEP power consumption by building sustainable high energy accelerators in the future motivates a strong interest in 4.4 K developments. These have the additional important benefit of bringing SRF technology developments to universities and smaller laboratory environments with a beneficial impact on their industrialisation for next-generation colliders as has been emphasised in the e^+e^- sub-panel report, see Sect. 6.3.

State-of-the-art niobium has the highest critical temperature of all elements (9.2 K). For a reasonable BCS resistance in the 1 GHz frequency range, it must be cooled to 2 K to attain quality factors of the order of $Q_0 = 3 \cdot 10^{10}$. However, given Carnot and technical efficiencies of less than 0.7 % and 20 %, respectively, the overall efficiency of the cryoplant is only around 0.13 %. Furthermore, complex cold compressors must be employed for sub-atmospheric liquid helium operation. Conversely, operation at 4.4 K or above alleviates the power requirements by increasing the Carnot efficiency. This operating mode also reduces the complexity of the cryoplant design. For low-energy accelerator applications such as industrial and medical systems, 4.4 K operation even carries the potential of eliminating the cryoplant altogether in favour of cryo-coolers, thereby removing a large financial and technical hurdle for the implementation of such systems.

For niobium at ~ 1 GHz, operation at 4.4 K is no option because the efficiency gains are completely negated by an intolerable increase in BCS resistance, with Q_0 values of about 10^8, see Eq. 6.1). One therefore must revert to compound materials that, due to their physical properties, need to be coated on a substrate, options including Nb_3Sn, NbN, NbTiN, V_3Si, Mo_3Re and MgB_2. So far, only the first three have been explored reasonably extensively. While Q_0 values $\geq 10^{10}$ at 4.4 K are predicted, imperfect films suffer heavily from early flux penetration, which currently limits the accelerating field values to values considerably below 20 MV/m. An approach to safeguard against this is to implement a multilayer S'-I-S structure consisting of a sub-µm-thick high-temperature superconductor (S') on a nm-thick insulator (I) on a thick Nb substrate (S), as proposed by Alexander Gurevich.

There are two major technologies under development: a vapour-infusion technique, mainly in the US [57] and ramping up in Japan, and sputtering with advances in Europe. A third one is atomic layer deposition with possibly good prospects towards 4.4 K-based cavity systems. These basic technologies are followed in this roadmap by the SRF panel and are only briefly characterised below. A goal for future

ERL applications, a decade hence, is the development of a complete cavity cryomodule [5] and its test with beam, for which PERLE at 802 MHz is considered a suitable long-term option or possibly bERLinPRO depending on the frequency choice and how this field develops altogether.

Nb_3Sn by Vapour Infusion: So far, only Nb_3Sn has been successfully applied to cavities by high-temperature Sn vapour infusion on a Niobium substrate. This method has achieved Q_0 values above 10^{10} at 20 MV/m and frequencies above 650 MHz [**?**] for single-cell cavities. For 9-cell, 1.3 GHz cavities, maximum fields of the order of 15 MV/m have been achieved. First attempts to produce structures for cryomodules have been limited to a few MV/m, but the effort has been very limited so far. The main challenges are (a) to develop infusion recipes that consistently deliver the correct Nb_3Sn stoichiometry for high-field operation, (b) extend these recipes to large, complex multicell structures and (c) subsequently design cryomodules that are able maintain the performance despite the fact that Nb_3Sn systems are very sensitive to trapped flux, thermo-current generation during cooldown, and cracking due to Nb_3Sn's extreme brittleness. In parallel, an active microphonics compensation system must be included to handle the larger pressure fluctuations at 1 bar, 4.4 K operation. Nb_3Sn vapour infusion activities are ongoing in the USA and ramping up in Japan. At present, only this technique appears in line with the desirable realisation of a 4.4 K accelerating module in the next decade. Yet, vapour infusion is not compatible with other substrates, in particular copper, and it may not be adapted to other superconductors or used in multilayer systems.

Sputtering Techniques: To address the limitations of vapour infusion, sputtering techniques, such as HiPIMS are being investigated. At the forefront are CERN and the European IFAST collaboration. Samples have achieved encouraging results, but first single-cell (1.3 GHz) cavities are not expected until a few years from now. Sputtering enables more precise control of material stoichiometry and is able to synthesize a wide variety of superconductors on various substrates (including copper). Being a "line-of-sight" method, its difficulty lies in coating complex 3D structures whose orientation to the cathode varies along the structure. Film quality and thickness both are thus geometry-dependent. This may indeed complicate the production of cavities with multilayer structures.

Atomic Layer Deposition Atomic Layer Deposition (ALD) is a third technique that is very promising, but currently it is further behind than sputtering. The main research activities are ongoing in France. Inherently, the deposition is a self-limiting process with thickness control at the atomic level. Coating does not require a line of sight to the substrate; thus, in principle, complex structures can be coated without the difficulties encountered with sputtering albeit the counting rates are very low. Unfortunately, ALD is not compatible with state-of-the-art Nb_3Sn. However, it can be used to coat materials such as NbN, NbTiN and MgB_2. Given its near-perfect thickness control, it is well suited for the implementation of multilayer structures. Thus, its long-term potential for high-performance 4.4 K (and above) systems may eventually be greater than that of both the vapour-infusion and sputtering techniques.

6.6.3 Fast Reactive Tuners

Since the accelerated and the decelerated beams are of equal size but at opposite phases of the operating RF, the total beam loading current in an ERL is nominally zero. For this reason, the RF power fed into the cavity in steady state can ideally be very small. However, to cope with beam transients and microphonics, strong overcoupling is called for. This overcoupling leads to a lowered external Q and thus significantly higher power requirements. Most of the power is reflected and dumped. A side effect is that the RF stability and hence beam stability also suffers.

A very fast tuner, fast enough to cope with microphonics and beam current transients, would allow operation with larger external Q and thus much reduced RF power. Recent developments and tests with so-called "Fast Reactive Tuners" show very promising results. They use piezo-electric material referred

---

[5] Given the challenging basic developments required to build and test 4.4 K SRF modules, as sketched below and in the SRF Roadmap Chapter, we decided it was probably premature to cost a warm cryomodule development at this roadmap. We have, however, included it in the vision towards an ERL based 500 GeV e^+e^- collider as shown in Fig. 6.11.

to as BST ($BaTiO_3$-$SrTiO_3$), the ε of which can be modified with a bias voltage. The suitability and longevity of these novel FRTs with full SRF systems without and with beam must be demonstrated to capitalise on their enormous potential.

While alternative fast tuners exist, the big advantage of FRTs lies in the fact that they do not mechanically deform the cavity, thereby avoiding the excitation mechanical resonances which severely limit the ability to compensate microphonics above a few Hz. It is planned to validate the approach to use FRTs to compensate for transients and microphonics by installing suitable prototypes, in collaboration with CERN, on cavities for BERLinPro (1.3 GHz, single turn) and for PERLE (802 MHz, three turns) to thoroughly investigate the use of this technology in ERL beams.

6.6.4 Monitoring and Beam Instrumentation

Electron beam diagnostics and metrology systems at ERLs have unique tasks and challenges. First of all, these arise from the combination of the very high average beam power (similar to synchrotrons) and the non-equilibrium (non-Gaussian) nature of linac beams with small transverse and longitudinal emittances (similar to high-brightness linacs). Second, ERLs must operate with multiple beams of different beam energies transported in a beam-line. The experience of successfully operational ERLs shows that different, well-thought-through beam modes are indispensable. These serve for the machine setup, average-current (power) ramp-up, and high-power operation. The difference in the average beam current between the tune-up mode and the high-power mode is typically 4 to 5 orders of magnitude. It will be even more significant for higher-average-beam-power ERL systems. One more lesson of presently and previously operational ERLs and recirculating linacs is that local beam losses with an average power of about 1 W are an issue that cannot be ignored. Comparing this level of beam loss with the average beam power of 1 to 10 MW and the difference in the average beam current of the tune-up and high-power modes shows the necessity of high-dynamic-range beam measurements. A number of critical issues are described in detail in [2]. The following advanced beam diagnostic systems are to be developed for the next generation of ERLs:

1. An advanced wire-scanner system needs to be developed, tested, and then implemented at PERLE for routine transverse beam profile measurements with a dynamic range of 10^6. Most of the wire scanners implemented so far provide 2 or 3 projections of the transverse beam distribution. Often, when measuring non-equilibrium linac beams, the wire scanner measurements are inferior to beam viewer images. However, wire-scanner measurements provide much easier access to the LDR data. The number of measured projections could be increased relatively easily with a different mechanical implementation. Recent developments in the tomographic reconstruction techniques show that a 2D distribution can be reconstructed well based on about 9–10 projections. The proposed advanced wire-scanner system is envisioned to take advantage of this recent development and provide tomographically reconstructed 2D beam distributions. Moreover, wire-scanner measurements can be made with the help of detectors with a bandwidth much larger than the beam repetition rate. This makes it possible to set up the system to measure beam profiles of multiple passes simultaneously. This will also be helped by the fact that the wire-scanner intercepts only a small fraction of the beam at any given time. Last but not least, if the speed of the wire can be made fast enough and the beam size is not extremely small, the wire scanners may be able to operate with a high-current CW beam.
2. Taking into account that beam imaging with the help of beam viewers or with SR frequently provides data superior to wire scanners, we suggest that an optical system that mitigates diffraction effects to allow imaging with a dynamic range of $\sim 10^6$ be investigated and tested in a laboratory. Then, if successful, it should be tested with a beam.
3. A BPM system capable of measurements with multiple beams needs to be prepared. Here, one prototype unit needs to be developed and built first; then, it can be tested with a beam at one of the

existing synchrotrons operating at a repetition rate of a few 100 MHz, thus simulating conditions very similar to the next generation of ERLs.

4. It appears that a 6-pass beam arrival monitor system will be indispensable for the operation of multi-turn facilities. We suggest that such a system be designed, prototyped, and tested in preparation for PERLE operation. The best candidate technology for such a system, at this point, appears to be a system based on very-high-bandwidth non-resonant pickups, an electro-optical modulator, and an ultrafast laser system with a sufficiently high repetition rate.
5. Depending on available resources, it would be prudent to start work on a non-invasive beam size monitor for beams at low (injector-like) energies in the range of 5 MeV to 10 MeV, where SR cannot be used. Here, a physics design would be a good next step. A technique that could allow such measurements can use very low energy (50–100 keV), very low charge, short pulse probe electron beam. Similar probe-beam-based systems were implemented and tested previously. However, they either did not operate with short pulses or were based on very sensitive photocathodes, which might not be very practical for a routinely operational diagnostic system. Here additional efforts are needed to simplify such systems to make them practical.

6.6.5 Simulation and Education

The design, construction, and operation of ERL facilities have to be accompanied and prepared by reliable and detailed simulations. These require much experience and insight in the ERL beam physics and technology, from optimising guns through the injector, main loop onto the beam dump. Increasing beam brightness and energy requirements have to be met with advancements of simulation techniques using considerable CPU power. Specific beam dynamics studies related to ERLs include:

- Study of CSR leading to microbunching and ultimately to beam quality degradation and emittance dilution. Simulations are instrumental in developing mitigation measures to suppress microbunching through appropriate lattice design. They are especially critical during the deceleration process, where the energy spread increases rapidly as the energy drops.
- Studies of wake fields and beam breakup (BBU) instability for multi-turn ERLs operating in CW mode, also addressing a long-standing question of BBU threshold scaling with the number of passes.
- Study of the longitudinal match to compress and decompress the electron bunch in order to optimise beam transport in energy-recovery mode. Implementation of second-order corrections to eliminate the curvature from the compressed bunch to further improve the longitudinal match without compromising the ability to transport the bunch in the decelerating passes.
- Collaborative efforts with BERLinPro on using the OPAL package as a universal tool for simulating ERL beam lines; starting from the cathode, through space-charge dominated regions of initial acceleration and beyond into high-energy sections. Having one single tracking tool (vs. many) eliminates the uncertainty of seamless transition at code junctions.

The above selection of beam dynamics studies illustrates that the ERL accelerator technology represents a challenging training ground for the next generation of accelerator scientists. Many of these topics are dealt with in PhD theses, and all of the facility centres (and beyond) are engaged in forming and educating accelerator talents. The tasks to be solved are far from conventional, and the rather short time scales for building smaller facilities a plus in the attraction of young physicists.

6.6.6 Higher-Order Mode damping at high temperature

Because ERLs operate at high current, the HOM power produced can be very high. Depositing the heat load in the cold mass would generate too much heat; hence, the power must be extracted and deposited at room temperature loads. HOM couplers come in two main types, coaxial and waveguide. Coaxial couplers are normally associated with low powers; however, the HOM couplers for the HL-LHC crabs were designed to handle up to 1 kW per coupler. Coaxial couplers are small and hence have a lower static heat load. Waveguide couplers are typically used for high powers but have a larger static heat load as they comprise a large metal link from room temperature to the cavity.

The design of HOM couplers must be multidisciplinary, balancing both RF and mechanical (thermal) requirements, as well as balancing dynamic and static heat loads. The HOM powers and thermal budgets for the cryomodule must first be understood, as well as the impedance specification that must be reached. The lower the impedance specification, the more heating on the coupler interface.

Fundamental power couplers can handle much higher powers than HOM couplers; hence, the HOM couplers may need to be designed using similar methodology. Conditioning HOM couplers to operate at high power is also an area where research is required.

It may be necessary to mount the HOM couplers directly onto the RF cell, so called on-cell couplers. Such concepts are common in low-beta and crab cavities, but there are only a few examples of them for elliptical cells. One option could be the split SWELL cavities proposed for FCC where the cavity is made in 4 quarters with waveguides between each quarter.

In addition, it is critical that the frequencies above the beam pipe cut-off are attenuated outside the cryogenic environment. Losses in superconducting materials increase with frequency squared; hence, the attenuation at high frequencies can be very high. Beam line absorbers at no less than 50 K are required to efficiently remove the radiation without helium boil-off.

The main challenges are: High-power operation of HOM couplers with acceptable static loss; Multipactor absorbing RF power; Coupling with strong coupling; High power windows; Conditioning of HOM couplers; Development of on-cell coupling for elliptical cavities; Modelling of high frequency wakefield. Effort and timeline are provided in Sect. 6.8.

6.6.7 SC Twin Cavities and Cryomodules

Twin-axis cavities are required when the accelerating and decelerating beams are travelling in opposite directions through long linacs. There is one example of a single-axis cavity being used for beams in opposite directions [**?**], but it accelerates the beam in both directions to attain higher beam power rather than recovering the energy. There are four examples of twin-axis cavities that have been considered:

The first design [58] was a purely theoretical calculation as part of a proposal to build a dual-axis energy-recovery linac.

The second [59] was also a purely theoretical design involving two Tesla-style 9-cell cavities that were partially superposed to create a twin-axis cavity. While this concept was interesting, construction of such a cavity would appear to be difficult, if not impossible.

The third design [60] consisted of two three-cell cavities joined by a bridge at the power coupler end. A prototype carved out of a solid block of aluminium was built and the expected performance demonstrated (Figure 1). The advantage of this design is that the accelerating and decelerating cavities do not have to be identical, allowing one to design the cavities such that the higher order modes do not overlap, thereby extending the threshold for transverse beam break-up by a factor of two (which is not negligible in the context of high-current beams).

The fourth design [61] was a single cavity with two beam tubes for the beams being accelerated and decelerated, respectively. The advantages of this design are that the largest overall transverse dimension is smaller than that of the third design and the power is recovered in each cell, rather than being summed over all the cells and transferred via a bridge. A single cell prototype was built from niobium (Figure 2) and tested at cryogenic temperatures with excellent results. However, this was a single cell without the necessary power and HOM couplers, etc.

In the last two designs, the placement of the power and HOM couplers was calculated but not prototyped. In addition, the tuning mechanism would need to be developed for both designs. Given the advantages of this design in various accelerator projects, the two designs should be carried forward until it is possible to make an evaluation of the relative performance of full-scale prototypes, so that a selection can be made. An important part of the selection process would be the integration into a cryostat. Both designs are wider than single-axis cavities, so packaging in a cryostat means starting from scratch. The HOM damping is important, with the power brought out to room temperature. This requires space in the cryomodule and must be integrated into the cryostat design from the beginning. Another integration detail is how adjacent cryomodules are connected as there are two independent beam pipes that must be connected; given the close spacing of the two beam pipes (required to minimize the cryostat dimensions), the flange connections will require particular attention.

6.7 New facilities

The panel is convinced that ERLs represent a unique, high-luminosity, green accelerator concept: for energy-frontier HEP colliders, for major developments in lower-energy particle and nuclear physics, and for industrial applications, altogether an innovative area with far-reaching impacts on science and society. With strongly enhanced performance, achieved with power economy and beam dumps at injection energy, ERLs are a most remarkable, vital contribution to the development of a sustainable science.

A peculiarity of the ERL roadmap and development is that it needs operational facilities with complementary parameters and tasks to be successful. The global landscape of ongoing ERL facilities, including S-DALINAC and soon MESA in Europe, which are under further development, is rich, as has been outlined in Sect. 6.5.

A crucial next step towards the application of ERLs in high energy physics and elsewhere is to conquer the $\mathcal{O}(10\,\mathrm{MW})$ power regime with higher energy and/or high currents. This step requires to solve key technology challenges, described in section **??**, in particular for bright electron sources, dedicated ERL cavity and cryomodule technology ($Q_0 > 10^{10}$), as well as associated techniques. These technologies are partially available and under development for timely application and test in the existing and a forthcoming generation of ERL facilities.

The regime of high currents, in the range of 100 mA load to SC cavities, will be developed at BNL (EIC cooler CeC), KEK (cERL) and possibly HZB Berlin (bERLinPRO), and BINP Novosibirsk with normal-conducting, low-frequency RF. An order of magnitude increase in beam energy, to 10 GeV, is the goal of a new experiment at CEBAF. PERLE is the only facility designed to operate at 10 MW in a multi-turn configuration and the only one proceeding in a large international collaboration.

6.7.1 New facilities in the US

High energy with CEBAF 5-pass at Jefferson Lab

Based on the large experience at Jefferson Lab, a novel project has been approved, which has the target to study an ERL at highest energy, chosen to be about 7.5 GeV, where the effects of synchrotron radiation on beam dynamics will notably occur. The limiting factor for ER@CEBAF with 5 passes is the arc momentum acceptance, which places a bound on the maximum energy gain one can support in the linacs. Above that energy gain, the synchrotron radiation energy losses are sufficiently large that the energy separation between accelerated and decelerated beams exceeds the momentum acceptance of the arcs. Energy recovery would be made feasible in CEBAF by the addition of two modest hardware sections: a path-length delay chicane insertion at the start of the highest-energy arc, and a low-power dump line at the end of the South Linac, before the first West spreader dipole magnet. These alterations are designed to remain in place permanently; they do not interfere with any capability of routine CEBAF 12 GeV operations. For the coming years, the project has the following plans, also in collaboration with STFC Daresbury, University of Lancaster and University of Brussels:

1. Engineering design for a half-lambda delay chicane;
2. Installation of dipoles for the delay chicane and the extraction dump;
3. Continue ongoing beam dynamics studies, including:
   - Increasing momentum acceptance through adequate choice of RF phase and arc path length;
   - Optimisation of the second-order momentum compaction in recirculating arcs to eliminate curvature from the compressed bunches without compromising beam transport for the decelerating passes;
4. Finalise the optics design, including sextupoles.

CEBAF5 is expected to begin beam operation in 2024. For the roadmap this experiment is of special relevance as it will reach high enough energies for the beam-based study of significant effects of coherent synchrotron radiation in an ERL.

Electron Cooler at Brookhaven Nation Lab

The Electron-Ion Collider (EIC) is layed out as a ring-ring electron-hadron collider. Its luminosity, in order to reach $\mathcal{O}(10^{34}/(\text{cm}^2\,\text{s}))$ at its optimum c.m.s. energy of about 100 GeV, requires that the phase-space volume of the RHIC hadron beam be reduced, for which the technique of Coherent Electron Cooling (CeC), proposed a decade ago [62], has been chosen. Coherent Electron Cooling is a novel but untested technique which uses an electron beam to perform all functions of a stochastic cooler: the pick-up, the amplifier, and the kicker. Electron cooling of hadron beams at the EIC top energy requires a 150 MeV electron beam with about 100 mA electron current, i.e., an average power of 15 MW or even higher. This task is a natural fit for an ERL driver, while being out of reach for DC accelerators. Currently, BNL is developing two CeC designs. The first one is based on a conventional multi-chicane microbunching amplifier, which requires a modification of the RHIC accelerator to separate the electron and hadron beams. It uses a 0.4 MeV DC gun and a single-pass ERL. Alternatively, the second CeC design is based on a plasma-cascade microbunching amplifier, which uses a 1.5 MeV DC gun and a 3-pass ERL. Both CeC designs therefore require an ERL operating with parameters beyond the state of the art. This development, albeit involving more challenges than those posed by the ERLs alone, is of complementary value for other ERL developments for the chosen parameter range, e.g., the 100 mA current. A decision on the CeC development is foreseen as part of the CD2 project phase.

6.7.2 bERLinPRO

Within the scope of the Berlin Energy Recovery Linac Project, a 50 MeV ERL facility has been set up at the Helmholtz-Zentrum Berlin. The beam transport system and all necessary technical infrastructure for 100 mA operation are complete, the single-turn racetrack is closed and under ultra-high vacuum. In straight continuation of the gun, the ‘diagnostics line’ offers equipment for extensive gun characterisation. The machine is built in an underground bunker, able to handle up to 30 kW continuous beam loss at 50 MeV. An overview on bERLinPRO can be see in Fig. 6.2.

In 2022, the injection line will be supplemented with the initial mid-current SRF gun, delivering up to 10 mA with an emittance better than 1 mm mrad. The in-house cathode development successfully produces CsK_2Sb-cathodes with quantum efficiencies QE $>1\,\%$, necessary to extract 77 pC bunch charge. Three pairs of newly developed high-power couplers were successfully tested and reached record values of 60 kW CW (administrative limit), sufficient to accelerate up to 50 mA in the booster. The assembly of the existing booster parts will take place in 2022; commissioning of the booster is planned for 2023.

Table 6.1 specifies the existing hardware and the goal parameters of bERLinPro and compares them to the PERLE project. The table reveals that bERLinPro is eminently suited to help take the necessary next steps towards the technological developments enabling future ERLs for HEP. The bERLinPro infrastructure with gun operation will be ready by late 22 which is also of interest for the development

Fig. 6.2: Left: Structure of bERLinPRO, which is essentially complete apart from the 1.3 GHz linac module and the (upgraded) gun, the main hardware elements of the roadmap for bERLinPRO; Right: View from the dump position on the injector (at the back) and first racetrack part (June 2021).

of PERLE. Both facilities test current loads of order 100 mA to the cavities, which in the case of PERLE result from three-pass operation. In its final phase, PERLE will operate at ten times the energy, 500 MeV, compared to the bERLinPRO facility.

It is quite useful for future applications and this roadmap that the two facilities chose different gun technologies, SRF and DC photocathodes. There is no further emphasis put on bright gun developments in this European Roadmap because this is quite an active field worldwide, which the plans of MESA (Mainz) the Recuperator (Novosibirsk), the CeC (BNL) and cERL (KEK) underline. The challenges posed by high-current sources and associated lasers have been outlined in Sect. 6.6.

bERLinPro takes up the cause of developing the first high-current SRF gun, while PERLE is about to re-install the ALICE DC gun with optimised cathode shape. The SRF gun technology holds the promise of of simultaneously high cathode fields and injection voltage in CW operation, overcoming space charge and heat load problems. Although the RF frequencies are different in the two projects, the 50 MHz laser available at bERLinPro could provide a bunch spacing of 20 ns, which is close to the 25 ns value chosen for PERLE owing to the LHC operating frequency.

The achievable bunch charge in bERLinPro strongly depends on the QE of the photocathode. The available laser power is chosen such that 1 % QE would still be sufficient to achieve close to 100 mA at 77 pC. Successful photocathodes reach QE of 10 % and above. More research is needed to learn how to reliably preserve these high values from the production over the transport and during operation. Furthermore, Na-based photocathodes, which are less sensitive to vacuum conditions, are a promising new area of research, which could well be carried out by the HZB cathode development group. Enhanced cathode research could boost the bunch charge of the bERLinPro SRF gun towards a few hundred pC. The current gun set up allows maximum currents of 10 mA, the diagnostic line beam dump up to 30 kW. Depending on the laser repetition rate and the cathode QE, different bunch scenarios can be tested. The current limit of 10 mA is set by the fundamental power coupler.

A 1.3 GHz linac module with three 7-cell cavities is expected to accelerate the bunches to 50 MeV in bERLinPro. A new design for a linac with wave-guide HOM absorbers and mechanical tuners is ready for construction. However, one may consider adapting a proven, lower-risk design (such as the Cornell LINAC module), incorporating beam tube absorbers to integrate fast reactive tuners, contingent upon FRT development and integration taking place in collaboration with partners such as CERN. Thus, one could rapidly gain experience with this evolving technology for a sustainable solution. Once a linac is installed, all aspects of recirculation, such as phase matching or timing and beam stability issues, essential for energy efficiency, can be studied with the 10 mA beam and different bunch charges.

In order to increase the CW current above 10 mA and up to the maximal 100 mA compatible with the 600 kW beam dump, the gun module needs to be re-equipped with a new cavity body that incorporates

parameters	**bERLinPro**	**PERLE**
gun-related		
gun type	SRF photocathode	DC photocathode
cathode material	CsK_2Sb	
bunch charge [pC]	77	500
norm. emittance [mm mrad]	< 1	6
gun exit energy [MeV]	2.4	0.
laser frequency [MHz]	50/1300	40
injector-related		
injection energy [MeV]	7	7
merger	dogleg	dogleg
RF-related		
RF frequency [MHz]	1300	801.58
bunch spacing [ns]	20 / 0.77	25
bunch frequency [MHz]	50 / 1300	40
average current [mA]	4 / 100	20
linac-related		
modules	1 x SRF	2 x SRF
duty factor	CW	CW
energy gain/linac [MeV]	43	82
no. cavities	3	4
no. cells / cavity	7	5
avg. accelerating field [MeV]	18	20
no. of turns	1	3
final beam		
electron beam energy [MeV]	50	500
bunch length [mm]	0.6	3
norm. emittance at IP [mm mrad]		

Table 6.1: Comparison of facility characteristics for bERLinPro and PERLE. High-current operation, tested at both facilities in complementary configurations, is essential for application of the ERL technique to future energy-frontier colliders.

power-coupler ports able to accommodate the recently validated high-power coupler. The module design is already compatible with these couplers. Since the gun system is very complex, it is currently preferred to assemble an independent second module with an existing cold string, which will mitigate risk and enable maximal progress through this parallel development. At present, the booster couplers are suited to minimize the reflected power at about 10 mA. To operate the booster at 100 mA, the booster module would require a reassembly without coupler spacers to increase the coupling.

Table 6.2 summarizes the necessary topics and goals where bERLinPro could efficiently contribute directly to the tasks at hand for HEP-ERL development. The total effort is estimated to require about 7.5 MCHF, and 33 FTEs. A graphic breakdown of the effort and investment over time is provided below in Sect. 6.8.

Topic/Goal	**Action required**	**Minimum Effort**	**Delta for Optimum Effort**
		Gun	
2022: commissioning of the SRF gun and the diagnostic line with 10 mA and an emittance < 1 mm mrad.		baseline activity	1 postdoc position for commissioning
cathode research: QE preserving transport optimization		baseline activity	
cathode research: development of Na-based cathodes for reduced vacuum sensitivity		Dispenser material for Na-based cathodes	
bunch charge: test of high bunch charges with a current limit of $\sim$ 3.85 mA, depending on cathode QE		Dispenser material for additional cathodes beyond bERLinPro program	
2023: commissioning of the booster and beam transport through injector and low energy path, no linac			1 PostDoc for commissioning (see entry first row)
high current: the current limit is set by the high power coupler. With an adapted cavity, the gun module could produce 100 mA of current	construct and build the cavity, change coupler setting in booster for high current (dismantling of booster module)	cavity body, 2 additional Canon-Toshiba coupler	second module for high current, enabling operation and module preparation in parallel, (cold string exists), 1 gun cavity + 1–2 backup cavities, solenoid, 4 additional Canon-Toshiba coupler, 1 construction engineer
		Linac	
linac with FRT (to dump): adapt linac design to FRT	construct, order, assembly and commissioning	complete linac module	linac and operational costs + spare cavities + one SRF engineer
50 MeV ERL operation: beyond-basic diagnostic in recirculator	order, assembly and commissioning of diagnostics	Additional electronics for diagnostics systems	
		Theoretical studies	
ERL operation with HEP parameters	study optimal beam transport for higher charges		

Table 6.2: Goals achievable at bERLinPro with respect to technology developments indispensable for HEP ERLs (left column). Next steps to be taken appear in column 2. Column 3 and 4 sketch the minimal effort and what would provide most efficient conditions, respectively. Empty boxes indicate that topics will be worked on at HZB without requiring external funding.

6.7.3 PERLE

Introduction

PERLE, a Powerful Energy Recovery Linac for Experiments, as detailed in [2], emerged from the design of the Large Hadron Electron Collider as a 3-turn racetrack configuration with a linac in each straight. With its 3 turns, 20 mA current leading to 120 mA cavity load, 802 MHz frequency, and 500 MeV energy, PERLE is the ideal next-generation ERL facility with which a new generation of HEP colliders can be prepared, the 10 MW power regime be studied and novel low-energy experiments at high intensity be pursued. Its principles were published first at the IPAC conference 2014 [63]. Its CDR appeared in 2017 [64]. Following several years of organisation, development, and review, a default footprint of the facility has been chosen, see Fig. 6.3, which fits into a large, free experimental hall at IJCLab Orsay. PERLE has now been established as a Collaboration of Institutes with mostly long experience on ERL, SRF, and magnet technology as well as operation. The facility will be hosted by Irène Joliot Curie Laboratory at Orsay, and be built by a collaboration of BINP Novosibirsk, CERN, University of Cornell, IJClab Orsay, Jefferson Lab Newport News, University of Liverpool and STFC Daresbury including the Cockcroft Institute, with others expressing interest. Recently, an ambitious plan was endorsed aiming for first PERLE beam operation, with initially one linac, in the mid twenties, see below. This is not impossible as the Collaboration intends to use the ALICE gun, the JLab/AES booster, and the SPL [65] cryomodules as available key components for an early start, while the bulk funding is yet to be realised.

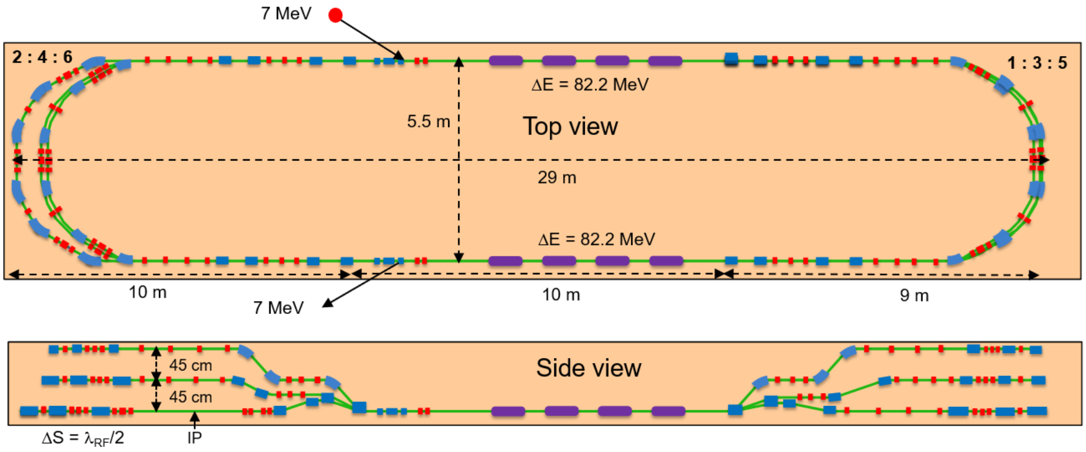


Fig. 6.3: Top and side views of the PERLE facility at IJCLab Orsay. An electron energy of 500 MeV is achieved in three turns passing through two cryomodules, each housing four 5-cell cavities of 802 MHz frequency. PERLE will be built in two stages, first with one linac cryomodule, adapted from the SPL module, and then completed with a newly designed one. The total number of magnets, including arcs, switchyards, merger and experiments, is 84 dipoles, 33 or 66 cm long, of typically 0.5–1 T bend and 118 quadrupoles, 10 to 15 cm long, with fields between 0.4 and 5.5 kG/cm. Optics and further features of this configuration are briefly discussed below.

Description

Following detailed simulations over three years and an international review end of 2020, the PERLE injector has been tentatively designed. The final goal of 20 mA current corresponds to 500 pC bunch charge at 40 MHz frequency as prescribed by the LHC. Delivery of such high-charge electron bunches into the main loop of an ERL is challenging as the emittance, required to be below 6 mm mrad, has to be preserved. The beam dynamics were simulated using the code OPAL and optimised using a genetic algorithm, and a three-dipole solution was chosen for the merger. Table 6.3 shows the requirements on the beam at the exit of the main linac after the first pass. For achieving such low emittance at high average current, a DC-gun-based injector will be used, re-installing the ALICE gun delivered from Daresbury to Orsay. The complete injector will consist of a 350 kV photocathode electron gun, a pair of solenoids for transverse beam size control and emittance compensation, an 801.58 MHz buncher cavity, a booster linac consisting of four single cell 801.58 MHz SRF cavities, and the merger, Twiss matched to the loop optics, to transport the beam into the main ERL loop.

PERLE is a compact three-pass ERL project based on SRF technology, pushing as a new generation machine the operational regime for multi-turn ERLs to around 10 MW beam power level. A summary of the design parameters is presented in Table 6.4. The bunch spacing in the ERL is assumed to be 25 ns; however, empty bunches might be required in the ERL for ion clearing gaps. PERLE will

Table 6.3: PERLE injector specification

Parameter	Unit	Value
Bunch charge	pC	500
Emittance	mm mrad	≤ 6
Total injection energy	MeV/c	7
First arc energy	MeV	89
RMS bunch length	mm	3
Maximum RMS transverse beam size	mm	6
Twiss β at 1st main linac pass exit	m	8.6
Twiss α at 1st main linac pass exit		–0.66

Table 6.4: PERLE Beam Parameters

Parameter	unit	value
Injection beam energy	MeV	7
Electron beam energy	MeV	500
Norm. emittance $\gamma\varepsilon_{x,y}$	mm mrad	6
Average beam current	mA	20
Bunch charge	pC	500
Bunch length	mm	3
Bunch spacing	ns	24.95
RF frequency	MHz	801.58
Duty factor		CW

study important ERL accelerator characteristics such as: CW operation, handling a high average beam current, low delivered beam energy spread and low delivered beam emittance.

The linac optics design minimises the effect of wakefields such that the beta function is minimised at low energy. The ERL is operated on crest in order to benefit from the maximum voltage available in the cavity. The spreaders/recombiners connect the linac structures to the arcs and route the electron bunches according to their energies. The design is a two-step achromatic vertical deflection system and features a specific magnet design in order to gain in compactness.

The three arcs on either side of the linacs are vertically stacked and composed of 6 dipoles instead of 4 dipoles with respect to the previous design [64], reducing the effects of CSR. Moreover, the arc lattice is based on flexible-momentum-compaction optics such that the momentum compaction factor can be minimised but also adjusted if needed. The low energy implies that the energy spread and emittance growth due to incoherent synchrotron radiation is negligible in the arcs.

The ERL lattice design provides a pair of low-beta insertions for experimental purposes, and the multi-pass optics optimisation gives a perfect transmission with the front-to-end tracking results including CSR. Multi-bunch tracking has shown that instabilities from HOM can be damped with frequency detuning. The optimal bunch recombination pattern gives some constraints on the length of the arcs. Furthermore, the arc with the low-beta insertions will provide the necessary shift to the decelerating phase in the RF cavities. There are two chicanes in the lattice, located at the entrance of a linac and symmetrically at the exit of the other linac structure. They are needed to allow injection and extraction through a constant field. PERLE has two linacs and 3 passes, which leads to a six-fold increase and subsequent decrease of the beam energy.

Prospect

PERLE will serve as a hub for the validation and exploration of a broad range of accelerator phenomena in an unexplored operational power regime. A vigorous R&D program is currently being pursued to develop a Technical Design Report for PERLE at Orsay until the end of 2022. To achieve this goal, the following sequence of accelerator design studies and hardware developments has been identified:

- Start-to-end simulation with synchrotron radiation, CSR micro-bunching
- Multi-pass wake-field effects, BBU studies
- Injection line/chicane design including space-charge studies at injection
- HOM design and tests of a dressed cavity
- bCOM Magnet Prototype
- Preparation of ALICE gun installation at Orsay
- Design of PERLE diagnostics
- Preparation of facility infrastructure

The collaboration is aiming at the PERLE Technical Design Report to be concluded by end of 2022, with the goal of achieving the first beam at PERLE by the mid-twenties. Important milestones will be the delivery and equipment of the JLab/AES booster cryostat to Orsay and the production and test of the complete linac cavity-cryomodule, as the first linac for PERLE and the 802 MHz cryomodule demonstrator as part of the FCC-ee feasibility project. It is considered very desirable to integrate FRT microphonics control into this design as mentioned above, Sect. 6.6. Further details on the current design of PERLE can be found in Ref. [66].

The multi-turn, high-current, small-emittance configuration and the time line of PERLE make it a central part of the roadmap for the development of energy-recovery linacs, which has attracted experienced partners from outside Europe. PERLE includes two important goals for completion beyond the first 5 years of the roadmap: a) the preparation of two experiments which will be on exotic isotope spectroscopy and possibly inverse photon scattering physics or/and ep scattering for proton radius, dark photon, or electroweak measurements for which a polarised gun would be required, and b) the mid-term development of a first warm 802 MHz cavity-cryomodule as is described in Sect. 6.6.

The total effort for the 250 MeV PERLE, based on essential in-kind deliveries (gun, booster and one linac cryomodule) is estimated to require about 14 MCHF for the period of 2022 to 2025, and another 10 MCHF for the following phase (2026–2030). This includes IJCLab infrastructure provisions one roughly may estimate to amount to 10 MCHF besides considerable technical and personnel effort. A graphic breakdown of the effort and funding requirements over time is provided below in Sect. 6.8.

6.7.4 Long Term European ERL Facility Considerations

The future beyond 2030 is difficult to predict. It depends to a considerable extent on the realisation of the program of this decade as is here described. Operation of a 10 MW ERL facility has not been achieved so far, neither has the 100 mA challenge been met in a superconducting ERL machine. MESA can be expected to pursue its experimental program for a decade starting in 2024. bERLinPRO will likely perform an in-depth study of 100 mA beam operation characteristics and new avenues will open up for such a unique facility. PERLE will be complete as a 500 MeV machine at the end of the twenties and enter a phase of sincere R&D and of physics exploitation. Globally the field will advance leading to a new level of cooperation which may be focussed through the demands of energy frontier colliders and sustainability. The 4.5 K program may bear fruit and change the landscape of energy recovery linacs and related SRF technology to a considerable extent. Next generation electron-hadron and electron-positron colliders may be based on ERLs for the reasons described and be built. Any major ERL application in industry would change the field grossly.

There are discussions and initial studies worth mentioning about the then next generation of lower energy European ERL facilities, in Germany, France and the UK, all of which may have an importance also in support of technology support for elementary particle physics in the longer term.

The TU Darmstadt (Germany) is currently considering to establish a Darmstadt Individually-reCirculating ERL (DICE) facility as a further investment into the international FAIR facility at Darmstadt, for enabling electron scattering on stored radioactive-ion beams at FAIR with very high luminosity. DICE would represent a full-scale electron-ion collider based on ERL technology.

GANIL (Grand Accélérateur National d'Ions Lourds in Caen, France) is preparing the future with innovative projects and an electron-Radioactive Ions collider is one of the main options. In this scenario, PERLE is considered as a first step towards an even more powerful machine at GANIL in the mid thirties.

The UK is in the process of considering the science case for a domestic XFEL facility. In addition, a possibility of a facility comprising an ERL driving a mono-energetic photon source via inverse Compton scattering, called DIANA, is being investigated serving both academic and industrial nuclear research. Depending on the UK XFEL science case requirements, options based on DIANA and other ERL developments elsewhere may open up a possibility to deliver a challenging and sustainable ERL based option for XFEL facility.

Part of the exploratory work for all these machines is in assessing how best to harmonise technical components, e.g. SRF systems & injectors with other global ERL developments. In this regard, PERLE has a central role for it shows an efficient (multi) path to the about 1 GeV electron energy range at currents that are hoped for to be further increased and emittances further reduced.

6.8 Delivery Plan for European ERL R&D

The ERL roadmap of this decade comprises three main and interlinked elements: **A)** the continuation and development of the various facility programs, summarised in Sect. 6.5, for which no funds are requested. For Europe these are S-DALINAC in Darmstadt and MESA in Mainz (both in Germany); **B)** a number of key technologies to be developed as characterised in Sect. 6.6. Some of these, such as electron sources of high brightness (reaching the 100 mA electron current regime), FRTs and, for longer term, the development of an 802 MHz 4.4 K cavity-cryomodule have been integrated in the plans for bERLinPRO and PERLE as all require beam operation [6]. Two other items of strategic importance deserve separate support and are included here, the HOM damping at high temperature and the development of twin cavities; **C)** the timely upgrade of bERLinPRO and built of PERLE at Orsay as the necessary steps to move ERLs forward to their introduction to collider developments, possibly mid-term and long-term. This regards electron-hadron, electron-positron and maybe muon collider developments as explained above. Ahead is a new era of high power ERL operation R&D, high-intensity low-energy experiments, and industrial applications.

Here follow the charts for HOM at high temperature, Twin cavities, bERLinPRO and PERLE, only scarce explanations of which was given above. Please take note of the long write-up of ERLs that the panel—together with about 30 other authors—is about to publish [3] for further detailed information. Please also take note of the Interim Roadmap report for a brief, provisional summary of the panel's findings in summer 2021.

---

[6] Basic infusion and sputtering 4.4 K technology developments are covered in the SRF R&D roadmap albeit being much supported by the results of this panel and the prospects for future colliders as well as small lab innovations leading to novel industrialisation of warm(er) cavity technology.

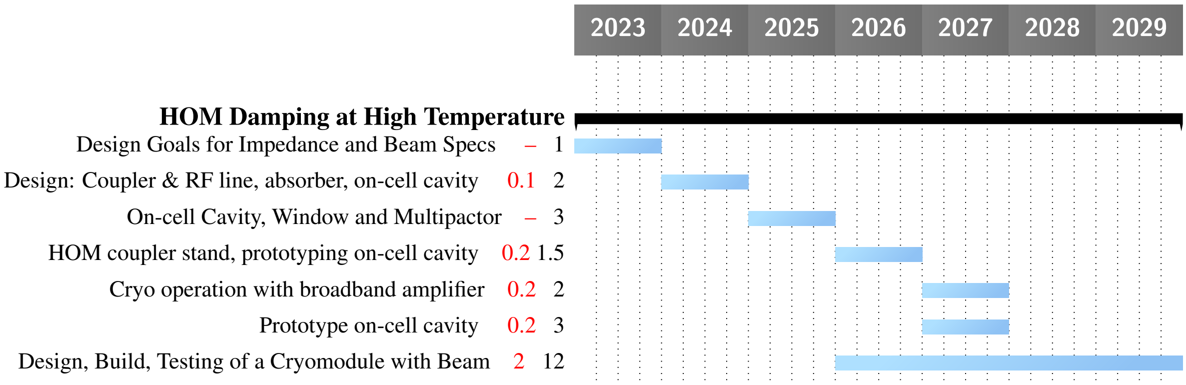


Fig. 6.4: Development of HOM damping technology for high temperature. Funding 2.7 MCHF (red column) over 6 years, 24.5 FTE years (black). Year 1 for this development is chosen to be 2023 for giving time for interested laboratories to embark on it.

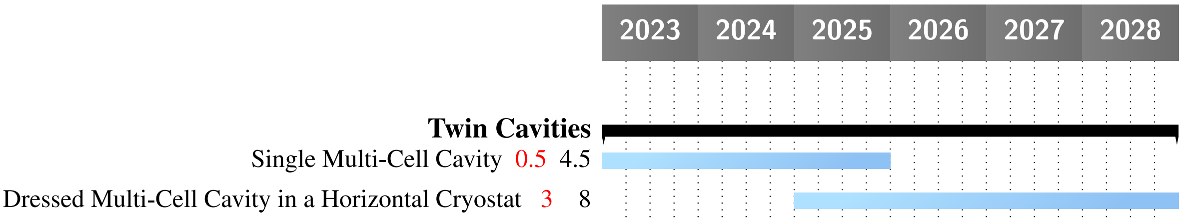


Fig. 6.5: Development of dual-axis cavity and cryomodule technology. Funding 3.5 MCHF (red column) over 6 years, 12.5 FTE years (black). Year 1 for this development is chosen to be 2023 for giving time for interested laboratories to embark on it.

6.8.1 Higher-order mode damping at high temperature

Dynamic higher-order mode losses appear proportional to the beam intensity squared and to the number of cavities, which for ERLC reaches about 10^4. This dynamic load leads to a heat transfer related to a power "amplification" factor $\propto T/(300\,\mathrm{K} - T)$. The power requirement for compensating dynamic HOM losses is therefore the smaller the higher the temperature T is, as has been sketched in the key technology section 6.6. The diagram below summarises the sequence of steps and estimated effort for developing this area further.

6.8.2 Dual-axis cavity developments

Twin-axis cavities are required when the accelerating and decelerating beams are traveling in opposite directions through long linacs. Initial developments have been done at JLab and the John Adams Institute a few years ago. For cost efficiency of a new generation $\mathrm{e^+e^-}$ linac, availability of high-Q_0 twin cavities is considered to be an important economy factor. The roadmap thus includes the design and production of a multi-cell twin cavity followed by a complete cryomodule.

6.8.3 bERLinPRO

The facility bERLinPRO has been recognised as a most suitable ERL accelerator to achieve 100 mA electron beam current in a few years time for performing necessary, evolved high-current operation studies. All ERL-based HEP collider concepts, past or recent, aim to reach high luminosity through such high intensity. For this goal to be achieved, bERLinPRO requires two steps leading beyond their default 10 mA study: a) to build and install a new 100 mA SRF gun, essentially a development based on the existing 10 mA gun, and b) introduction of a new 1.3 GHz linac module into the completed racetrack,

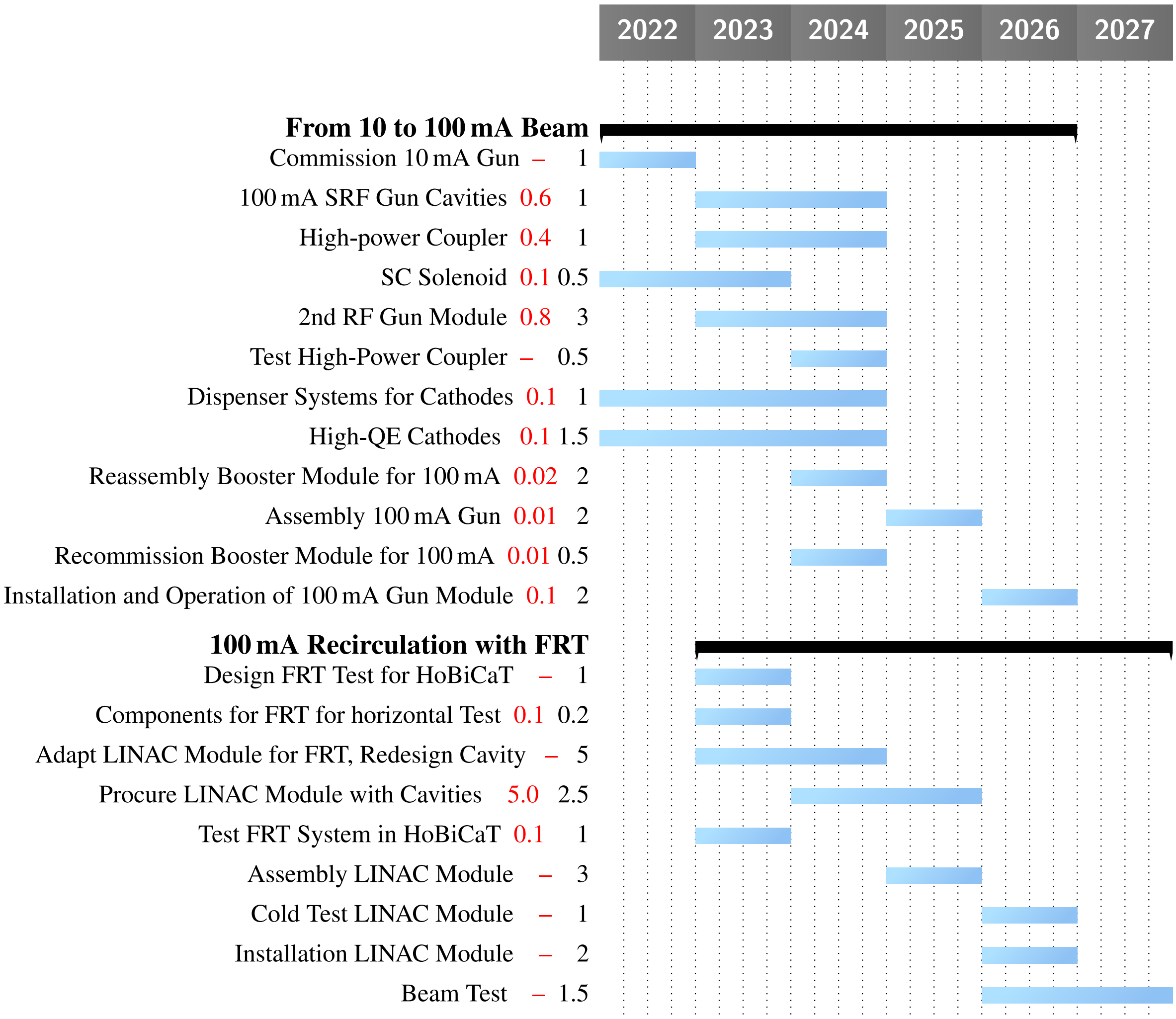


Fig. 6.6: Top: Upgrade of bERLinPRO to 100 mA electron current operation. Funding 2.2 MCHF (red column), 16 FTE years (black). Bottom: Completion of bERLinPRO with a 1.3 GHz cavity-cryomodule in the beam. Funding 5.2 MCHF (red column), 17 FTE years (black).

equipped with FRTs in order to study their effect in single-pass ERL beam operation. This program will lead to further collaboration with other Helmholtz centers such as Rossendorf and with CERN. It will also help establishing more intimate connections to MESA or S-DALINAC in Germany and be supportive to the development of PERLE as was outlined in Sect. 6.7. The following shows two charts: for the 100 mA (a) and the completion of the programme (b). It is obvious that the so upgraded and completed bERLinPRO facility will provide further important R&D opportunities of particular interest to the Berlin Helmholtz center.

6.8.4 PERLE

The novel high-energy ERL concepts targeted at energy-frontier electron-hadron, electron-positron and electron-photon colliders, as well as further physics and other applications, require the development of high-brightness electron guns and dedicated SRF technology as prime R&D objectives. Moreover, “it needs a facility comprising all essential features simultaneously: high current, multi-pass, optimised cavities and cryomodules, and a physics-quality beam eventually for experiments” (Bob Rimmer in [3]). PERLE has been founded as a Collaboration by several institutes to explore the 10 MW regime with a 3-pass ERL facility based on 802 MHz SRF technology. It will be hosted by IJCLab Orsay and be built in

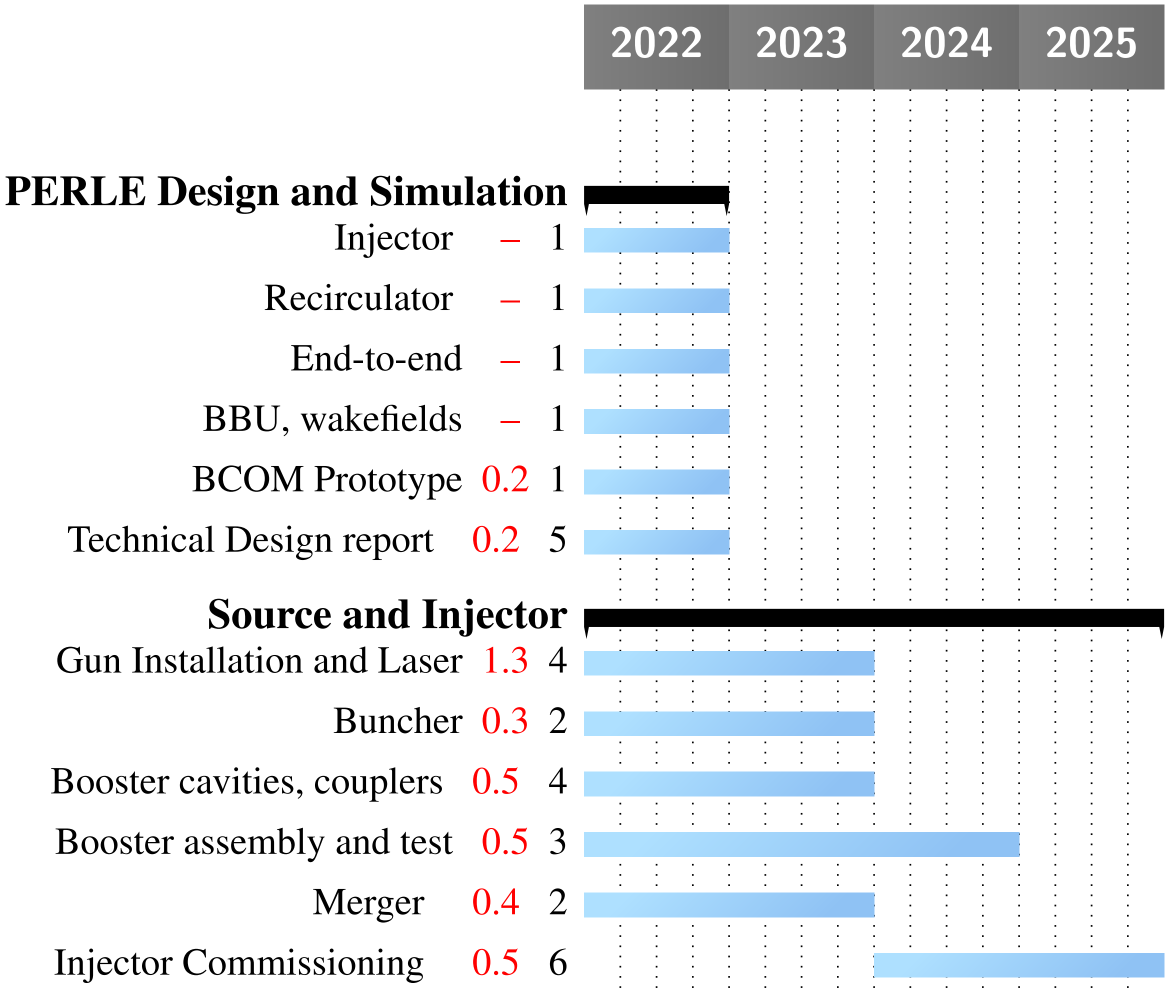


Fig. 6.7: The path to the PERLE technical design report and commissioning of the injector. Funding 3.9 MCHF (red column), 31 FTE years (black).

two stages, initially installing one linac module (250 MeV) and then a second module (500 MeV stage). Its main components are a DC photocathode gun based on ALICE to reach 20 mA, a classic booster using the JLab/AES booster cryomodule, a linac cryomodule, using the SPL module provided by CERN, housing four 5-cell niobium cavities, and three return arcs, spreaders and combiners built by roughly 200 short dipoles and quadrupoles etc. It is considered for later phase B to possibly add a polarised 20 mA gun and to test a 4.4 K 802 MHz cryomodule in the PERLE accelerator, subject to progress on 4,4 K technology developments. The main task of PERLE is to demonstrate high-current multi-turn operation, later for experiments, and to develop 802 MHz technology for future colliders, also as part of the FCC-ee feasibility study.

6.8.5 High-current operation and diagnostics

ERLs have specific diagnostics needs because of the large beam power, the small emittance that is to be preserved, and the low beam loading that needs to be maintained in the main linac cavities. The large beam power can lead to continuous beam losses that can easily damage vacuum components, magnets, and electronics; and it can create dark current in accelerating cavities. Halo diagnostics and radiation detection in critical regions is therefore essential. While existing ERLs have developed solutions, e.g., high-dynamic-range halo monitors at the JLab FEL or continuous radiation monitors along both sides of

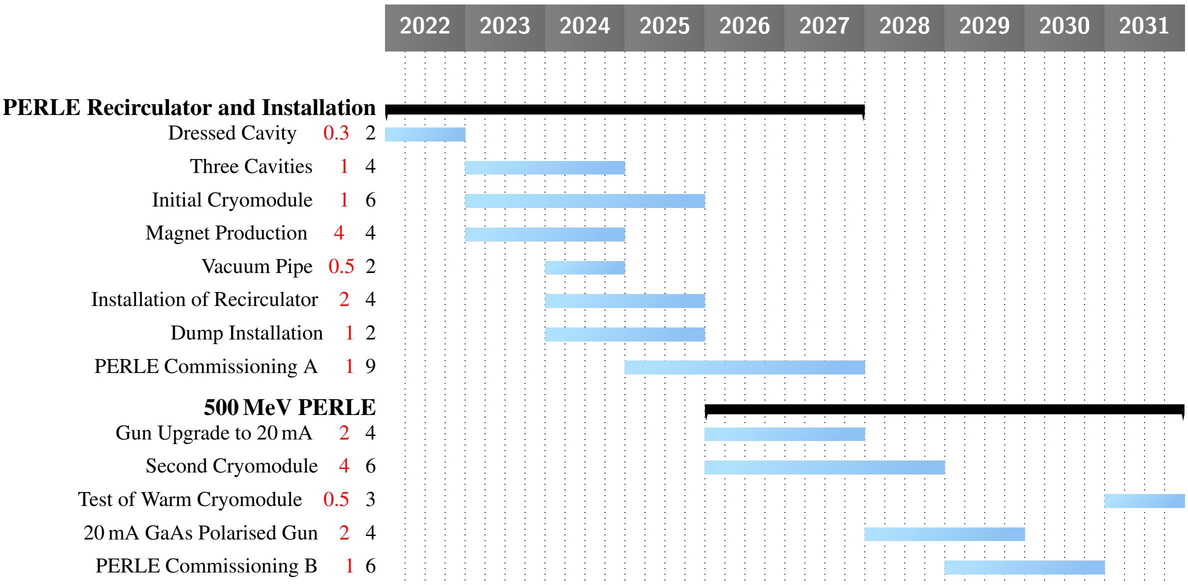


Fig. 6.8: PERLE completion in two steps, the 250 MeV phase with beam in the mid-twenties will be followed by the 500 MeV stage towards the end of the decade. Funding of the first part, including funding of the TDR and injector phase (see Fig. 6.7): 14.6 MCHF (red column), 64 FTE years (black). Funding of the 500 MeV stage: 9.5 MCHF, 23 FTEs.

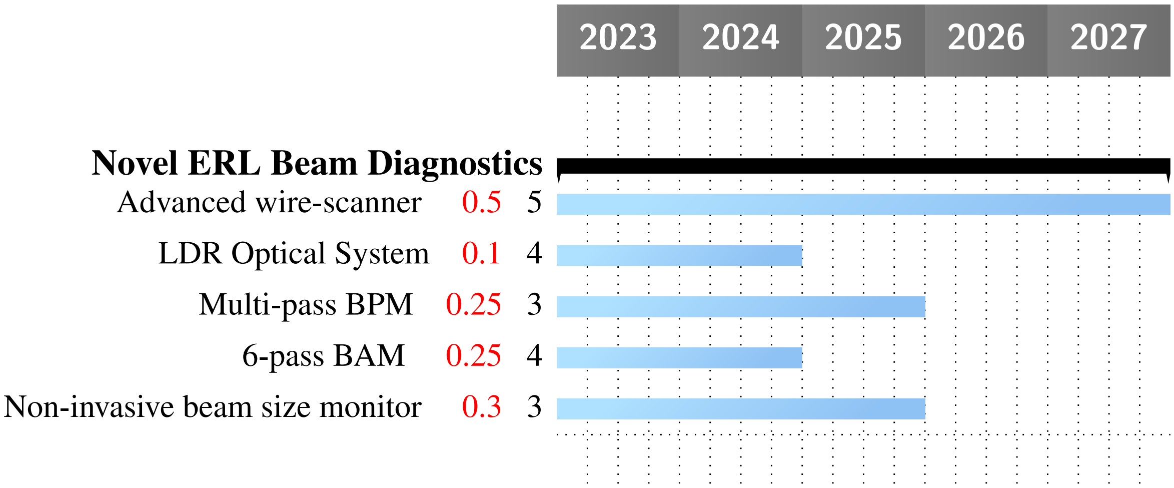


Fig. 6.9: Development plan for high-current ERL beam diagnostics. Funding 1.4 MCHF (red column), 19 FTEs (black). Year 1 for this development is set to 2023 for interested parties to organise.

the beam pipe in CBETA, solutions for larger beam powers still have to be developed. This leads to a plan described above in Sect. 6.6 and the following work plan:

6.8.6 Annual Investments

The total investment corresponding to this roadmap is 39.1 MCHF for 10 years. The total cost of bERLinPRO and PERLE 250 MeV are 7.4 and 14.6 MCHF, respectively, for the coming 5 years, 2022 to 2026. Fig. 6.10 displays the annual spendings as a stacked histogram for PERLE (blue), bERLinPRO (grey) and basic R&D (green) as described. A substantial part of future ERL developments is covered by the existing or soon forthcoming (MESA) facilities and their development plans. The investments for 4.5 K base technology developments, such as sputtering and infusion as described in Sect. 6.6, are covered

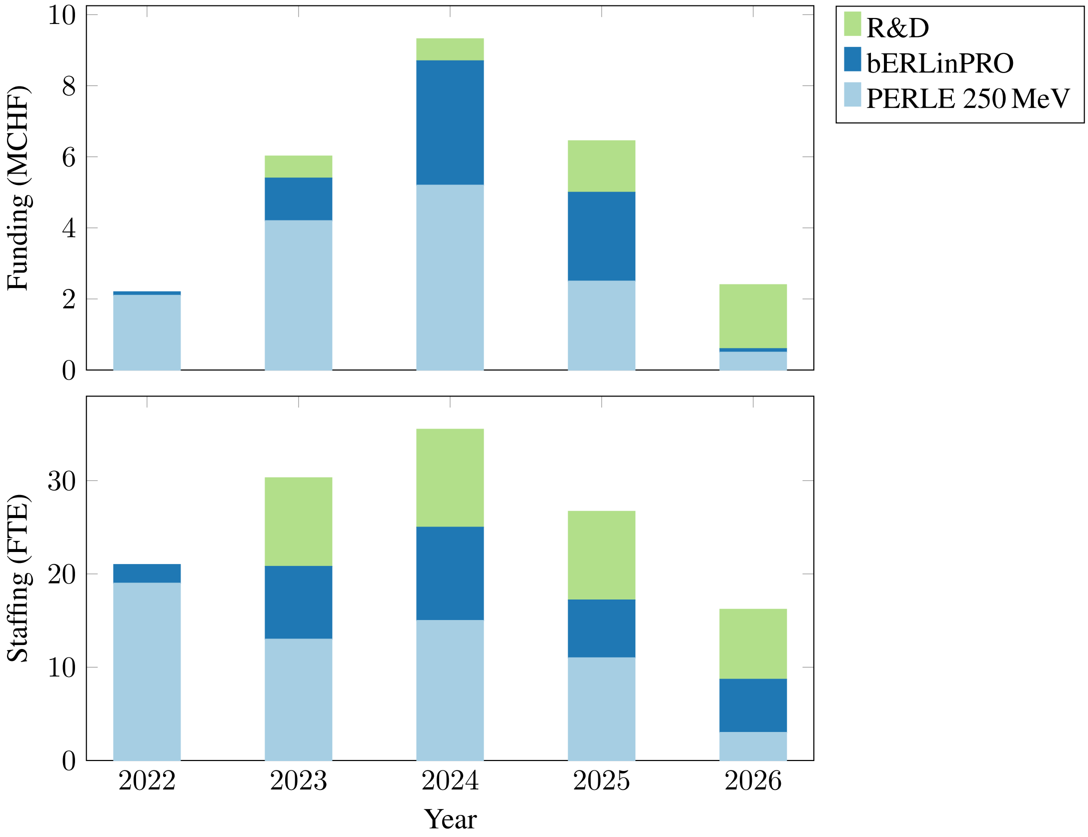


Fig. 6.10: ERL funding and effort roadmap profile for the next five years split into its three main contributions, PERLE at 250 MeV, bERLinPRO and the key R&D items (HOM, TWN and DIA): top: annual spending in MCHF; bottom: effort in FTE years, not counting provision of effort by the host laboratories and some of their partners.

by the SRC roadmap. Until and including the year 2026, a total of 29.6 MCHF is required, composed of 13.9 MCHF for PERLE, 7.4 MCHF for bERLinPRO and 7.6 MCHF for R&D. The funding profile peaks for both facilities in 2024 which is due to the indeed ambitious schedule developed for providing high current ERL operation evidence in the mid twenties, when the European HEP strategy will be re-evaluated. Note that bERLinPRO and PERLE have complementary roles: the former is a single-turn facility operating at 1.3 GHz with the goal to realise and investigate 100 mA operation, using a new SRF electron gun. PERLE is the first high-current multi-turn ERL, using a new 20 mA DC photocathode, directed to the development of 802 MHz technology with a major accelerator R&D and subsequent physics program. Both, in their different configurations, plan to apply FRT tuning under beam conditions to economise power and assure stable routine operation. bERLinPRO relies on the investments already taken compared to which the newly required funds are a small fraction, below 20%. PERLE is based on the strong engagement of an increasing number of French laboratories, especially of IJCLab Orsay as the host, and the often in-kind contributions of its international partners in the UK, USA, Russia and by CERN. As important parts of the global ERL developments, both facilities and the innovative technology R&D will have a strong impact on ERL applications in industry and other sciences.

6.9 Collaboration and organisation

The development and application of ERL technology has been a global effort as, not least, the authorlist and panel composition of this roadmap illustrate. A combination of generic R&D efforts in various laboratories with complete ERL facilities, in the US, Russia, Japan and Europe, as described here, has advanced the field so much that one can now consider its application to energy-frontier particle physics in various types of colliders involving electron beams.

This roadmap describes a threefold strategy based on (A) the further development of existing ERL facilities, (B) the implementation of a near-term and long-term R&D program on key technologies, and (C) the operation of new facilities at higher current and/or energy, notably bERLinPRO (HZB Berlin) and PERLE (IJCLab Orsay) in Europe as well as CEBAF5 (Jefferson Lab) and the EIC electron Cooler (BNL) in the US. The panel is convinced that pursuing these interlinked developments will advance ERLs in a major way, not least since they enable a new generation of low-energy experiments, approach HEP colliders, and promise striking applications for industry and related science developments. Implementation of such a program, in Europe and on a global scale, would much profit from a more intimate world-wide coordination and intensified exchange of personnel, technology and experience.

The success of such a coordination, and the ERL field in general, will rely on its community and material support, not least the inclusion of ERL developments into CERN's Medium Term Plan as a document of influence on the accelerator future for and beyond Europe. It will also rely on timely progress in the main existing and future facilities. As these develop, a tendency becomes clear of stronger collaboration of several institutes around ERL facilities, and main technology developments. PERLE is the first large institutional collaboration for building and operating an ERL facility. Its success will rely on the personal, technical and financial contributions of the collaborating partner institutes given the clear decision of IN2P3 and its Irène Joliot Curie Laboratory to realise this machine soon. PERLE comprises accelerator, particle and nuclear physicists, and its collaboration structure is just emerging as probably a balance between particle physics experiment collaboration models and a host facility oriented one.

Globally, ERL experts meet in accelerator conferences such as IPAC and have an annual dedicated ERL workshop, from Berlin 2019 to Cornell 2022, interrupted by the Covid pandemic. They have been in close contact and jointly been working on facilities and projects, as, for example, the recent commissioning of the CBETA facility has demonstrated.

The next step of this roadmap development will be its implementation, subject to CERN Council's endorsement and acceptance by a wider community. This will give time, in a further consultation process, to develop an appropriate organisation of ERL developments, recognising and possibly combining local, regional and continental capacities and interest with the achievement of midterm and further goals as we tried to describe here. ERLs are one of the few ways for innovation of future accelerators, a technology with stringent advantages and the opportunity to eventually and experimentally lead particle physics indeed beyond its Standard Model, assisting the HL-LHC and a future hadron collider. Their genuine physics and general impact potential is outstanding. They are surely worth most sincere efforts.

6.10 Conclusion

ERLs have come a long way from the initial Maury Tigner sketches. Machines have been designed, constructed and exceeded their specifications. This is no longer a niche technology; rather, it is ready to be a solid basis for future e^+e^- and e-h colliders.

The European ERL roadmap that has been developed here is embedded in global efforts to develop energy-recovery linacs, and it tightly focused on achievable deliverables, with each activity leading to the next. It shows how the diagnostics and tuner R&D feeds into bERLinPro and then PERLE, and that these advances make an LHeC a demonstrably viable opportunity for CERN, with electrons from a 50 GeV ERL colliding with the HL-LHC and/or the HE-LHC. This could also lead to electron-hadron collisions in the FCC-eh with an even greater energy reach. These opportunities are relatively low-cost additions to the planned CERN program, each with a huge potential for physics advances.

The R&D on 4.4 K cavities from the SRF Roadmap feeds into cryomodules which can operate at 4.4 K and the HOM damping. Together with twin cavity development, this would provide an opportunity to develop a 500 GeV cms energy, $10^{36}/(\mathrm{cm}^2\,\mathrm{s})$ luminosity Double Higgs Factory, of modest power

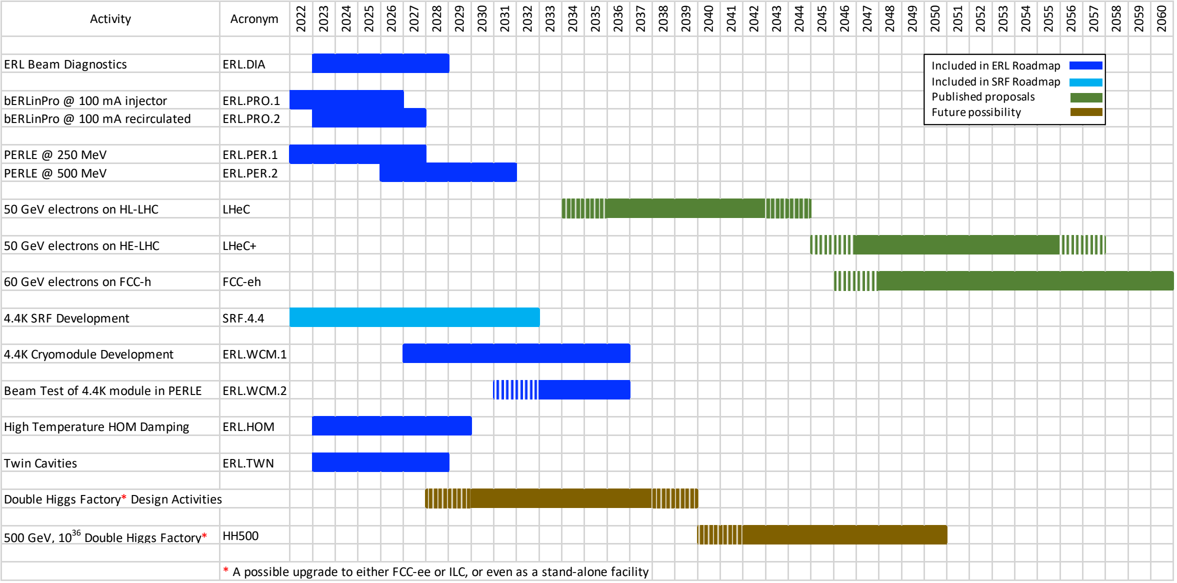


Fig. 6.11: Long-term vision for the ERL Roadmap showing how the activities in the next five to ten years lead to multiple options for future HEP Colliders.

consumption, as a possible upgrade to either FCC-ee or ILC, or even as a stand-alone facility, which had not been considered in the update of the European Particle Physics Strategy two years ago.

The development of cryomodules operating at 4.4 K would enable universities and small research labs to utilise the advantages of high-power CW electron beams for a variety of research activities. This would provide a user base for cryomodules, which would enable industries producing cryomodules to thrive, benefitting of all future HEP and Nuclear Physics accelerator facilities.

The cost of the new investments requested is about 6 MCHF/year for the next five years, made possible by maximally exploiting existing infrastructure. Given the important opportunities that the ERL technology opens up, this offers a really large return on the investment. A vision towards high-energy frontier colliders, which would be enabled by the R&D developments here described, is displayed in Fig. 6.11.

Unprecedentedly high beam intensities open new fields of low energy physics such as nuclear photonics, elastic ep scattering, dark photon searches and exotic isotope spectroscopy. This technology also has a significant future in other fields such as FELs, EUV Lithography, Inverse Compton Scattering, etc. ERL technology is inherently energy-sustainable, which will be an important requirement for all future accelerator projects. As an innovative field, it is bound to attract new generations of accelerator physicists and engineers.

Acknowledgement

The authors most gratefully acknowledge information, insight and guidance they received in discussions with Roy Aleksan, Jean-Luc Biarotte, Phil Burrows, Dimitri Delikaris, Grigory Emereev, Eric Fauve, Rao Ganni, Frank Gerigk, Karl Jakobs, Vladimir Litvinenko, Maria Chamizo Llatas, Jan Lüning, Eugenio Nappi, Sam Posen, Guillaume Rosaz, Thomas Roser, Hiroshi R Sakai, Herwig Schopper, Mike Seidel, Alexander Starostenko and Valery Telnov. They thank the members of the LDG group and especially its chair, Dave Newbold, for direction and support. They also thank the other panels for a pleasant cooperation.

References

[1] M. Tigner. A possible apparatus for electron clashing-beam experiments. *Nuovo Cim.*, 37:1228–1231, 1965.

[2] Deepa Angal-Kalinin et al. The Development of Energy Recovery Linacs. *to be published*, 2021.

[3] Symposium on ERLs. https://indico.cern.ch/event/1040671/. June 2021.

[4] Electron Ion Collider Conceptual Design Report, Feb 2021.

[5] P. Agostini et al. The Large Hadron-Electron Collider at the HL-LHC. *J. Phys. G to appear, arXiv:2007.14491*, 2020.

[6] A. Abada et al. FCC-hh: The Hadron Collider: Future Circular Collider Conceptual Design Report Volume 3. *Eur. Phys. J. ST*, 228(4):755–1107, 2019.

[7] C. Curatolo and L. Serafini. GeV muon beams with picometer-class emittance from electron-photon collisions. *arXiv:2106.03255*, 2021.

[8] Vladimir N. Litvinenko, Thomas Roser, and Maria Chamizo-Llatas. High-energy high-luminosity e^+e^- collider using energy-recovery linacs. *Phys. Lett. B*, 804:135394, 2020.

[9] V. I. Telnov. A high-luminosity superconducting twin e^+e^- linear collider with energy recovery. *arXiv:2105.11015*, 2021.

[10] T.I. Smith, H.A. Schwettman, R. Rohatgi, Y. Lapierre, and J. Edighoffer. Development of the SCA/FEL for use in biomedical and materials science experiments. *Nuclear Instruments and Methods in Physics Research Section A: Accelerators, Spectrometers, Detectors and Associated Equipment*, 259(1):1–7, 1987.

[11] S. O. Schriber, L. W. Funk, S. B. Hodge, and R. M. Hutcheon. Experimental measurements on a 25 MeV reflexotron. *IEEE Transactions on Nuclear Science*, 24(3):1061–1063, 1977.

[12] Donald W. Feldman, Roger W. Warren, William E. Stein, John S. Fraser, George Spalek, Alex H. Lumpkin, Jerry M. Watson, Bruce F. Carlsten, Harunori Takeda, and Tai-Sen Wang. Energy recovery in the Los Alamos free electron laser. *Nuclear Instruments and Methods in Physics Research Section A: Accelerators, Spectrometers, Detectors and Associated Equipment*, 259(1):26–30, 1987.

[13] G. R. Neil, C. L. Bohn, S. V. Benson, G. Biallas, D. Douglas, H. F. Dylla, R. Evans, J. Fugitt, A. Grippo, J. Gubeli, R. Hill, K. Jordan, R. Li, L. Merminga, P. Piot, J. Preble, M. Shinn, T. Siggins, R. Walker, and B. Yunn. Sustained Kilowatt Lasing in a Free-Electron Laser with Same-Cell Energy Recovery. *Phys. Rev. Lett.*, 84:662–665, Jan 2000.

[14] Stephen V. Benson. What have we learned from the kilowatt IR-FEL at Jefferson Lab? *Nuclear Instruments and Methods in Physics Research Section A: Accelerators, Spectrometers, Detectors and Associated Equipment*, 483(1):1–7, 2002. Proceedings of the 23rd International Free Electron Laser Conference and 8th FEL Users Workshop.

[15] S. Benson, K. Beard, G. Biallas, J. Boyce, D. Bullard, J. Coleman, D. Douglas, F. Dylla, R. Evans, P. Evtushenko, C. Hernandez-Garcia, A. Grippo, C. Gould, J. Gubeli, D. Hardy, C. Hovater, K. Jordan, M. Klopf, R. Li, W. Moore, G. Neil, M. Poelker, T. Powers, J. Preble, R. Rimmer, D. Sexton, M. Shinn, C. Tennant, R. Walker, G. Williams, and S. Zhang. High power operation of the JLab IR FEL driver accelerator. In *2007 IEEE Particle Accelerator Conference (PAC)*, pages 79–81, 2007.

[16] N.G. Gavrilov, B.A. Knyazev, E.I. Kolobanov, V.V. Kotenkov, V.V. Kubarev, G.N. Kulipanov, A.N. Matveenko, L.E. Medvedev, S.V. Miginsky, L.A. Mironenko, A.D. Oreshkov, V.K. Ovchar, V.M. Popik, T.V. Salikova, M.A. Scheglov, S.S. Serednyakov, O.A. Shevchenko, A.N. Skrinsky, V.G. Tcheskidov, and N.A. Vinokurov. Status of the Novosibirsk high-power terahertz FEL. *Nuclear Instruments and Methods in Physics Research Section A: Accelerators, Spectrometers, Detectors and Associated Equipment*, 575(1):54–57, 2007. Proceedings of the XVI International Synchrotron Radiation Conference.

[17] R. Hajima, T. Shizuma, M. Sawamura, R. Nagai, N. Nishimori, N. Kikuzawa, and E.J. Minehara.

First demonstration of energy-recovery operation in the JAERI superconducting linac for a high-power free-electron laser. *Nuclear Instruments and Methods in Physics Research Section A: Accelerators, Spectrometers, Detectors and Associated Equipment*, 507(1):115–119, 2003. Proceedings of the 24th International Free Electron Laser Conference and the 9th Users Workshop.

[18] Study report on the future light source at the photon factory — energy recovery linac and science case. 2003. In Japanese.

[19] PH Williams. 10 Years of ALICE: From Concept to Operational User Facility. In *Presented at 56th ICFA Advanced Beam Dynamics Workshop on Energy Recovery Linacs (ERL 2015), Stony Brook, NY, USA*, 2015.

[20] Cornell ERL Project Design Definition Report. 2013.

[21] A. Bartnik, N. Banerjee, D. Burke, J. Crittenden, K. Deitrick, J. Dobbins, C. Gulliford, G. H. Hoffstaetter, Y. Li, W. Lou, P. Quigley, D. Sagan, K. Smolenski, J. S. Berg, S. Brooks, R. Hulsart, G. Mahler, F. Meot, R. Michnoff, S. Peggs, T. Roser, D. Trbojevic, N. Tsoupas, and T. Miyajima. CBETA: First Multipass Superconducting Linear Accelerator with Energy Recovery. *Phys. Rev. Lett.*, 125:044803, Jul 2020.

[22] A. V. Bednyakov, B. A. Kniehl, A. F. Pikelner, and O. L. Veretin. Stability of the Electroweak Vacuum: Gauge Independence and Advanced Precision. *Phys. Rev. Lett.*, 115(20):201802, 2015.

[23] Steven Weinberg. Model Physicist. *CERN Courier*, October 2017.

[24] Gian Francesco Giudice. *The Dawn of the Post-Naturalness Era*. 2019.

[25] Frederick Bordry. Introduction to the fifth Workshop on Energy for Sustainable Science, PSI,Switzerland. *unpublished*, November 2019.

[26] J. L. Abelleira Fernandez et al. A Large Hadron Electron Collider at CERN: Report on the Physics and Design Concepts for Machine and Detector. *J. Phys.*, G39:075001, 2012.

[27] S. A. Bogacz, J. Ellis, L. Lusito, D. Schulte, T. Takahashi, M. Velasco, M. Zanetti, and F. Zimmermann. SAPPHiRE: a Small Gamma-Gamma Higgs Factory. *arXiv:1208.2827*, 2012.

[28] Philipp Roloff, Ulrike Schnoor, Rosa Simoniello, and Boruo Xu. Double Higgs boson production and Higgs self-coupling extraction at CLIC. *Eur. Phys. J. C*, 80(11):1010, 2020.

[29] Haiyan Gao and Marc Vanderhaeghen. The proton charge radius. 5 2021.

[30] B. S. Schlimme et al. Operation and characterization of a windowless gas jet target in high-intensity electron beams. 4 2021.

[31] U. Friman-Gayer et al. Role of Chiral Two-Body Currents in ^{6}Li Magnetic Properties in Light of a New Precision Measurement with the Relative Self-Absorption Technique. *Phys. Rev. Lett.*, 126(10):102501, 2021.

[32] Z. Nergiz, N. S. Mirian, A. Aksoy, D. Zhou, F. Zimmermann, and H. Aksakal. Bright Å ngstrom and Picometre Free Electron Laser Based on the LHeC Energy Recovery Linac. 7 2021.

[33] A. A. Zholents and M. S. Zolotorev. Femtosecond X-ray pulses of synchrotron radiation. *Phys. Rev. Lett.*, 76:912–915, 1996.

[34] S. V. Benson, D. Douglas, G. Neil, M. D. Shinn, and G. P. Williams. A Synchronized FIR/VUV Light Source at Jefferson Lab. *Conf. Proc. C*, 1205201:1789–1791, 2012.

[35] Max Klein. Development of Energy Recovery Linacs—Towards a European ERL Roadmap. `https://indico.desy.de/event/28202/contributions/105489/attachments/67920/84937/ERLmkEPSf.pdf`, July 2021.

[36] V. I. Telnov. A high luminosity superconducting twin e^+e^- linear collider with energy recovery, 2021.

[37] Vladimir N. Litvinenko, Thomas Roser, and Maria Chamizo-Llatas. High-energy high-luminosity e^+e^- collider using energy-recovery linacs. *Phys. Lett. B*, 804:135394, 2020.

[38] R. Rohatgi, H. A. Schwettman, and T. I. Smith. A Compact energy recovered FEL for biomedical

and material science applications. *Conf. Proc. C*, 870316:230, 1987.

[39] O. A. Shevchenko et al. The Novosibirsk free electron laser facility. *AIP Conference Proceedings*, 2299:020001, 2020.

[40] N. A. Vinokurov and O. A. Shevchenko. Free electron lasers and their development at the Budker Institute of Nuclear Physics, SB RAS. *Physics - Uspekhi*, 61 (5):435–448, 2018.

[41] Yaroslav Gorbachev et al. Measurements of magnetic field of variable period undulator and correction of field errors. *AIP Conference Proceedings*, 2299:020009, 2020.

[42] Anton Matveev et al. Simulation and experimental study of beam dynamics in NovoFEL RF gun and its beamline. *AIP Conference Proceedings*, 2299:020006, 2020.

[43] Y. V. Getmanov et al. Electron outcoupling experiments at the NovoFEL facility. *AIP Conference Proceedings*, 2299:020004, 2020.

[44] N. Pietralla. Laboratory Portrait. *Nucl. Phys. News*, 28, Vol.2:4, 2018.

[45] Michaela Arnold, Jonny Birkhan, Jonas Pforr, Norbert Pietralla, Felix Schließmann, Manuel Steinhorst, and Florian Hug. First operation of the superconducting Darmstadt linear electron accelerator as an energy recovery linac. *Phys. Rev. Acc. Beams*, 23:020101, 2020.

[46] Florian Hug, Kurt Aulenbacher, Simon Friederich, Philipp Heil, Robert Heine, Ruth Kempf, Christoph Matejcek, and Daniel Simon. Status of the MESA ERL Project. In *63rd ICFA Advanced Beam Dynamics Workshop on Energy Recovery Linacs*, 6 2020.

[47] Dominik Becker et al. The P2 experiment. *Eur. Phys. J. A*, 54(11):208, 2018.

[48] Valery Tyukin and Kurt Aulenbacher. Polarized Atomic Hydrogen Target at MESA. *PoS*, PSTP2019:005, 2020.

[49] G. H. Hoffstaetter, D. Trbojevic, C. Mayes, N. Banerjee, J. Barley, I. Bazarov, A. Bartnik, J. S. Berg, S. Brooks, D. Burke, J. Crittenden, L. Cultrera, J. Dobbins, D. Douglas, B. Dunham, R. Eichhorn, S. Full, F. Furuta, C. Franck, R. Gallagher, M. Ge, C. Gulliford, B. Heltsley, D. Jusic, R. Kaplan, V. Kostroun, Y. Li, M. Liepe, C. Liu, W. Lou, G. Mahler, F. Meot, R. Michnoff, M. Minty, R. Patterson, S. Peggs, V. Ptitsyn, P. Quigley, T. Roser, D. Sabol, D. Sagan, J. Sears, C. Shore, E. Smith, K. Smolenski, P. Thieberger, S. Trabocchi, J. Tuozzolo, N. Tsoupas, V. Veshcherevich, D. Widger, G. Wang, F. Willeke, and W. Xu. Cbeta design report, cornell-bnl erl test accelerator, 2017.

[50] C. Gulliford, N. Banerjee, A. Bartnik, J. Crittenden, K. Deitrick, J. Dobbins, G. H. Hoffstaetter, P. Quigley, K. Smolenski, J. S. Berg, R. Michnoff, S. Peggs, and D. Trbojevic. Measurement of the per cavity energy recovery efficiency in the single turn Cornell-Brookhaven ERL Test Accelerator configuration. *Phys. Rev. Accel. Beams*, 24:010101, Jan 2021.

[51] M. Tigner. A possible apparatus for electron clashing-beam experiments. *Nuovo Cim.*, 37:1228–1231, 1965.

[52] S.J. Brooks, J. Cintorino, A.K. Jain, and G.J. Mahler. Production of Low Cost, High Field Quality Halbach Magnets. In *Proc. of International Particle Accelerator Conference (IPAC'17), Copenhagen, Denmark, 14–19 May, 2017*, number 8 in International Particle Accelerator Conference, pages 4118–4120, Geneva, Switzerland, May 2017. JACoW. https://doi.org/10.18429/JACoW-IPAC2017-THPIK007.

[53] S.J. Brooks, G.J. Mahler, R.J. Michnoff, and J.E. Tuozzolo. CBETA Permanent Magnet Production Run. In *Proc. 10th International Particle Accelerator Conference (IPAC'19), Melbourne, Australia, 19–24 May 2019*, number 10 in International Particle Accelerator Conference, pages 4318–4321, Geneva, Switzerland, Jun. 2019. JACoW Publishing. https://doi.org/10.18429/JACoW-IPAC2019-THPTS088.

[54] J.S. Berg et al. CBETA FFAG Beam Optics Design. In *Proc. 59th ICFA Advanced Beam Dynamics Workshop (ERL'17), Geneva, Switzerland, June 18–23, 2017*, number 59 in ICFA Advanced Beam Dynamics Workshop, pages 52–57, Geneva, Switzerland, May 2018. JACoW Publishing. https://doi.org/10.18429/JACoW-ERL2017-TUIDCC004.

[55] Kirsten Deitrick, Georg H. Hoffstaetter, Carl Franck, Bruno D. Muratori, Peter H. Williams, Geoffrey A. Krafft, Balša Terzić, Joe Crone, and Hywel Owen. Intense monochromatic photons above 100 keV from an inverse Compton source. *Phys. Rev. Accel. Beams*, 24:050701, May 2021.

[56] Adam Bartnik, Colwyn Gulliford, Georg H. Hoffstaetter, and Jared Maxson. Ultimate bunch length and emittance performance of an MeV ultrafast electron diffraction apparatus with a DC gun and a multi-cavity SRF linac. *Submitted to Phys. Rev. Accel. Beams*, 2021.

[57] S. Posen, J. Lee, D. N. Seidman, A. Romanenko, B. Tennis, O. S. Melnychuk, and D. A. Sergatskov. Advances in Nb3Sn superconducting radiofrequency cavities towards first practical accelerator applications. *Supercond. Sci. Technol.*, 34(2):025007, 2021.

[58] C. Wang, J. Noonan, and J. Lewellen. Dual-axis energy-recovery linac. In *Proceedings of ERL-07, Daresbury*, 2007.

[59] S. Noguchi and E. Kako. Multi-beam accelerating structures, 2003. KEK Preprint 2003-130.

[60] H. Park, S.U. De Silva, J.R. Delayen, A. Hutton, and F. Marhauser. Development of a Superconducting Twin Axis Cavity. In *Proc. of Linear Accelerator Conference (LINAC'16), East Lansing, MI, USA, 25-30 September 2016*, number 28 in Linear Accelerator Conference, pages 932–935, Geneva, Switzerland, May 2017. JACoW. https://doi.org/10.18429/JACoW-LINAC2016-THPLR037.

[61] I. V. Konoplev, K. Metodiev, A. J. Lancaster, G. Burt, R. Ainsworth, and A. Seryi. Experimental studies of 7-cell dual axis asymmetric cavity for energy recovery linac. *Phys. Rev. Accel. Beams*, 20:103501, Oct 2017.

[62] Vladimir N. Litvinenko and Yaroslav S. Derbenev. Coherent Electron Cooling. *Phys. Rev. Lett.*, 102:114801, 2009.

[63] Erk Jensen, Chiara Bracco, Oliver Brüning, Rama Calaga, Nuria Catalán Lasheras, Brennan Goddard, Roberto Torres-Sanchez, Alessandra Valloni, and Max Klein. Design Study of an ERL Test Facility at CERN. 7 2014.

[64] D. Angal-Kalinin et al. PERLE. Powerful energy recovery linac for experiments. Conceptual design report. *J. Phys.*, G45(6):065003, 2018.

[65] V Parma et al. Status of the Superconducting Proton Linac (SPL) Cryo-Module. In *Proceedings of the 16th International Conference on RF Superconductivity — SRF2013*, pages 345–348, 2013.

[66] S.A. Bogacz et al. The ERL PERLE Facility at Orsay. In *Proceedings DIS Workshop*, 2021.

7 Sustainability considerations

Authors: T. Roser[a,†], *M. Seidel*[b,*]

[a]BNL, Upton, New York, USA
[b]PSI, Villigen, Switzerland

7.1 Introduction

Scarcity of resources, along with climate change originating from the excessive exploitation of fossil energy are ever growing concerns for humankind. Particularly, the total electric power consumption of scientific facility operations will become more important as the reliance on fossil fuels is being reduced, carbon-neutral energy sources are still being developed and a larger part of the energy consumption is converted from fossil fuel to electric power.

In our accelerator community we need to give high priority to the realization of sustainable concepts, particularly when the next generation of large accelerator-based facilities is considered. Indeed, the much-increased performance – higher beam energy and intensity – of proposed new facilities comes together with anticipated increased electric power consumption. In the following we classify the most important development areas for sustainability of accelerator driven research infrastructures in three categories - technologies, concepts and general aspects. We suggest investing R&D efforts in these areas and to assess energy efficiency with an equal level of relevance as the classical performance parameters of the facilities under discussion.

7.2 Energy efficient technologies

Energy efficient technologies have a long history in the accelerator facilities for particle physics since often the required performance could only be reached with highly energy efficient devices such as superconducting magnets and superconducting RF cavities. Below are some items, where R&D could further improve energy efficiency.

Low loss superconducting resonators: Cryogenic losses in superconducting resonators can be significant for linacs, particularly in CW operation. The R&D on high Q superconducting resonators should be continued with high priority. Resonators using Nb3Sn-coating have shown good performance [1] and could be operated at 4.5 K. At this temperature the cryogenic efficiency is much improved, while still reasonable Q values are achieved.

Efficient Radio Frequency (RF) sources: For many accelerators the main power flow involves converting grid power to RF power. To improve the overall efficiency RF sources must be optimized. Efforts should be invested for efficient klystron concepts (e.g. adiabatic bunching and superconducting coils), magnetrons (mode locking) and solid-state amplifiers [2] [3] [4].

Permanent magnets: Permanent magnets don't need electrical power. As a side effect no heat is introduced which has a positive effect on the stability of a magnet lattice. Significant progress has

---

[†] roser@bnl.gov
[*] Mike.Seidel@psi.ch

This contribution should be cited as: Sustainability considerations, DOI: 10.23731/CYRM-2021-XXX.215, in: European Strategy for Particle Physics - Accelerator R&D Roadmap, Ed. N. Mounet,
CERN Yellow Reports: Monographs, CERN-2021-XXX, DOI: 10.23731/CYRM-2021-XXX, p. 215.

been made with permanent magnets for light sources, and for example tunable quadrupoles for the CLIC linacs [5].

Highly efficient cryogenic systems: Another important development are efficient cryogenic systems (e.g. He/Ne refrigeration), allowing to optimize heat removal in cold systems from synchrotron radiation and other beam induced energy deposition [6].

Superconducting electrical links: Cables using High Temperature Superconductors (HTS) allow to power high-current devices from a distance with no or little losses, thus enabling to install the power converters outside of radiation areas [7].

Use of heat pumps: Heat recovery in aquifers is often done at low temperatures with limited usefulness. But after boosting the heat to a higher temperature level using heat pumps, this waste heat can be used for residential heating.

7.3 Energy efficient accelerator concepts

Increasing the energy efficiency of accelerator components can significantly reduce energy consumption, but different accelerator concepts, especially with built-in energy recycling, has the potential to drastically reduce the energy consumption without compromising the performance.

Energy Recovery Linacs The Energy Recovery Linac (ERL) concept was first proposed in 1956 and it allows the recirculation of the beam power after the beam is used by decelerating it in the same RF structures. Using this concept for the electron and positron beam a high energy e+e- collider could be built where more luminosity can be achieved with much less beam intensity than using storage rings since the single beam collision can be much more disruptive. The much lower beam intensity then results in much less energy lost to radiated synchrotron power [8]. For a high energy collider the energy savings can amount to over a 100 MW. In view of the significant technical challenges this scheme should be studied and optimized in more detail.

Intensity Frontier Machines For Intensity Frontier Machines the conversion efficiency of primary beam power for example to Muon/Neutrino beam intensity is a critical parameter. With optimized target and capture schemes the primary beam power, and thus the grid power consumption, can be minimized. Similar arguments are valid for accelerator driven neutron sources [4].

Muon Collider For very high parton collision energies the Muon Collider [9] exhibits a favorable scaling of the achievable luminosity per grid power. With constant relative energy spread bunches can be made shorter at higher energies, allowing stronger transverse focusing at the interaction points. Besides other arguments this is an important reason for strengthening R&D efforts on the muon collider concept.

Energy Management: With an increasing fraction of sustainable energy sources like wind and solar power in the future energy mix, the production of energy will fluctuate significantly. One way to mitigate the impact of high energy physic facilities on the public grid is to actively manage their energy consumption using local storage or dynamic operation. Investigation of such concepts should be an integral part of design studies.

Accelerator Driven Systems (ADS) Accelerator driven sub-critical reactors can be used to reduce the storage time of radioactive waste (transmutation) of nuclear power stations by orders of magnitude. Such concepts would address an important sustainability problem of nuclear power. The development of high intensity accelerators for ADS has synergies with applications for particle physics or neutron sources. Another innovative accelerator-based transmutation concept using muons is proposed in [6].

7.4 General sustainability aspects

A carbon footprint analysis in the design phase of a new facility can help to optimize energy consumption for construction and operation. For cooling purposes accelerator facilities typically have significant water consumption. Cooling systems can be optimized to minimize the impact on the environment. For the construction of a facility environment-friendly materials should be identified and used preferably. The mining of certain materials, in particular rare earths, takes place in some countries under precarious conditions. It is desirable to introduce and comply with certification of the sources of such materials for industrial applications, including the construction of accelerators. A thoughtful life-cycle management of components will minimize waste. Many facilities use helium for cryogenic purposes. Helium is a scarce resource today and with appropriate measures the helium loss in facilities can be minimized.

Many of these issues are discussed at the workshop series on 'Energy for Sustainable Science at Research Infrastructures' [10].

References

[1] M. Liepe. Superconducting RF For The Future: Is Nb3Sn Ready For Next-Generation Accelerators? Proceedings Of IPAC 2019, http://accelconf.web.cern.ch/ipac2019/talks/tuxplm1_talk.pdf.

[2] Eucard-2 Workshop On Efficient, R. F. And Cockcroft Institute, 2014, https://indico.cern.ch/event/297025/.

[3] ARIES Workshop On Energy Efficient RF, Angstrom Laboratory (2019), https://indico.uu.se/event/515/.

[4] Workshop On Efficiency Of Proton Driver Accelerators, PSI (2016), http://indico.psi.ch/event/proton.driver.efficiency.workshop.

[5] EUCARD-2 Workshop On Compact And Low Consumption Magnet Design For Future Linear And Circular Colliders, CERN (2014), https://indico.cern.ch/event/321880/.

[6] Y. Mori et al. Intense Negative Muon Facility With MERIT Ring For Nuclear Transmutation. *JPS Conf. Proc.*, 011063, 2018.

[7] A. Ballarino. Development Of Superconducting Links For The Large Hadron Collider Machine. *Supercond. Sci. Technol.*, 27:044024, 2014.

[8] V. N. Litvinenko, T. Roser, and M. Chamizo-Llatas. *Physics Letters B*, 804:13594, 2020.

[9] Recent papers: https://iopscience.iop.org/journal/1748-0221/page/extraproc46.

[10] 5th Workshop Energy For Sustainable Science At Research Infrastructures, PSI (2019), https://indico.psi.ch/event/6754/.

8 R&D programmes oriented towards specific future facilities

8.1 The FCC-ee R&D programme

Authors: M. Benedikt[a,*], *A. Blondel*[b,c,†], *O. Brunner*[a], *P. Janot*[a], *E. Jensen*[a], *M. Koratzinos*[d], *R. Losito*[a], *K. Oide*[e], *T. Raubenheimer*[f], *F. Zimmermann*[a,‡]

[a]CERN, Geneva, Switzerland
[b]University Paris-Sorbonne, France
[c]University of Geneva, Switzerland
[d]MIT, Cambridge, Massachusetts, USA
[e]KEK, Tsukuba, Japan
[f]SLAC, Stanford, California, USA

8.1.1 Status and Main R&D Directions

In summer 2021, the Future Circular Collider Feasibility Study was launched [1, 2]. It addresses a key request from the 2020 Update of the European Strategy for Particle Physics [3], which states that "*An electron-positron Higgs factory is the highest-priority next collider. For the longer term, the European particle physics community has the ambition to operate a proton-proton collider at the highest achievable energy.*" and "*Europe, together with its international partners, should investigate the technical and financial feasibility of a future hadron collider at CERN with a centre-of-mass energy of at least 100 TeV and with an electron-positron Higgs and electroweak factory as a possible first stage. Such a feasibility study of the colliders and related infrastructure should be established as a global endeavour and be completed on the timescale of the next Strategy update.*"

The FCC-ee builds on 60 years of operating colliding beam storage rings. The design is robust and will provide high luminosity over the desired centre-of-mass energy range from 90 to 365 GeV. The FCC-ee is also the most sustainable of all Higgs and electroweak factory proposals, in that it implies the lowest energy consumption for a given value of total integrated luminosity [4].

The FCC-ee R&D is focused on incremental improvements aimed mainly at further optimising efficiency, obtaining the required diagnostic precision, and on achieving the target performance in terms of beam current and luminosity. FCC-ee will strive to include new technologies if they can increase efficiency, decrease costs or reduce the environmental impact of the project. Key FCC-ee R&D items for improved energy efficiency include high-efficiency continuous wave (CW) radiofrequency (RF) power sources (klystrons and/or solid state), high-Q superconducting (SC) cavities for the 400–800 MHz range, and possible applications of HTS magnets. For ultra high precision centre-of-mass energy measurements, R&D should cover simulations and measurements, that both are state-of-the-art and beyond, in terms of spin polarisation and polarimetry (inverse Compton scattering, beamstrahlung, etc.). Finally, for high luminosity, high current operation, FCC-ee requires a next generation beam stabilization/feedback system to suppress instabilities arising over a few turns, a robust low-impedance collimation scheme, and a machine tuning system based on artificial intelligence (AI). In the following we present more details, describe additional R&D elements, and identify links and overlaps with the Accelerator R&D roadmap.

---

[*] Michael.Benedikt@cern.ch
[†] Alain.Blondel@cern.ch
[‡] Frank.Zimmermann@cern.ch

This contribution should be cited as: FCCee-specific R&D programme, DOI: 10.23731/CYRM-2021-XXX.220, in: European Strategy for Particle Physics - Accelerator R&D Roadmap, Ed. N. Mounet,
CERN Yellow Reports: Monographs, CERN-2021-XXX, DOI: 10.23731/CYRM-2021-XXX, p. 220.

8.1.2 Recent Design Changes

The Conceptual Design Report (CDR), published in 2019 [5], described the baseline FCC-ee design with a circumference of 97.75 km, 12 surface sites, and two collision points. In 2021, a further design optimisation has resulted in an optimised placement of much lower risk, with a circumference of 91.2 km and only 8 surface sites, and which would be compatible with either 2 or 4 collision points. Consequently, adapting the CDR design and re-optimisation of the machine parameters are underway, taking into account not only the new placement, but also the possibly larger number of interaction points, and the mitigation of complex "combined" effects, e.g. the interplay of transverse and longitudinal impedance with the beam-beam interaction.

8.1.3 SRF Cavity Developments

Since Tristan and LEP-2, the superconducting RF system is the underpinning technology for modern circular lepton colliders. The FCC-ee baseline foresees the use of single-cell 400 MHz Nb/Cu cavities for high-current low-voltage beam operation at the Z production energy, four-cell 400 MHz Nb/Cu cavities at the W and H (ZH) energies, and a complement of five-cell bulk Nb 800 MHz cavities at 2 K for low-current high-voltage $\mathrm{t\bar{t}}$ operation [5]. In the full-energy booster, only multi-cell 400 and 800 MHz cavities will be installed. For the collider, also alternative RF scenarios, with possibly fewer changes between operating points, are being explored, such as novel 600 MHz slotted waveguide elliptical (SWELL) cavities [6].

Roadmap R&D work towards superconducting cavities with novel fabrication technology, improved quality factor and high-power couplers described in Section 3.3, will benefit FCC-ee. Higher-Q cavities could lower the electric power required for the cryogenics and/or decrease the size of the installation. These positive effects will be noticeable at all operating energies. For FCC-ee, a higher quality factor does not lower the RF power required, since almost all the RF power is directly transferred to the circulating beams.

For the Z running, the beam current is high, impedance and higher-order-mode losses are a concern, and here synergies exist with the cavity development for high-current energy recovery linacs (ERLs) in Section 6.5.2, e.g. R&D on $\mathrm{Nb_3Sn}$-coated cavities. It is worth emphasizing that both ERLs and circular colliders, like FCC-ee, require CW SRF systems.

The R&D items listed in the Roadmap Section 3.3 "SRF challenges and R&D objectives" are all relevant, and so are the elements listed in 6.5.2 "SRF challenges and R&D objectives [for ERLs]". The novel fast reactive tuners mentioned in 6.5.3 would also boost the performance of the FCC-ee RF system.

8.1.4 Efficient CW RF Power Sources

Efficient and compact RF power sources are another key element of the FCC-ee design. The R&D goal is an efficiency higher than 80%, with the aspiration to exceed 90%. In this respect, Section 3.5.1 "High-efficiency klystrons & solid-state amplifiers" defines highly pertinent R&D objectives. However, the RF frequencies proposed for the FCC-ee, of 400–800 MHz, are lower than those considered in Section 3.5 and some, if not all, of the R&D listed in Section 3.5.1 focuses on pulsed RF systems, while prototyping of CW RF power sources in the FCC-ee target frequency range will be required.

8.1.5 R&D for the FCC-ee Arcs

Aside from the various RF systems, another major component of the FCC-ee is the regular arc, covering almost 80 km. The arc cells must be cost effective, reliable and easily maintainable. Therefore, as part of the FCC R&D programme it is planned to build a complete arc half-cell mock up including girder, vacuum system with antechamber and pumps, dipole, quadrupole and sextupole magnets, beam-position monitors, cooling and alignment systems, and technical infrastructure interfaces, by the year 2025.

A key element of FCC-ee are the magnets, of rather low field. Constructing some of the magnets in the FCC-ee final focus or arcs based on HTS technology could lower energy consumption and increase operational flexibility. The thrust of this HTS R&D will not be on reaching extremely high field, but on operating lower-field SC magnets at temperatures much higher than liquid He temperatures (between 40 and 77 K). There could be some potential, perhaps marginal, overlap with Roadmap Section 2.3.5 Part 2 “Demonstrate suitability of HTS for accelerator magnet applications”.

8.1.6 Beam Diagnostics

As experience at previous and present colliders has taught us, adequate beam diagnostics is essential for reaching or exceeding design performance. For this reason, the FCC-ee R&D programme foresees the prototyping of key beam diagnostics, like bunch-by-bunch longitudinal charge-density monitors, ultra-low emittance measurements, beam-loss and beamstrahlung monitors, real time monitoring of the collision offsets, a polarimeter for each beam able to measure the 3D polarization vector as well as the beam energy, and fast luminometers.

8.1.7 Other R&D and Expertise Maintenance

New developments for the FCC infrastructure, or at least a preservation of the know-how presently existing at CERN, are also needed in the domains of radiation to electronics, robotics, general energy optimisation, digital mock-up of the machine, survey and alignment, etc.

8.1.8 Polarimetry and Centre-of-Mass Energy Calibration

Highly precise centre-of-mass energy calibration at c.m. energies of 91 GeV (Z pole) and 160 GeV (WW threshold), a cornerstone of the precision physics programme of the FCC-ee, relies on using resonant depolarisation of wiggler-pre-polarised pilot bunches [7]. The target precision at the Z pole requires a considerable improvement in the understanding of the relationship between the spin-tune, measured by resonant depolarization, and the beam energies. This improved understanding must begin by beyond the state-of-the art simulations of the spin dynamics in a machine with misalignments and field errors, including the resonant depolarization process itself. The reduction and control of the centre-of-mass systematics resulting from the combination of collision offsets with residual dispersion will require the development of novel diagnostics and the associated operational procedures. The operation with polarized pilot bunches requires constant and high precision monitoring of the residual 3-D spin-polarization of the colliding bunches which would affect the physics measurements. This topic is one of the challenging branches of the accelerator physics R&D for FCC-ee.

8.1.9 Monochromatisation

In addition to the four baseline running modes, on the Z pole, at the WW threshold, at the (Z)H production peak, and above the $\mathrm{t\bar{t}}$ threshold, another optional operation mode is presently under investigation for FCC-ee, namely the direct s-channel Higgs production, $\mathrm{e^+e^-} \to \mathrm{H}$, at a centre-of-mass energy of 125 GeV. Here, a monochromatization scheme should reduce the effective collision energy spread so as to become comparable to the width of the Higgs [8]. The monochromatisation scheme, never implemented in any operational collider, requires further accelerator design efforts, which could be implemented in dedicated accelerator beam studies at a suitable facility. The development of the dedicated diagnostics required for the success of this most challenging endeavour will benefit highly from the centre-of-mass energy calibration research discussed above.

8.1.10 FCC-ee Pre-Injector

Concerning the FCC-ee pre-injector, the CDR design foresaw a pre-booster synchrotron. Now this choice is under scrutiny. As an alternative, and possibly new baseline, it is proposed to extend the energy of the injection linac to 10–20 GeV, for direct injection into the full-energy booster. The S-band linac could be based on state-of-the-art technology as employed for the FERMI upgrade at the Elettra synchrotron radiation facility. The R&D foreseen in 3.4.1 "NC RF manufacturing technology" could further improve the S-band cavity performance and fabrication methods, and lower the cost of this linac.

It is also envisaged to design, construct and then test with beam a novel positron source plus capture linac, and measure the achievable positron yield, at the PSI SwissFEL facility, with a primary electron energy that can be varied from 0.4 to 6 GeV.

Should developments of Section 4.5.1 be successful, then a low-emittance plasma based electron source and plasma injector linac might reduce the size and the cost of the FCC-ee pre-injector. The plasma linac would need to have demonstrated the capability of accelerating positrons at the desired beam current and beam quality.

8.1.11 Full Energy Booster

The injection energy for the full-energy booster is defined by the field quality of its low-field magnets. Magnet development and prototyping of booster dipole magnets, along with field measurements, should guide the choice of the injection energy.

8.1.12 Lessons from SuperKEKB and Beam Studies

The SuperKEKB collider, presently being commissioned [9], features many of the key elements of FCC-ee: double ring, large crossing angle, low vertical IP beta function β_y^* (design value $\sim$0.3 mm), short design beam lifetime of a few minutes, top-up injection, and a positron production rate of up to several 10^{12}/s. SuperKEKB has achieved, in both rings, the world's smallest ever β_y^* of 0.8 mm, which also is the lowest value considered for FCC-ee. Profiting from a new "virtual" crab-waist collision scheme, first developed for FCC-ee [10], in June 2021 SuperKEKB reached a world record luminosity of 3.12×10^{34} cm^{-2}s^{-1} [9]. However, many issues still need to be addressed, such as a vertical emittance larger than expected, even at low intensity or without collision, collimator impedance and single-bunch instability threshold, unexplained sudden beam loss without any beam oscillation, insufficient quality of the injected beam, etc.

In view of the SuperKEKB experience, studies of vertical emittance tuning is another important R&D frontier for FCC-ee. This includes simulating realistic beam measurements, constructing optics tuning knobs, especially for the final focus, and developing beam-based alignment procedures for the entire ring. Software development also is an important component of this activity. Effects of beam-beam collisions and monitor resolution limits need to be considered, as should be the impact of machine errors and tuning on the dynamic aperture and on the achievable polarisation levels.

Beam studies relevant to FCC-ee — for example on optics correction, vertical emittance tuning, crab-waist collisions, or beam energy calibration — can, and will, also be conducted at INFN-LNF/-DAFNE, DESY/PETRA III, BINP/VEPP-4M, and KIT/KARA [11].

8.1.13 Concrete Roadmap Synergies

Considering the different chapters of the Roadmap, we can identify the following items that could help support the FCC-ee performance and/or lower its cost and environmental impact:

- **2. High Field Magnets**: This HFM programme is fundamental for FCC-hh. FCC-ee could also profit if the HTS magnet R&D helped demonstrate the feasibility of lower-field HTS magnets operated at higher temperature, with emphasis on lowering their cost (**Sections 2.3.1, 2.3.5 Part 2, 2.4.1, 2.5.1**). In particular, the answers to questions Q7 and Q8 (**Section 2.4.1**) would be of interest to FCC-ee ("Q7: Besides magnetic field reach, is HTS a suitable conductor for accelerator magnets, considering all aspects from conductor to magnet and from design to operation?" "Q8:

What engineering solutions, existing or to be developed and demonstrated, will be required to build and operate such magnets, also taking into account material availability and manufacturing cost?”).

- **3. High-Gradient RF Structures and Systems**: Higher gradients than today are not the primary interest for the FCC-ee SRF system, but limiting energy consumption and improving accelerator reliability are a common focus. Numerous synergies can be spotted. In particular, the R&D effort on “Thin superconducting films for SRF cavities” (**Section 3.3.3**) is well matched to the needs of FCC-ee. The R&D on both fundamental and high-power couplers (**Section 3.3.4**) is equally of immediate interest. Higher-efficiency CW RF power sources such as a novel generation of klystrons or advanced solid-state devices (**Section 3.5.1.3**) are required for FCC-ee; the 200 MHz CW solid-state source example from the CERN Super Proton Synchrotron (SPS) is encouraging. “Technologies to reduce RF power needs for acceleration” (**Section 3.5.1.5**) and, in particular, the Ferro Electric Fast Reactive Tuner, or FE-FRT (**Section 3.5.1.6**), might smoothen FCC-ee RF operation when re-injecting the full beam after an abort, although in regular operation with top-up the beam currents are approximately constant. Some of the NC RF development would be relevant for the FCC-ee S-band injector linac, especially improvements on NC RF manufacturing technology (**Section 3.4.1**). Part of the work described in **Section 3.5.3** on “Artificial Intelligence and machine learning” for RF operation could potentially overlap with the development of an AI-based machine tuning system for FCC-ee. Adequate technical SRF infrastructure (**Section 3.6**) is of prime importance for the FCC-ee SRF R&D.
- **4. High-Gradient Plasma and Laser Accelerators**: A plasma based linac could be an alternative to the S-band linac, and reduce cost, provided such a linac can accelerate a positron beam with the desired charge/current and emittance. An ultra-low-emittance plasma source for the electron beam could also be helpful. In this sense, the positron technical demonstrations (2026), work on advanced plasma photoguns (2027), and the development of plasma sources for high-repetition rate, multi-GeV stages (by 2035) (**Section 4.5.1**) are all of potential relevance to FCC-ee.
- **5. Bright muon beams and muon colliders**: There is no obvious overlap of this effort with the FCC-ee R&D needs for the next decade.
- **6. Energy Recovery Linacs**: The SRF technology programme for ERLs perfectly matches the needs of FCC-ee (**Section 6.5.2**). The Roadmap states: "Critical ERL SRF system developments must now focus on – system designs compatible with high beam currents and the associated HOM excitation; – handling of transients and microphonic detuning that otherwise require a large RF overhead to maintain RF stability; – enhanced cryogenic efficiency of SRF modules.” All three of these items also apply to FCC-ee. In addition, the CW mode of operation and the RF frequency, e.g. for PERLE, are the same or quite similar. The aforementioned synergies with ERL developments relate to the SRF technology R&D programmes, and not to any use of ERLs as acceleration technology for the FCC-ee. There also is a common interest in FRTs, and there may be several synergies in R&D for novel beam instrumentation, such as non-intercepting diagnostics, beam halo and beam loss monitoring, etc. (**Section 6.5.3**).

Prioritizing within the five relevant chapters of the LDG Roadmap, several items listed in Chapters 3 and 6 with impact on the FCC-ee RF systems are the most important and urgent ones, namely SRF thin film technology, high efficiency RF power sources, and HOM/fundamental coupler development. At second place appear improved manufacturing techniques for an S-band linac.

References

[1] Organisational structure of the FCC feasibility study. Restricted CERN Council - Two-Hundred-and-Third Session. *CERN/SPC/1155/Rev.2*, Jun 2021.

[2] Main deliverables and timeline of the FCC feasibility study. Restricted CERN Council - Two-Hundred-and-Third Session. *CERN/SPC/1161*, Jun 2021.

[3] 2020 Update of the European Strategy for Particle Physics (Brochure). *CERN-ESU-015*, 2020.

[4] M. Benedikt, A. Blondel, P. Janot, et al. Future Circular Colliders succeeding the LHC. *Nature Physics*, 16:402, 2020.

[5] A. Abada, M. Abbrescia, S. S. AbdusSalam, et al., M. Benedikt et al. (eds.). FCC-ee: The Lepton Collider. *Eur. Phys. J. Spec. Top.*, 228, 2019.

[6] I. Syratchev, F. Peauger, I. Karpov, and O. Brunner. A Superconducting Slotted Waveguide Elliptical Cavity for FCC-ee. *Zenodo 031953*, June 2021.

[7] A. Blondel, P. Janot, J. Wenninger and others. Polarization and Centre-of-Mass Energy Calibration at FCC-ee. *arXiv 1909.12245*, 2019.

[8] A. Faus-Golfe, M.A. Valdivia Garcia, F. Zimmermann. The Challenge of Monochromatization Direct s-Channel Higgs Production: $\mathrm{e^+e^-} \to \mathrm{H}$. *submitted to EPJ Plus*, 2021.

[9] Y. Ohnishi. Status and perspectives of the SuperKEKB project. *PoS, Proc. EPS-HEP2021*, 2021.

[10] K. Oide et al. Design of beam optics for the future circular collider e^+e^- collider rings. *Phys. Rev. Accel. Beams*, 19:111005, Nov 2016.

[11] J. Keintzel et al. Experimental beam tests for FCC-ee. *PoS, Proc. EPS-HEP2021*, 2021.

8.2 ILC-specific R&D programme

Authors: S. Michizono[a,], T. Nakada[b], S. Stapnes[c]*

[a]KEK, Tsukuba, Japan
[b]EPFL, Lausanne, Switzerland
[c]CERN, Geneva, Switzerland

8.2.1 ILC international collaboration

The International Linear Collider (ILC) is an electron–positron collider with a collision energy of 250 GeV (total length of approximately 20 km). The design study for the ILC for a collision energy of 500 GeV started in 2004, and the Technical Design Report (TDR) [1] was published by the Global Design Effort (GDE) international team in 2013. More than 2,400 researchers have contributed to the TDR. After publication, R&D activities regarding linear colliders were organised by the Linear Collider Collaboration (LCC). The 250 GeV ILC for a Higgs factory was proposed and published as the ILC Machine Staging Report 2017 [2]. The International Development Team (IDT) was established [3] by the International Committee for Future Accelerators (ICFA) in August 2020 to prepare to establish the ILC preparatory laboratory (Pre-lab) [4] as the first step towards the construction of the ILC in Japan. The principal accelerator activities of the ILC Pre-lab are technical preparations and engineering design and documentation, and the former is summarised in “Technical Preparation and Work Packages (WPs) during ILC Pre-lab” [5]. The ILC Pre-lab activities are expected to continue for approximately four years, and the ILC accelerator construction will require nine years.

8.2.2 The ILC accelerator

A linear accelerator has an important advantage with natural extendability for accelerating electron and positron beams to higher energies towards the 1 TeV energy level/scale. The spins of the electron and/or positron beams can be maintained during acceleration and collision (polarized sources). This can help significantly improve the precision of measurements. The ILC consists of the following domains: (1) electron and positron sources, (2) damping rings (DRs) to reduce the emittance of the e^-/e^+ beams, (3) beam transportation from the damping rings to the main linear accelerators (RTML), (4) the main linear accelerators (MLs) including bunch compressors (to compress the beam bunch length) to accelerate the e^-/e^+ beams using superconducting RF technology, (5) beam delivery, and a final focusing system (BDS) to focus and adjust the final beam to increase the luminosity, and the beam interaction region for the machine and detector interface (MDI) where the detectors are installed. After passing through the interaction region, the beams go to the beam dumps (DUMP). Two key technologies are required, one of which is nano-beam technology applied at DRs and the BDS. Here, the beam is focused vertically at 7.7 nm at the interaction point. The other is SRF technology applied at the MLs. Approximately 8,000 SRF cavities are installed in the MLs and operated at an average gradient of 31.5 MV/m. The accelerator is operated at 5 Hz. In total, 1,312 beam bunches are formed in one RF pulse duration of 0.73 ms, and 2×10^{10} electrons and positrons are generated per bunch from the electron source and the positron source, respectively. The high-power output from the klystrons is inputted into the cavities through the input couplers to generate an electric field of 31.5 MV/m. One klystron’s RF power (up to 10 MW) is distributed to 39 cavities. The AC power required to operate the accelerator will be 111 MW [6].

---

[*] shinichiro.michizono@kek.jp

This contribution should be cited as: ILC-specific R&D programme, DOI: 10.23731/CYRM-2021-XXX.227, in: European Strategy for Particle Physics - Accelerator R&D Roadmap, Ed. N. Mounet,
CERN Yellow Reports: Monographs, CERN-2021-XXX, DOI: 10.23731/CYRM-2021-XXX, p. 227.

The ILC parameters are summarized in Table 8.1. The AC plug power is minimized due to the small surface resistance of the SRF accelerating structure (cavity). Further improvements in energy efficiency are anticipated as part of the Green ILC concept, which aims to establish a sustainable laboratory [7].

8.2.3 Recent status of the ILC accelerator

8.2.3.1 Positron source

There are two options for ILC positron sources: undulator and electron driven. The undulator scheme provides polarization (30%), but is a new method. The electron-driven scheme is conventional and technically more proven. Considering the physical potential of the polarized positron, the undulator and electron-driven schemes are being developed in parallel. A superconducting helical undulator has been put into operation at APS (ANL, USA) and long undulators are also operated at European XFEL. Concerning the undulator scheme, the necessary techniques for undulator positron sources such as installation precision and orbit correction have been established. The durability test of the titanium alloy target was carried out and good results were obtained. For the electron drive system, the rotating target with magnetic fluid vacuum sealing was tested for degradation of the sealing part by irradiation and for long-term running of the simulated target, and the stable rotation and sufficient vacuum sealing performance were confirmed. For the magnetic convergence circuit, the electromagnetic design of the flux concentrator was completed based on the results at BINP, and the thermal design is now in progress.

8.2.3.2 BDS and Interaction point

Nanobeam technology has been demonstrated at the ATF-2 hosted at KEK as an international collaboration, and it has nearly satisfied the requirements of the ILC. The ATF-2 has two goals. One is the generation of a small 37 nm beam, which is equivalent to 7.7 nm at the ILC-250 final focus at the IP. Until now we have achieved 41 nm. The other is to demonstrate precise position feedback. A feedback latency of 133 ns has satisfied the ILC requirement of less than 366 ns. Evaluation of the effect of the wakefield on the beam size at the ATF has led to the prospect of suppressing the wakefield effect at the ILC. In the ATF international review, the achievements of the ATF till now were evaluated critically, and the importance of continuing the research for the detailed design of the ILC final focus was highlighted.

8.2.3.3 SRF technology

The SRF technology readiness has been proved by the successful operation of the European XFEL, where approximately 800 superconducting cavities (one-tenth the scale of the ILC SRF cavities) have been installed. International consistency and quality control have also been demonstrated. Following the European XFEL, the LCLS-II at SLAC and SHINE in Shanghai are under construction. Two major R&D programs are underway to improve the performance and reduce the cost of superconducting cavities. One is a new surface treatment for high Q and gradients, and the other is a new approach for niobium (Nb) material processes. New cavity surface treatments, such as two-step baking developed at FNAL, improve both the acceleration gradient and Q. Such surface treatments lead to a higher beam energy and/or cost reduction by shortening the length of the SRF linac and reducing the cryogenic heat load. Nb material R&D aims to reduce material costs during the production of Nb discs and sheets, including direct slicing and tube formation. Automation in a clean environment is important for the mass production of high-performance SRF cavities. The equipment for the automation of activities such as dust removal, is under development. Cryomodule assembly of a collection of 38 MV/m cavities significantly exceeding ILC specifications is in progress at FNAL in the USA through international cooperation.

8.2.4 Remaining technical preparation at Pre-lab

Although significant work has already been done and described in the TDR and its Addendum, it is necessary to revisit all the items to examine whether any update (including SRF cost reduction R&D) is necessary. The MEXT advisory panel and the Science Council of Japan also pointed out some remaining technical issues that need to be resolved during the ILC preparation period. The technical preparations, i.e., accelerator work necessary for producing the final engineering design and documentation, are anticipated to be a starting point to discuss the international cooperation and technical efforts to be shared as in-kind contributions among the participating laboratories worldwide. A total of 18 work packages (WPs) over five accelerator domains have been proposed.

Pre-lab technical preparations for the SRF include cavity industrial production readiness (WP-1), demonstration of cryomodule production readiness and global transfer while maintaining specified performance (WP-2), and crab cavity (WP-3). In WP-1, a total of 120 cavities will be produced (40 cavities per region, Europe, the Americas, and Asia), and successful production yields ($\geq 90\%$) are to be demonstrated in each region. Recent high-performance cavity preparation will be included. In WP-2, six CMs (two CMs per region) will be fabricated, and their performance will be qualified within each region. Thus, 48 (40%) of the 120 produced cavities will be used in the six CM assemblies. The compatibility of the CMs from different regions will be confirmed.

If the cavity is to be operated at a 10% higher gradient of 35 MV/m, it is necessary to confirm that the input coupler is compatible with the high gradient, and the introduction of a high-efficiency klystron is expected to reduce the electric power consumption. These are in line with the development of high-performance SRF cavities, input couplers, and high-efficiency klystrons described in the section "High-gradient RF Structures and Systems" of the "European Strategy for Particle Physics Accelerator R&D Roadmap".

WP-2 will also demonstrate readiness for the cost-effective production of other cryomodule components, such as couplers, tuners, and superconducting magnets. Overall CM testing after assembling these components into the CM is the last step for confirming the performance of the CM as a primary accelerator component unit.

The Americas and Europe have already developed significant expertise in cavity and CM production for their large SRF accelerators, including the formulation of countermeasures against performance degradation after cryomodule assembly as well as during ground transport of CMs. As part of WP-2, the resilience of CMs to intercontinental transport will be established. In WP-3 (crab cavity), the first down-selection of the crab cavity will be carried out before pre-lab to narrow down the choices from four to two, and then one of the two will be selected after the performance test during the pre-lab.

8.2.5 Future upgrade

The ILC can be upgraded energy wise by extending the tunnel or increasing the acceleration gradient. The advantage of a linear collider is that the energy can be increased without being affected (limited) by synchrotron radiation. The beam delivery system (BDS) and beam dump of the ILC can handle collision energies up to 1 TeV. Another upgrade scenario is luminosity upgrade. By increasing the high-power RF system, the luminosity can be doubled as compared to the current scenario discussed in the TDR. It might also be possible to re-use the tunnel, infrastructure and other facility resources for a future multi-TeV linear collider based on further improved or novel accelerator RF-technologies.

Recently, the energy recovery linear collider (ERLC) concept was proposed by Valery Telnov as a hyper-high-luminosity alternative for the ILC. It is based on twin-axis superconducting cavities for enabling energy recovery from one axis to another. It would also enable the re-use of the beam by re-circulation back to the linac through low-energy beam transport loops. The ERLC concept has outstanding potential to exceed the luminosity performance projections of the ILC by over an order of magnitude. However, it requires fundamental R&D efforts for the design of fully coupled SRF systems requiring a high Q_0 cavity operating at a higher temperature (4.5K), as well as for very efficient higher-order mode (HOM) loss absorption at higher temperatures with CW operation. If the ERLC is envisioned as an ILC upgrade, careful investigation and R&D will be required for the ILC to accommodate the upgrade in luminosity in future.

Table 8.1: Parameters for ILC250 GeV and future 500 GeV and 1 TeV upgrade.

Parameter	Symbol	Unit	Option					
			Higgs			500GeV		TeV
			Baseline	Lum. Up	L Up, 10Hz	Baseline	Lum. Up	case B
Center-of-Mass Energy	E_{CM}	GeV	250	250	250	500	500	1000
Beam Energy	E_{beam}	GeV	125	125	125	250	250	500
Collision rate	f_{col}	Hz	5	5	10	5	5	4
Pulse interval in electron main linac		ms	200	200	100	200	200	200
Number of bunches	n_{b}		1312	2625	2625	1312	2625	2450
Bunch population	N	10^{10}	2	2	2	2	2	1.737
Bunch separation	Δt_{b}	ns	554	366	366	554	366	366
Beam current		mA	5.79	8.75	8.75	5.79	8.75	7.6
Average power of 2 beams at IP	P_{B}	MW	5.26	10.5	21	10.5	21	27.3
RMS bunch length at ML & IP	σ_{z}	mm	0.3	0.3	0.3	0.3	0.3	0.225
Emittance at IP (x)	γe^*_{x}	mm	5	5	5	10	10	10
Emittance at IP (y)	γe^*_{y}	nm	35	35	35	35	35	30
Beam size at IP (x)	σ^*_x	mm	0.515	0.515	0.515	0.474	0.474	0.335
Beam size at IP (y)	σ^*_y	nm	7.66	7.66	7.66	5.86	5.86	2.66
Luminosity	L	10^{34} $\mathrm{cm}^{-2}\mathrm{s}^{-1}$	1.35	2.7	5.4	1.79	3.6	5.11
AC power	P_{site}	MW	111	138	198	173	215	300
Site length	L_{site}	km	20.5	20.5	20.5	31	31	40

References

[1] Ties Behnke et al., editors. *The International Linear Collider Technical Design Report - Volume 1: Executive Summary*, June 2013. `https://arxiv.org/pdf/1306.6327.pdf`.

[2] Lyn Evans and Shinichiro Michizono. *The International Linear Collider Machine Staging Report*. November 2017. `https://arxiv.org/pdf/1711.00568.pdf`.

[3] ICFA announces a new phase towards preparation for the International Linear Collider, October 2017. `https://www.interactions.org/press-release/icfa-announces-new-phase-towards-preparation-international`.

[4] ILC International Development Team. *Proposal for the ILC Preparatory Laboratory (Pre-lab)*, June 2021. `https://arxiv.org/pdf/2106.00602.pdf`.

[5] ILC International Development Team Working Group 2. *Technical Preparation and Work Pack-ages (WPs) during ILC Pre-lab*, May 2021. `http://doi.org/10.5281/zenodo.4742018`.

[6] ILC International Development Team. *Updated power estimate for ILC-250*, May 2021. `https://agenda.linearcollider.org/event/8389/contributions/45111/attachments/35278/54677/ILC-CR-0018.pdf`.

[7] Green-ILC Project Team. Green ILC project, 2017. `http://green-ilc.in2p3.fr/home/`.

8.3 CLIC-specific R&D programme

Authors: P. N. Burrows[a], A. Faus-Golfe[b,], D. Schulte[c], S. Stapnes[c]*

[a]John Adams Institute, University of Oxford, UK
[b]IJCLab, Orsay, France
[c]CERN, Geneva, Switzerland

8.3.1 *Introduction*

The Compact Linear Collider (CLIC) is a multi-TeV high-luminosity linear e^+e^- collider under development by the CLIC accelerator collaboration. The CLIC accelerator has been optimised for three energy stages at centre-of-mass energies 380 GeV, 1.5 TeV and 3 TeV [1].

Detailed studies of the physics potential and detector for CLIC, and R&D on detector technologies, have been carried out by the CLIC detector and physics (CLICdp) collaboration. CLIC provides excellent sensitivity to Beyond Standard Model physics, through direct searches and via a broad set of precision measurements of Standard Model processes, particularly in the Higgs and top-quark sectors.

The CLIC accelerator, detector studies and physics potential are documented in detail at: `http://clic.cern/european-strategy`. Information about the accelerator, physics and detector collaborations and the studies in general is available at: `http://clic.cern`.

8.3.2 *CLIC layout*

A schematic overview of the accelerator configuration for the first energy stage is shown in Figure 8.1. To reach multi-TeV collision energies in an acceptable site length and at affordable cost, the main linacs use normal conducting X-band accelerating structures; these achieve a high accelerating gradient of 100 MV/m. For the first energy stage, a lower gradient of 72 MV/m is the optimum to achieve the luminosity goal, which requires a larger beam current than at higher energies.

In order to provide the necessary high peak power, the novel drive-beam scheme uses low-frequency high efficiency klystrons to efficiently generate long RF pulses and to store their energy in a long, high-current drive-beam pulse. This beam pulse is used to generate many short, even higher intensity pulses that are distributed alongside the main linac, where they release the stored energy in power extraction and transfer structures (PETS) in the form of short RF power pulses, transferred via waveguides into the accelerating structures. This concept strongly reduces the cost and power consumption compared with powering the structures directly by klystrons, especially for stages 2 and 3, and is very scalable to higher energies.

The upgrade to higher energies will require lengthening the main linacs. For the RF power the upgrade to 1.5 TeV can be done by increasing the energy and pulse length of the primary drive-beam, while a second drive-beam complex must be added for the upgrade to 3 TeV. An alternative design for the 380 GeV stage has been studied, in which the main linac accelerating structures are directly powered by high efficiency klystrons. The further stages will also in this case be drive-beam based for the reasons mentioned above.

---

[*] fausgolf@ijclab.in2p3.fr

This contribution should be cited as: CLIC-specific R&D programme, DOI: 10.23731/CYRM-2021-XXX.231, in: European Strategy for Particle Physics - Accelerator R&D Roadmap, Ed. N. Mounet,
CERN Yellow Reports: Monographs, CERN-2021-XXX, DOI: 10.23731/CYRM-2021-XXX, p. 231.

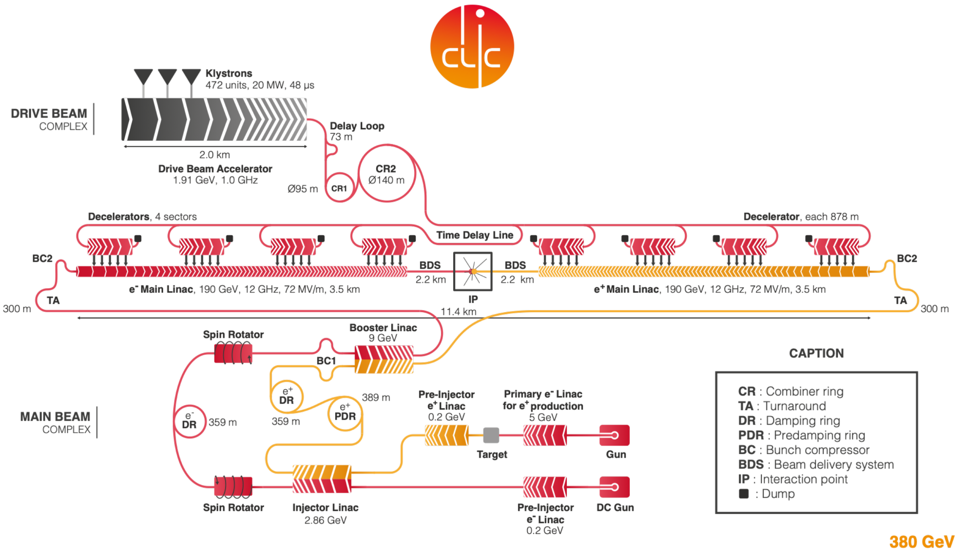


Fig. 8.1: Schematic layout of the CLIC complex at 380 GeV.

8.3.3 *Parameter overview*

The parameters for the three energy stages of CLIC are given in Table 8.2. The baseline plan for operating CLIC results in an integrated luminosity per year equivalent to operating at full luminosity for 1.2×10^7 s [2]. Foreseeing 8, 7 and 8 years of running at 380, 1500 and 3000 GeV respectively, and a luminosity ramp up for the first years at each stage, integrated luminosities of 1.0, 2.5 and 5.0 ab^{-1} are reached for the three stages. CLIC provides ±80% longitudinal electron polarisation and proposes a sharing between the two polarisation states at each energy stage for optimal physics reach [3].

8.3.4 *Luminosity margins and performance*

In order to achieve high luminosity, CLIC requires very small beam sizes at the collision point, as listed in Table 8.2. Recent studies have explored the margins and possibilities for increasing the luminosity, operation at the Z-pole and gamma-gamma collisions [4].

The vertical emittance and consequently the luminosity are to a large extent determined by imperfections in the accelerator complex. Significant margin has been added to the known effects to enhance the robustness of the design; without imperfections a factor three higher luminosity would be reached at 380 GeV [5]. At this energy also the repetition rate of the facility, and consequently luminosity, could be doubled from 50 Hz to 100 Hz without major changes and with relatively little increase in the overall power consumption and cost (at the $\sim$ 30% and $\sim$ 5% levels, respectively). This is because a large fraction of the power is used by systems where the consumption is independent of the repetition rate.

The CLIC beam energy can be adjusted to meet different physics requirements. In particular, a period of operation around 350 GeV is foreseen to scan the top-quark pair-production threshold. Operation at much lower energies can also be considered. Running at the Z-pole results in an expected luminosity of about $2.3 \times 10^{32}\,\text{cm}^{-2}\text{s}^{-1}$ for an unmodified collider. On the other hand, an initial installation of just the linac needed for Z-pole energy factory, and an appropriately adapted beam delivery system, would result in a luminosity of $0.36 \times 10^{34}\,\text{cm}^{-2}\text{s}^{-1}$ for 50 Hz operation. Furthermore, gamma-gamma collisions at up to $\sim$315 GeV are possible with a luminosity spectrum interesting for physics.

8.3.5 *Technical maturity*

Accelerating gradients of up to 145 MV/m have been reached with the two-beam concept at the CLIC Test Facility (CTF3). Breakdown rates of the accelerating structures well below the limit of $3 \times 10^7\text{m}^{-1}$

Table 8.2: Key parameters of the CLIC energy stages.

Parameter	Unit	Stage 1	Stage 2	Stage 3
Centre-of-mass energy	GeV	380	1500	3000
Repetition frequency	Hz	50	50	50
Nb. of bunches per train		352	312	312
Bunch separation	ns	0.5	0.5	0.5
Pulse length	ns	244	244	244
Accelerating gradient	MV/m	72	72/100	72/100
Total luminosity	10^{34}	1.5	3.7	5.9
Lum. above 99 % of $\sqrt{s}$	10^{34}	0.9	1.4	2
Total int. lum. per year	fb^{-1}	180	444	708
Main linac tunnel length	km	11.4	29.0	50.1
Nb. of particles per bunch	10^{9}	5.2	3.7	3.7
Bunch length	µm	70	44	44
IP beam size	nm	149/2.9	$\sim$60/1.5	$\sim$40/1
Norm. emitt. (end linac)	nm	900/20	660/20	660/20
Final RMS energy spread	%	0.35	0.35	0.35
Crossing angle (at IP)	mrad	16.5	20	20

per beam pulse are being stably achieved at X-band test platforms.

Substantial progress has been made towards realising the nanometre-sized beams required by CLIC for high luminosities: the low emittances needed for the CLIC damping rings are achieved by modern synchrotron light sources; special alignment procedures for the main linac are now available; and sub-nanometre stabilisation of the final focus quadrupoles has been demonstrated. In addition to the results from laboratory tests of components and the experimental studies in ATF2 at KEK, the advanced beam-based alignment of the CLIC main linac has successfully been tested in FACET at SLAC and FERMI in Trieste.

Other technology developments include the main linac modules and their auxiliary sub-systems such as vacuum, stable supports, and instrumentation. Beam instrumentation and feedback systems, including sub-micron level resolution beam-position monitors with time accuracy better than 20 ns and bunch-length monitors with resolution better than 20 fs, have been developed and tested with beams in CTF3.

Recent developments, among others of high efficiency klystrons, have resulted in an improved energy efficiency for the 380 GeV stage, as well as a lower estimated cost.

8.3.6 Schedule, cost estimate, and power consumption

The technology and construction-driven timeline for the CLIC programme is shown in Figure 8.2 [6]. This schedule has seven years of initial construction and commissioning. The 27 years of CLIC data-taking include two intervals of two years between the stages.

The cost estimate of the initial stage is approximately 5.9 billion CHF. The energy upgrade to 1.5 TeV has an estimated cost of approximately 5.1 billion CHF, including the upgrade of the drive-beam RF power. The cost of the further energy upgrade to 3 TeV has been estimated at approximately 7.3 billion CHF, including the construction of a second drive-beam complex.

The nominal power consumption at the 380 GeV stage is approximately 170 MW. Earlier estimates for the 1.5 TeV and 3 TeV stages yield approximately 370 MW and 590 MW, respectively [7], however recent power savings applied to the 380 GeV design have not yet been implemented for these higher energy stages. The annual energy consumption for nominal running at the initial energy stage is estimated to be 0.8 TWh. For comparison, CERN's current energy consumption is approximately

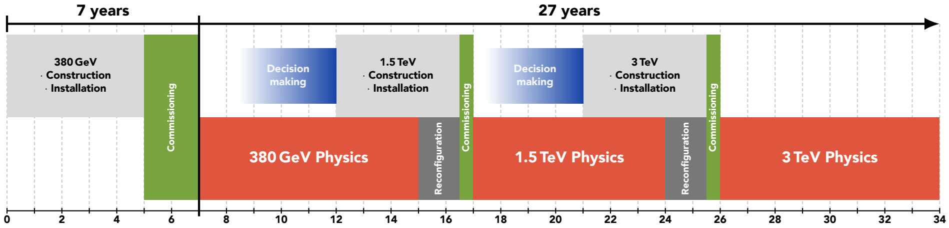


Fig. 8.2: Technology and construction-driven CLIC schedule. The time needed for reconfiguration (connection, hardware commissioning) between the stages is also indicated.

1.2 TWh per year, of which the accelerator complex uses approximately 90%.

8.3.7 Programme 2021-25

The design and implementation studies for the CLIC e^+e^- multi-TeV linear collider are at an advanced stage. The main technical issues, cost and project timelines have been developed, demonstrated and documented.

The CLIC study will submit an updated project description for the next European Strategy Update 2026-27. Key updates will be related to the luminosity performance at 380 GeV, the power/energy efficiency and consumption at stage 1 but also at multi-TeV energies, and further design, technical and industrial developments of the core-technologies, namely X-band systems, RF power systems, and nano-beams with associated hardware.

The X-band core technology development and dissemination, capitalizing on existing facilities (e.g. X-band test stands and the CLEAR beam facility at CERN), remain a primary focus. More broadly, the use of the CLIC core technologies - primarily X-band RF, associated components and nano-beams - in compact medical, industrial and research linacs has become an increasingly important development and test ground for CLIC, and is destined to grow further [8]. The adoption of CLIC technology for these applications is now providing a significant boost to CLIC related R&D, involving extensive and increasing collaborations with laboratories and universities using the technology, and an enlarging commercial supplier base.

On the design side the parameters for running at multi-TeV energies, with X-band or other RF technologies, will be studied further, in particular with energy efficiency guiding the designs. The R&D related to plasma based accelerators have overlaps with these studies.

Other key developments will be related to luminosity performance. On the parameter and hardware side these studies cover among others alignment/stability studies, thermo-mechanical engineering of modules and support systems for critical beam elements, instrumentation, positron production, damping ring and final focus system studies.

Power and energy efficiency studies, covering the accelerator structures themselves but also very importantly high efficiency RF power system with optimal system designs using high efficiency klystrons and modulators, will be continued and it is expected that the power can be further reduced. Sustainability studies in general, i.e power/energy efficiency, using power predominantly in low cost periods as is possible for a linear collider, use of renewable energy sources, and energy/heat recovery where possible, will be a priority.

The CLIC studies foreseen overlap in many areas with the working group summaries in this report, especially with the R&D topics related to high gradient and high efficiency RF systems. There are also common challenges with the novel accelerator developments concerning linear collider beam-dynamics, drivebeams, nanobeams, polarization and alignment/stability solutions, and also with muon cooling RF systems.

References

[1] P N Burrows, P Lebrun, L Linssen, D Schulte, E Sicking, S Stapnes, and M A Thomson, editors. *Updated baseline for a staged Compact Linear Collider*. CERN Yellow Reports: Monographs. CERN, Geneva, Aug 2016.

[2] Frederick Bordry et al. Machine Parameters and Projected Luminosity Performance of Proposed Future Colliders at CERN, 2018.

[3] Philipp Roloff and Aidan Robson. Updated CLIC luminosity staging baseline and Higgs coupling prospects, 2018.

[4] Chetan Gohil, Andrea Latina, Daniel Schulte, and Steinar Stapnes. High-Luminosity CLIC Studies, Aug 2020.

[5] C. Gohil, P. N. Burrows, N. Blaskovic Kraljevic, A. Latina, J. Ögren, and D. Schulte. Luminosity performance of the Compact Linear Collider at 380 GeV with static and dynamic imperfections. *Phys. Rev. Accel. Beams*, 23:101001, Oct 2020.

[6] Philip Nicholas Burrows et al., editors. *CLIC Project Implementation Plan*. CERN Yellow Reports: 4/2018. 2018.

[7] M Aicheler, P Burrows, M Draper, T Garvey, P Lebrun, K Peach, N Phinney, H Schmickler, D Schulte, and N Toge, editors. *A Multi-TeV Linear Collider Based on CLIC Technology: CLIC Conceptual Design Report*. Number CERN-2012-007. 2012.

[8] Gerardo D'Auria et al. Status of the CompactLight Design Study, 2019.

9 Conclusion–*version from interim report, to be updated*

9.1 Summary of findings

This report documents the initial findings of the expert panels, based upon six months of community consultation and input. Each of the panels has completed the first part of its remit, and attention has now turned to the definition of concrete R&D objectives and the plan to deliver them. A summary of the priority areas identified is as follows.

1. The **High-Field Magnets** group has identified the need for continued and accelerated progress on both Nb_3Sn and HTS technology. This should encompass not just developments in the materials, but place strong emphasis on their inclusion into practical accelerator magnet systems, with a wide range of associated engineering challenges. Considerations of both production and operations cost are taken into account, meaning that the parameters and design of the final magnets may have to reflect a compromise between ultimate performance and ease of manufacture, testing and operation.
2. The **High-gradient RF Structures and Systems** group finds that work is needed on the basic materials and construction techniques for both superconducting and normally conducting RF structures. There are significant challenges in improving efficiency beyond the accelerating structures themselves, since couplers and RF sources may be limiting elements. There is the need for the development of specialised and automated test, tuning and diagnostic techniques, particularly where large-scale series production is needed.
3. The **High-gradient Plasma and Laser Accelerators** group has focused on developments needed specifically for particle physics applications of the rapidly-developing dielectric acceleration technology. This includes the further development of existing techniques for high charge, low emittance, and improved efficiency; acceleration of positrons; and the staging together of accelerating stages in a coherent and realistic design for a future collider. The goal here will be to produce by 2026 an evidenced statement of the basic feasibility of such a machine, informing decisions on future investment into larger scale R&D.
4. The **Bright Muon Beams and Muon Colliders** group has examined the choice of parameters for a future muon collider concept, arriving at the concept of an ultimate 10 TeV machine with a 3 TeV intermediate scale facility. They have considered the challenges to be met in the construction of such a machine targeted for around 2045, and the immediate feasibility studies that must be carried out in the next five years. The goal for 2026 will be to demonstrate that further investment is scientifically justified, and to have developed concrete plans for an intermediate-scale technology demonstrator with scientific utility in its own right.
5. The **Energy-Recovery Linacs** group has gathered input from many of the medium-scale projects now under way in this area around the world, with complementary goals in different aspects of the technology. In addition, a sub-panel continues to work to consider the direct application of ERL technology in the long-term to electron-positron colliders. The next practical step is to approach the 10 MW power level for such machines based on progress on high current sources, high quality cavity technology and multi-turn operation.

Cross-cutting issues identified by the panels include:

- The necessity of moderating the electrical power consumption of future machines, in order that they are sustainable. This includes the power consumed by cryogenic plant in addition to that by RF efficiency or other direct losses.
- The requirement to design for reasonable manufacturing cost, throughput and efficiency for series-produced machine elements, including the automation and robotisation of both production and tuning for reduced cost.

- The need for investment in specialised large-scale facilities for development and testing of accelerator systems, up to and including dedicated beam facilities or demonstrator machines. The cooperative use of specialised medium-scale facilities, without competition or duplication of resources, is mandatory.
- The strong need for international cooperation and collaboration in all aspects of accelerator R&D.
- The need for continuity in the R&D programme, in terms of support for facilities, but also the career support and training of the next generations of researchers and engineers with specialised skills.

9.2 Planning of the Roadmap

Planning of the final Roadmap is now under way. Each expert panel is working towards development of multiple delivery plans, designed to encompass a range of funding scenarios. This is necessary, since it is clear that a 'maximum rate of progress' scenario in any one of the five areas (also bearing in mind other current demands on the human and financial resources) could exhaust the capacity of the field. Each delivery plan will include:

- a set of concrete deliverables, including technology demonstrators, over the next ten years
- first estimates of the human and capital resources required for delivery
- specification of the large- and medium-scale facilities required for delivery
- a statement of the linkage to work planned in other fields or for non-particle-physics facilities
- requirements for corresponding detector or instrumentation developments, and any scientific benefits foreseen in the short to medium term.

In essence, the Roadmap should seek to answer some fundamental questions, both immediately, and then in much greater detail by the time of the next strategy updates:

- What R&D remains to be done towards future facilities? What are the priorities?
- How long might it take? What is the fastest technically limited schedule?
- How much will it cost?
- What different options and trade-offs exist?
- What are the linkages between activities?
- What science can be done using demonstrators, or intermediate-scale facilities?

In addition, consideration will be given to how such R&D programme should be approved, organised and governed, including both those aspects which intrinsically fall under the responsibility of a given host laboratory, and those which do not. This will form the input into a more general set of recommendations on how the Roadmap as a whole should be implemented and overseen.